

J. J. Haydon

— A —

BRIEF HISTORY

OF THE

UNITED STATES.

BY

SUSAN PENDLETON LEE, ✓

Author of "A School History of the United States," "Life of General
William N. Pendleton."

WITH

Questions and Summaries for Reviews and Essays.

Prepared for use in Public and Private Schools.

Richmond, Va.:
B. F. JOHNSON PUBLISHING CO.
1896.

26756182

Copyrighted 1896, by SUSAN PENDLETON LEE.

E176

1

1896

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

First Period—Discovery and Settlement, 1492-1688.

CHAPTER.	PAGE.
I. Discovery of America.....	9
II The American Indians.....	16
III. Early settlements—Virginia colonized.....	20
IV. Early settlements, continued—New York, New Jersey, Delaware, Maryland.....	28
V. Early settlements, continued—New England.....	32
VI. The Colonies under the Commonwealth.....	36
VII. Virginia after the Restoration—Bacon's Rebellion.....	43
VIII. Northern Colonies after the Restoration—The Carolinas, Pennsylvania and Delaware.....	50
IX. Colonies under James II.—Their differences and resem- blances.....	56
X. France in the North and West.....	64
Summary for Reviews and Essays.....	68

Second Period—French and Indian Wars, 1689-1763.

XI. King William's War and Queen Anne's War.....	70
XII. The Colonies under George I. and George II.....	72
XIII. Settlement of Georgia.....	75
XIV. Settlement of the Valley of Virginia—The French in the West and North.....	80
XV. Opening of the Colonial War.....	83
XVI. Colonial War—Indian Wars.....	86
Summary for Reviews and Essays.....	91

Third Period—The Revolution, 1763-1783.

XVII. Causes of the American Revolution.....	92
XVIII. Colonies in 1760-75—Settlement of Kentucky and Ten- nessee.....	97
XIX. First Continental Congress—Indian War in Virginia.....	101
XX. Opening of the Revolution.....	104
XXI. Progress of Events in New England—Invasion of Canada.....	109
XXII. Revolution in the Southern Colonies—Declaration of Inde- pendence	113

CHAPTER.	PAGE.
XXIII. Defence of Charleston—Battles around New York	118
XXIV. Battle of Princeton—Battles near Philadelphia—Burgoyne's Campaign and Surrender.....	121
XXV. Valley Forge--Monmouth—Wyoming—French Fleet—Cherokee War in the South	126
XXVI. Clarke's Taking of the Northwest	131
XXVII. Stony Point—War in the South--Arnold's Treachery	134
XXVIII. King's Mountain—Cowpens--Guilford—Eutaw Springs...	139
XXIX. The War in Virginia—Surrender at Yorktown—Close of the Revolutionary War—John Paul Jones.....	147
Summary for Reviews and Essays	154

Fourth Period—Under the Constitution, 1783-1861.

XXX. Condition of the Thirteen States in 1783—The Federal Convention of 1787.....	156
XXXI. Washington's Administration, 1789-1797.....	161
XXXII. John Adams's Administration—Progress of the country..	167
XXXIII. Jefferson's Administration, 1801-1809.	170
XXXIV. Madison's Administration—War of 1812.....	173
XXXV. Monroe's Administration, 1817-1825—John Quincy Adams's Administration.....	179
XXXVI. Andrew Jackson's Administration.....	185
XXXVII. Van Buren's Administration—Tyler's Administration....	189
XXXVIII. Polk's Administration—Mexican War.....	195
XXXIX. Progress of the Country—Taylor-Fillmore Administration.	200
XL. Pierce's Administration.....	206
XLI. Buchanan's Administration.....	209
Summary for Reviews and Essays.....	215

Fifth Period—Civil War and Reconstruction, 1861-1895.

XLII. Formation of Southern Confederacy.....	219
XLIII. Lincoln's Administration—1861.....	226
XLIV. Lincoln's Administration, continued, 1861—Beginning of the War for State Rights.....	231
XLV. Lincoln's Administration, continued—1861.....	238
XLVI. Lincoln's Administration, continued—1861.....	246
XLVII. Lincoln's Administration, continued—1862.....	251
XLVIII. Lincoln's Administration, continued—1862.....	256
XLIX. Lincoln's Administration, continued—1862.....	262
L. Lincoln's Administration, continued—1862.....	268
LI. Lincoln's Administration, continued—1862.....	276

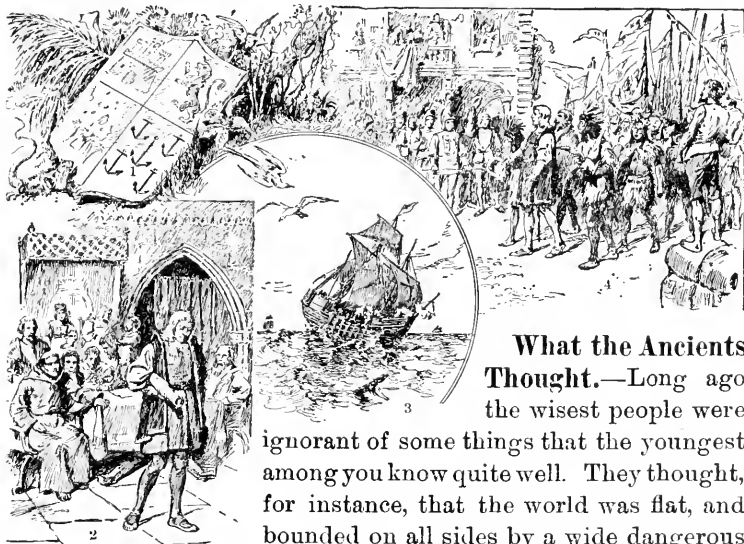
CHAPTER.	PAGE.
LII. Lincoln's Administration, continued—1862.....	284
LIII. Lincoln's Administration, continued—1863.....	288
LIV. Lincoln's Administration, continued—1863.....	293
LV. Lincoln's Administration, continued—1863.....	299
LVI. Lincoln's Administration, continued—1863.....	303
LVII. Lincoln's Administration, continued—1864.....	310
LVIII. Lincoln's Administration, continued—1864.....	319
LIX. Lincoln's Administration, continued—1864.....	326
LX. Lincoln's Administration, continued—1864.....	334
LXI. Lincoln's Administration, continued—1865.....	340
LXII. Lincoln's Administration, continued—1865.....	348
LXIII. Andrew Johnson's Administration, 1865-1869.....	358
LXIV. Johnson's Administration, continued—Grant's Adminis- tration.....	365
LXV. Grant's Administration, continued.....	371
LXVI. End of Grant's Administration—Hayes's Administration— Administrations of Garfield, Arthur and Cleveland....	377
LXVII. Benjamin Harrison's Administration—Cleveland's Second Election—Progress of the Country.....	381
Summary for Reviews and Essays.....	388

A Brief History of the United States.

DISCOVERY AND SETTLEMENT.

CHAPTER I.

DISCOVERY OF AMERICA.



What the Ancients Thought.—Long ago the wisest people were

ignorant of some things that the youngest among you know quite well. They thought, for instance, that the world was flat, and bounded on all sides by a wide dangerous

ocean. All that they were acquainted with was the western part of Asia, the northern part of Africa, and that portion of Europe which lies between the British Isles, the Baltic, the Caspian and Black Seas. They thought that beyond the regions

1. Coat of Arms of Columbus. 2. Columbus leaving the Court of Spain, when the King and Queen decline to fit out a fleet for him—February, 1492. 3. First signs of land—sea-birds and floating tree-trunk. 4. Return to Spain from first voyage.

with which they were acquainted, sea and land, if any existed, were strange and terrible, the abode of all sorts of monsters and fabulous creatures.

How Knowledge of Geography Grew.—After awhile men began to learn more about geography. Sea-kings from Norway came to Iceland in their long ships, and from there Eric the Red and his son Leif made their way to Greenland, and even down along the Atlantic coast to a place they called “Vinland the Good,” about the year 1001. This was by going west. Travellers moving eastward came back to Europe and told of marvellous and very rich kingdoms they had discovered in the remote regions of Asia. Learned men began to say and prove that the world was a globe and not flat. The mariner’s compass, which points always to the north, was invented, and also an instrument by which a sailor could tell where he was; and then the art of printing was discovered, the number of books was increased, and people could get them to read.

Christopher Columbus.—About four hundred and fifty years ago there was born in Genoa, in Italy, a boy who was to become famous as the discoverer of a new world.



COLUMBUS.

Christopher Columbus was the son of a wool-comber, and was made to learn his father’s trade. But he learned to read also, and studied all the books he could get hold of. Genoa was a very famous merchant city, to which travellers and traders came from all parts of the known world. Columbus was very fond of seeing and listening to these strangers, and he loved to go to the wharves and examine the ships and boats from the different ports on the Mediterranean shores.

Becomes a Sailor.—When he was only fourteen years old Columbus became a sailor himself. His early voyages were made only in the Mediterranean Sea, but at last he was able to pass through the Straits of Gibraltar into the unknown ocean. Always studying and learning, Columbus had become convinced

that the world was round, and that by sailing westward he would come to the eastern limits of Asia.

Portuguese Discoveries.—The Portuguese were by this time finding out that Africa was a great country stretching far to the south. They kept their ships near the coast, and pushed on a little farther and a little farther until, at last, one of their sailors, Vasco de Gama, found his way round the Cape of Good Hope into the Indian Ocean, and showed how to sail to India in Southern Asia.

Columbus in Spain.—Columbus, believing he would reach India by sailing westward, tried to persuade the King of Portugal to give him a vessel and crew to cross the Atlantic. He was unsuccessful in this. But after years of disappointment and hopeless entreaties, good Queen Isabella, of Spain, became his friend, and by her assistance he was furnished with three little ships and ninety men.

Sails from Palos.—On August 3, 1492, the three little vessels—the *Pinta*, the *Nina* and the *Santa Maria*—set out from Palos, on the coast of Spain, to sail where no ships had ever ventured before. They first visited the Canary Islands, and then pushed on into unknown waters.

Courage of Columbus.—The sailors on the little ships soon became discouraged. They were superstitious—that is, they thought the unexplored sea was filled with whirlpools, which would swallow up their ships or lead them to the abodes of goblins and dragons, and even to that of Satan himself, and afraid that if they found any land it would be peopled with monsters and horrible creatures, who would tear them limb from limb. Columbus alone never lost his good hope and his courage. He reasoned with his men, explained everything that seemed new and strange to them, and tried in every way to keep up their spirits. After two months' sailing they saw birds which could not have come a very long way, and some things floating in the sea seemed to have come from the land. So Columbus ordered a close watch to be kept, and expected soon to see the shores of Asia.

The New World.—At length, on the morning of October 12th, the man who was watching on the masthead of the Pinta shouted out joyfully, “Land! land!” and there lay a beautiful,



LANDING OF COLUMBUS ON THE BAHAMAS, OCTOBER 12, 1492.

low, green coast before them. You may be sure that the sailors all rejoiced at the welcome sight and sound, but none were

so glad and thankful as the noble man who saw himself successful after so many weary years.

Not Asia.—This land was not Asia, as Columbus supposed. It was one of the Bahama Islands, and from it the voyagers passed on to other islands and sailed along the shores of Cuba and Hayti.

People of the Islands.—The inhabitants of these islands were a simple, kindly folk, who thought the white men were brought to visit them from the skies by the great white-winged birds, as they imagined the ships to be. Certain that he had come to the India he was seeking, Columbus called these red-skinned natives Indians, and the islands where he found them received the name of the West Indies.

Return to Spain.—Wherever Columbus landed on the different islands he collected plants, animals and birds. He even persuaded some of the Indians to come with him, and then sailed away back to Spain. There was great excitement and rejoicing when the little fleet got back to Palos, eight months after its departure. The king and queen made a great fuss over Columbus and heaped honors upon him, and the fame of his discovery spread over Europe.

Hope of Wealth.—The Spaniards were delighted because

they thought Columbus had found India, the land of gold, of jewels and of spices, which were worth as much as gold. They therefore eagerly joined him in other voyages to the far-off islands. The natives, when questioned where their fine golden ornaments came from, pointed always to the west and south.

III Treatment of Columbus.—The proud Spaniards were not willing to gather riches slowly by settling on the islands and cultivating the soil. They became cruel to the natives to force them to get gold, and when they were disappointed in this they accused Columbus of deceiving them and treated him with great indignity. He was even sent home to Spain from his third voyage loaded with chains. Ingratitude instead of honor was shown him, and he died when he was seventy years old, poor, and neglected by the nation for which he had gained such great possessions.

Discovery of South America.—Columbus never visited North America, though he saw the shores of South America. Other navigators pushed on farther and visited the continents, but no Spaniard cared much for anything but finding gold. A gentleman from Florence, Amerigo Vespucci, however, who sailed in an expedition along the coast of South America, became convinced that it was not Asia but a new continent.

Naming the New World.—When Amerigo returned to Europe he wrote an account of the new land and what he saw there. This book was printed and read, and the New World took its name from the man who had observed and described it.

North America Discovered by the English.—Other European nations were eager to share the wealth which Columbus seemed to have found, and England, France and Portugal each sent out expeditions to find and take possession of some part of the unknown world. In 1497 Henry VII. of England sent John and Sebastian Cabot. With one little ship and eighteen men John Cabot reached what he called the New-found-land, and the next year Sebastian Cabot sailed as far along the Atlantic coast as the Carolinas and took possession of the whole for England.

French Discoveries.—In 1535 Jacques Cartier, from France, reached Nova Scotia and New Brunswick, sailed into a great gulf and up a broad river, which he called St. Lawrence, and claimed all that region for France.

Portuguese and Spanish Discoveries.—The pope averted a great quarrel between Spain and Portugal by deciding that all the land in the New World west of a certain line should belong to Spain, all east of it to Portugal. In the year 1500 a Portuguese sailor, Cabral, who had set out to follow Vasco de Gama's course around Africa, sailed too far west, and came to the coast of Brazil, which, lying east of the division line, belonged to Portugal. Always seeking for gold, the Spaniards passed from the islands over to the continents. Balboa crossed the Isthmus of Panama, and was the first white man who ever saw the Pacific Ocean. When he saw the great calm sea Balboa drew his sword, and striding into the surf claimed the broad water and all that it might contain for his master the king of Spain.

Florida.—On Easter Sunday of this same year, 1513, Ponce de Leon, who was seeking for a fabled fountain of perpetual youth, in which if one bathed he became young again, landed on an unknown shore, which he called Florida, from the Spanish name of the holy day *El Pascua Florida*.

Spanish Conquests.—Within the next twenty years Mexico was seized by Hernando Cortez, and Peru by Alonzo Pizarro. In these lands the Spaniards found the gold they had been hunting so eagerly. The natives, who were far more civilized than those of the islands, gave freely to the white strangers of their abundant wealth. But the greedy Spaniards, not satisfied with this, treated both Mexicans and Peruvians with horrible cruelty to extort still more treasure from them.

Hostility of the Natives.—The cruel practices of the Spaniards made the Indians in North America very hostile to them. They attacked and slew the white men wherever they could. In this way a band of them, under Narvaez, who tried to take possession of Florida, were all destroyed by the Indians except four.

Ferdinand De Soto.—A few years later De Soto, the Spanish governor of Cuba, entered Florida with a larger force. He, too, found the Indians his enemies, and had to fight them frequently. Moving westward in hope of finding gold, he fought his way to the Mississippi River and crossed to its western side. In this unknown country, where no gold was found, De Soto died of fever. Fearing the Indians might ill-treat his dead body, his followers buried him at night beneath the waters of the great river, and made their way with great difficulty and suffering to their countrymen in Mexico.

QUESTIONS.—1. What did the ancients think about the world? 2. What parts of the world did they really know about? Find them on the map. 3. What did Eric and Leif discover? 4. What two great inventions helped travellers in making discoveries? 5. Who was Christopher Columbus, and what did he believe? 6. What had the Portuguese done at this time? 7. What help did Spain give to Columbus? 8. From what port did he sail, and when? 9. Describe his voyage. 10. At what place did he land, and when? 11. What country did Columbus think he had reached? Find the islands on the map. 12. What sort of country and people did he find, and what name did he give to them? 13. How was he received on his return to Spain? 14. After his second voyage how was he treated? 15. From whom did America receive its name, and why? 16. What two Englishmen made the first discoveries in North America, and when? 17. What parts of America were discovered by France? 18. What part of South America did the Portuguese discover, and when? 19. Who first saw the Pacific Ocean, and when? 20. Who first discovered Florida and gave it its name? 21. What conquests did the Spaniards make, and how did they treat the conquered nations? 22. How did the natives behave towards the white men? 23. Tell of De Soto and why he moved west from Florida. 24. When was he buried? 24. Find on the maps all the places mentioned in this chapter.

CHAPTER II.

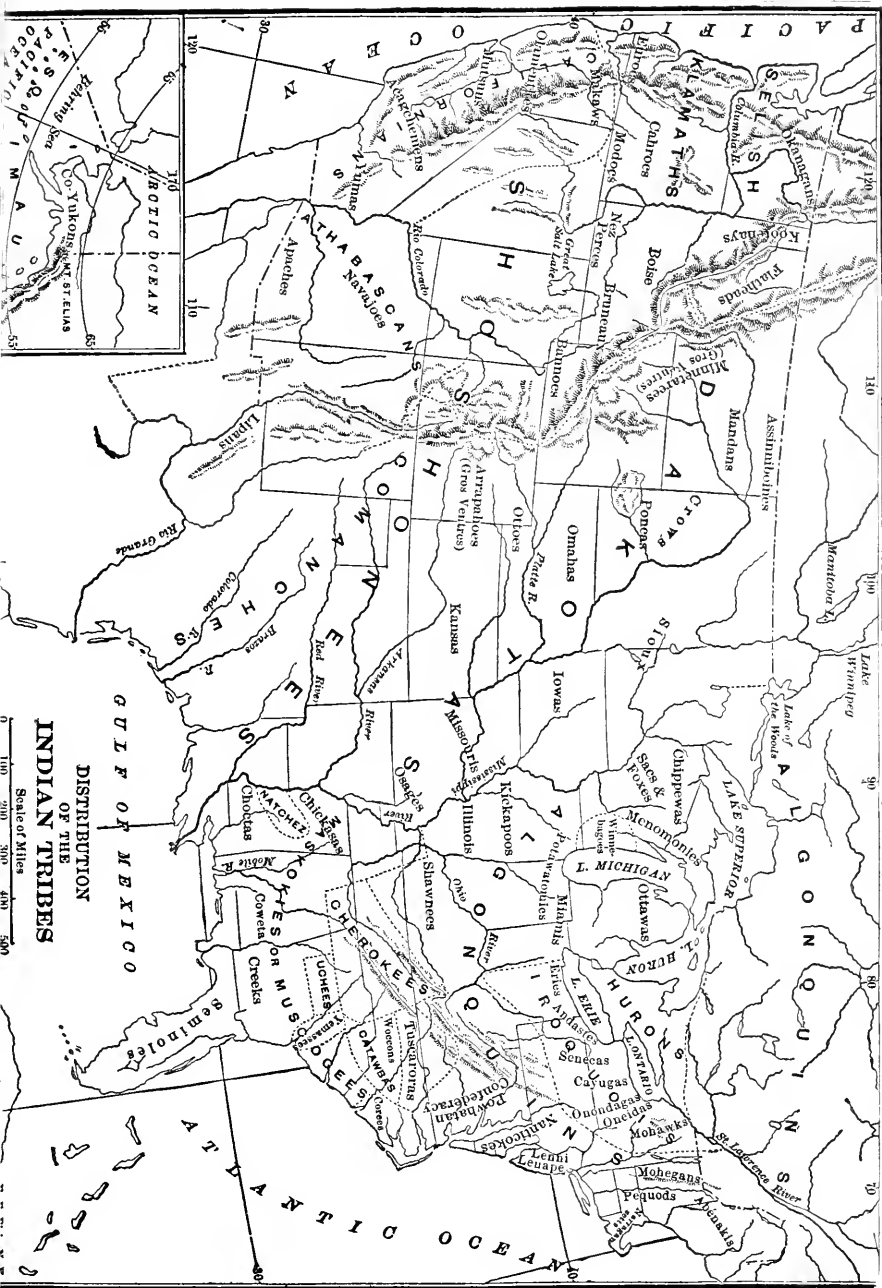
THE AMERICAN INDIANS.

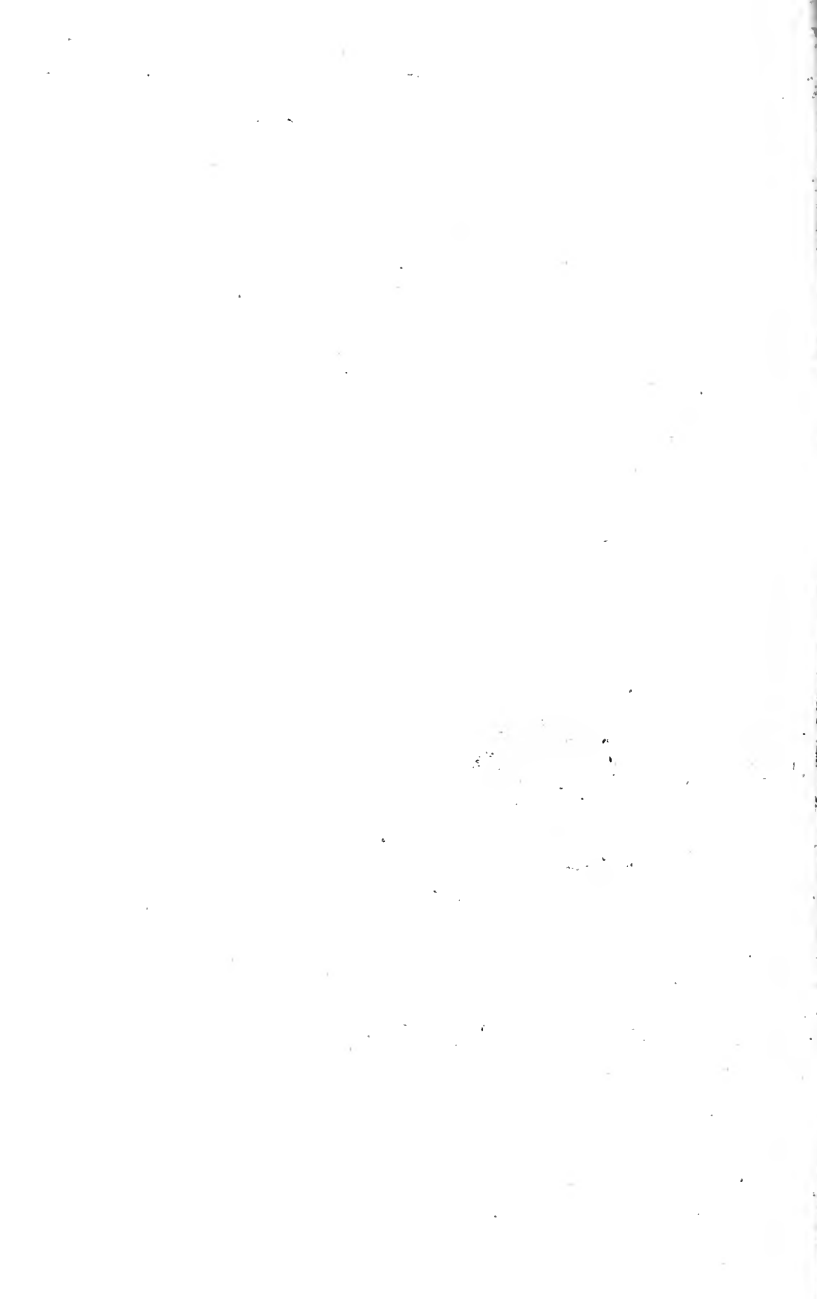
Origin of the Indians.—Where the people found by the Europeans on the islands and continent of America came from cannot be known. It is not to be doubted that they, like the other races of mankind, were descended from Adam and Eve. But whether they drifted across the ocean from Asia or Europe, or crossed from Siberia to Alaska no one can tell. They had no settled tradition of their origin. Some said they came from the north, others from the south, and others again claimed to have come up out of the ground.

Appearance of the Indians.—The red men differed much among themselves, and were quite unlike other races. But in many things they resembled each other. They were of a dusky brown or copper color. They had straight, coarse, black hair; black eyes, and very little beard; very high cheek-bones, small hands and feet, and slender, spare bodies. Though alike in so many ways, there were differences among them, especially in their customs and modes of life. From these differences we distinguish them as savage, barbarous and half-civilized.

Savage Indians.—These were found in the region west of Hudson's Bay and southward to Mexico, between the Rocky Mountains and the Pacific coast. Like their descendants, the Apaches and Athabascans, they roamed from place to place, living in wigwams or tents of skins. They subsisted by hunting and fishing, and did little in cultivating the soil. They wove baskets, but do not appear to have made even rude pottery. Such clothing as they had was the skins of animals killed in hunting.

Barbarous Indians.—Between the Rocky Mountains, the Atlantic Ocean and the Gulf of Mexico the red men may be





called barbarous Indians. They lived in villages, and cultivated with their clumsy stone hoes fields of Indian corn, pumpkins, beans and tobacco, and some other vegetables. Their houses



INDIAN VILLAGE.

were either of sun-baked clay or rude, wooden structures covered with bark. A whole clan—the children, grandchildren and great-grandchildren of one woman—lived in one house, sometimes as many as fifty families. Several clans, who were perhaps related in blood and spoke the same language, made a tribe.

Habits and Customs of Barbarous Indians.—The barbarous Indians were more skilled in making useful articles than the savage tribes. They made pottery and wove a coarse kind of cloth. They made baskets, canoes, weapons of stone and polished flints, and some tribes had quite beautiful robes of feathers interwoven with grass or coarse thread. All the work, except making the weapons, was done by the women, who also cultivated and harvested their scanty crops, prepared the game killed by the men, and carried the skins for the wigwams and whatever they possessed, when the tribes moved from place to place. They also carried their small children, the “papooses,” on their backs. All that the men did was to hunt, to fish and to fight. Neither the savage nor the barbarous Indians had a written language, a system of government, any history or settled religion. Each clan had a symbol, or “totem,” generally the figure of some animal, and some peculiar religious ceremony. The sachem and war chiefs formed the council of the tribe.

Traits of Indian Character.—The savage and barbarous Indians were much alike in character. They were idle, boastful, treacherous, full of revenge and of merciless cruelty. They had no regard for truth. The Indian was a tyrant in his wigwam, and often very cruel to his “squaw,” whom he could kill or drive away when he pleased; but he was fond of his children, especially his sons. They had some idea of hospitality, and were sometimes faithful friends, while always revengeful enemies. To take the scalps of their enemies was their greatest pride, and no youth was received as a “brave” or warrior until he had taken a certain number of scalps. They also took pride in showing neither surprise nor curiosity, neither grief nor pleasure, and never allowed any expression of fear or pain to escape them even under the greatest torture. They noticed everything so closely that they could track a friend or foe through an unknown wilderness by a crumpled leaf, an upturned pebble, or a broken twig.

Indian Religion.—The Indians were not idolaters, they worshipped a Great Spirit with dances, songs and chants. When a warrior died they burned or buried his weapons, and killed his dog to serve him in the “happy hunting grounds” where he was believed to have gone. There was nothing in their belief to make them happier or better.

Pipe of Peace.—The only luxury of these Indians seems to have been tobacco, which they greatly enjoyed and used with much solemnity in their councils. When the “pipe of peace” was smoked, friendship and peace were secured among all who joined in it.

Half-Civilized Indians.—There were not many of these in the United States—only in Arizona and New Mexico. They had strong, fortified towns on steep heights, which were hard to climb, and were called “Pueblo” or “City” Indians, by the Spaniards.

Aztecs and Peruvians.—The Aztecs in Mexico, and the natives of Peru had fine cities with splendid temples and palaces and extensive gardens, good roads and many civilized

customs and habits. They had fixed laws, a regular government, an established religion, and a mode of writing by signs and pictures, called hieroglyphics.

Mound-Builders.—Besides the people whom Columbus, Cortez and their followers found in America, there are traces of older races than they. From the Great Lakes to the Gulf of Mexico are found great mounds or earthworks made by the "Mound-Builders," for tombs, temples or fortifications. In Virginia, Ohio



INDIAN MOUND IN WEST VIRGINIA.

and the States south and west of them, skeletons, burial urns, weapons, pipes, vases of pottery marked with rude designs, articles of coarse cloth, and trinkets of copper and silver have been found. Fortification mounds are to be seen in many places. The most curious of the earthworks are in the form of animals and reptiles. These exist on both sides of the Mississippi, and are thought to have had some religious meaning. The Indians whom the white men found in America could not have made these mounds, and had no traditions concerning them.

Three Different Races.—The barbarous Indians have been divided into three different races: The Algonquins, the Iroquois, and the Maskoki or Muskogeas. These last, under the name of Choctaws, Chickasaws, Seminoles and Creeks, were scattered through the region south of the Tennessee and east of the Mississippi Rivers. The Cherokees of the same region, the Tuscaroras in North Carolina, the Susquehannocks in Pennsylvania, the Five Nations in New York, and the Hurons and Eries belonged to the Iroquois. All other Indian tribes from Labrador to the Carolinas, extending even west of the Mississippi, were Algonquins. The Iroquois were the most civilized of the barbarous Indians.

QUESTIONS.—1. Why is there so much doubt as to the origin of the American Indians? 2. What did they say about themselves? 3. In what respects were all the Indians alike, and in what did they differ? 4. Into how many classes are they divided? 5. What part of the country was the

home of the savage Indians, and how did they live? 6. What tribes are descended from them? 7. Where was the home of the barbarous Indians, and how did they live? 8. What constituted a tribe? 9. What were the habits, customs and occupations of the barbarous Indians? 10. Describe some traits of Indian character, both bad and good? 11. What religious belief and custom had they? 12. What was meant by "the pipe of peace?" 13. Where and who were the half-civilized Indians? 14. Describe the Aztecs and Peruvians? 15. What traces have the "Mound Builders" left, and where are they found? 16. Were they built by the Indians found by the white men? 17. What three races have the barbarous Indians been divided into? 18. Which tribes belonged to the Iroquois, and what region of North America did they inhabit? 19. Tell through what part of the country the tribes belonging to the Muskogees were scattered, and where the Algonquins lived. Find the places on the map.

CHAPTER III.

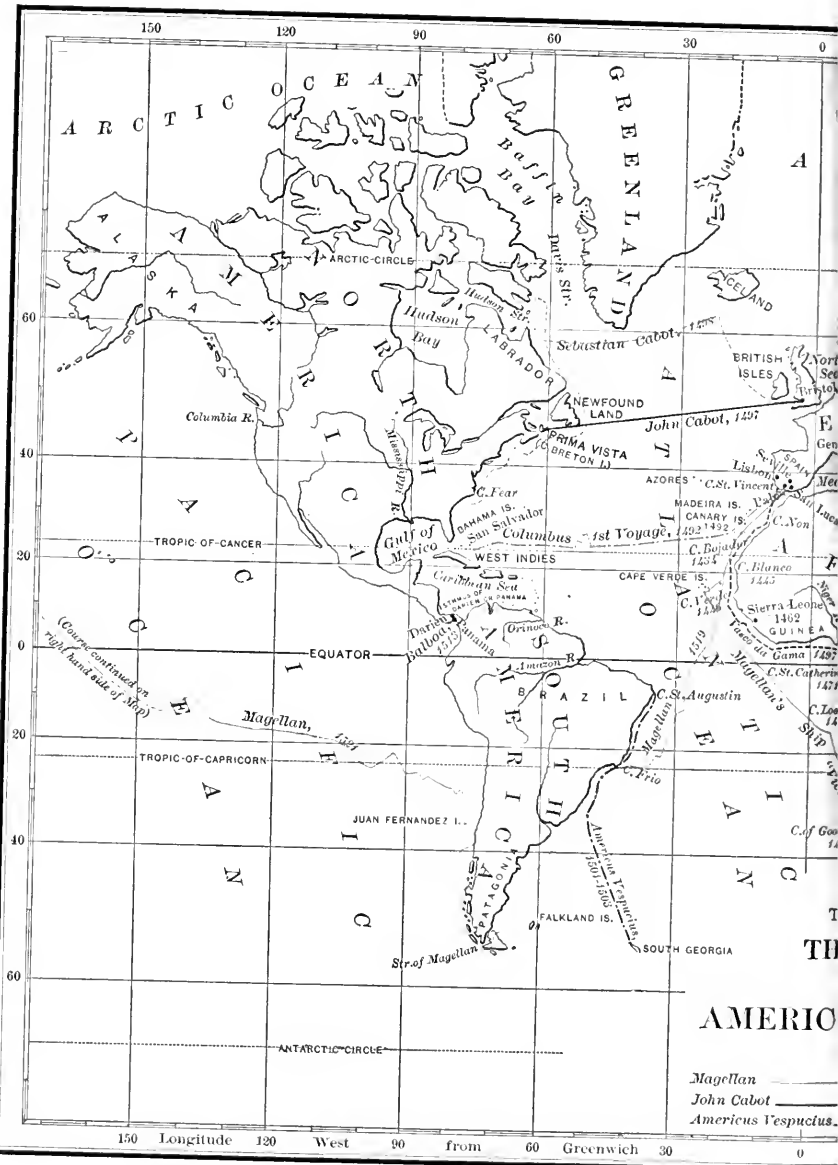
EARLY SETTLEMENTS—VIRGINIA COLONIZED.

Unsuccessful Efforts of the French.—In 1562 and again in 1564, some French Protestants called Huguenots attempted to found settlements on the coast of South Carolina and Florida. The first party went home discouraged. The second was destroyed by the Spaniards from Cuba, who slew the whole nine hundred of them.

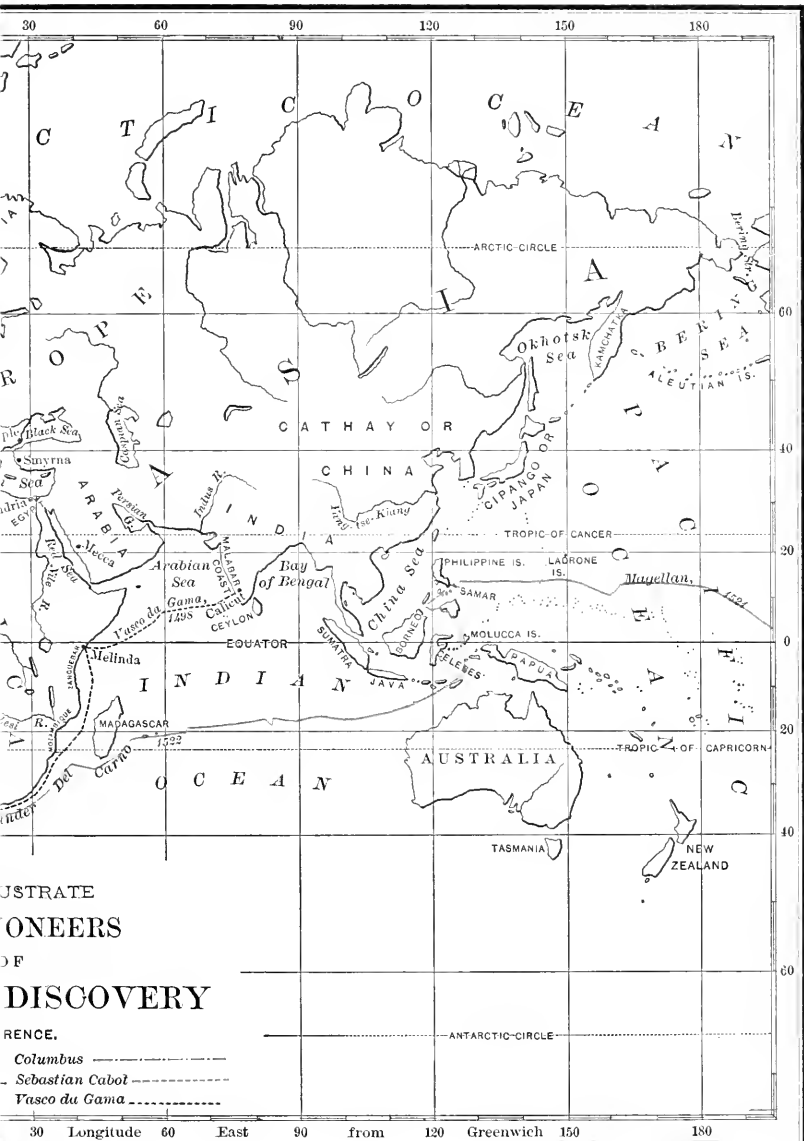
Spanish Settlement.—The Spaniards, who claimed the whole Atlantic coast, established themselves near St. Augustine, in Florida, in 1565.

Canada Settled.—The French, in 1605, made a settlement in Nova Scotia, and Champlain laid the foundation of Quebec three years later.

First Voyage Around the World.—Magellan, a Portuguese sailor, passed further southwest than any European had ever done, sailed through the strait which bears his name, and into the Pacific Ocean, in 1521. Magellan was killed in a battle with the natives of one of the Philippine Islands, but his vessel went on round the world back to Spain.



Magellan
John Cabot
Americus Vesputius.



Second Voyage Around the World.—One of the most daring sailors of his time was Francis Drake, an English captain. In 1577 Drake left England with five ships and one hundred and sixty-four men, to follow Magellan's course into the Pacific. He sailed up the west coast of South America, plundered the Spanish settlements, and took several million dollars worth of gold and silver from their great galleons. Drake then sailed on northward as far as the coast of Oregon. He passed the winter near where San Francisco now stands, and then returned to England around the Cape of Good Hope, making the second voyage around the world. Frobisher, Davis, Hudson and others wasted time, men and money trying to find a northwest passage round America. The bays and straits which bear their names remind us of these dangerous voyages. Frobisher even attempted to make a settlement on the coast of Labrador.



SIR FRANCIS DRAKE.



QUEEN ELIZABETH.

First English Settlement.—Queen Elizabeth of England sent Sir Humphrey Gilbert to colonize Newfoundland in 1585. The effort did not succeed, and Sir Humphrey was lost at sea. His last words were, "We are as near heaven by sea as by land."

Raleigh's Settlements.—About the same time Sir Walter Raleigh, a favorite of the queen, sent an expedition which explored the coast of North Carolina. Their reports of the country were so favorable that it was called Virginia in compliment to the "Virgin Queen." Raleigh then sent a colony to Roanoke Island, but the men became dissatisfied, and went back to England. A second colony came out in 1589, under Captain John White. For awhile the settlement prospered, and Captain White's grandchild, Virginia Dare, was born, the first white native of our country. But Captain White was obliged to return to Eng-

land, and when he got back to Roanoke Island, three years later, every trace of his colony had disappeared, except the word CROATAN carved on a tree. Nothing was ever learned of the lost colony.



WALTER RALEIGH.

Bartholomew Gosnold.—Several years after the unhappy end of Raleigh's colony, Bartholomew Gosnold found that the shortest way to America from England was to sail due west across the Atlantic. He did so, and coasted along Massachusetts, giving their names to Cape Cod, Martha's Vineyard and Elizabeth Island. A few years later Captain John Smith called that whole region New England.

Virginia and Plymouth Companies.—Gosnold's energy revived the spirit of adventure in England, and King James I. granted patents, or authority to take possession of, hold and settle these newly-discovered countries to two companies. The Virginia or London Company was given permission to settle between 34° and 38° , and the Plymouth Company between 41° and 45° north latitude. The country between 38° and 41° was opened to both, but neither company could settle within one hundred miles of the other.

Virginia Colony.—The Virginia Company sent out from London in December, 1606, an expedition of three little vessels. The *Susan Constant*, a craft of 100 tons, was commanded by Christopher Newport; the *God-speed*, of 50 tons, by Bartholomew Gosnold; and the *Discovery*, of 10 tons, by John Ratcliffe. Besides their crews they brought one hundred colonists, among them a council for the colony and the chaplain, the Rev. Robert Hunt.

Settlement at Jamestown, 1607.—A storm drove the little fleet into Chesapeake Bay, so that instead of going to Roanoke Island, as Captain Newport had intended, the ships stopped first at Cape Henry, and then crossed the bay to a point which they called Point Comfort from its safe harbor. After examining the country round the voyagers selected a place forty miles up the river, where, on May 13, 1607, they landed and laid the

foundation of the first permanent English settlement in the United States. The town they called Jamestown, and the river James River, after their king.

The First Church.—One of the first things done was to make a church with some old sails nailed to trees. In this rude temple Mr. Hunt read the English church service every day, and preached twice on Sundays.

Captain John Smith.—The most valuable man among the colonists proved to be Captain Smith. He had been a soldier, and had passed through many strange adventures in fighting against the Turks. His love for adventure brought him to America. On the way out he had displeased the officers of the expedition, being falsely accused of stirring up mutiny among the men.



CAPT. JOHN SMITH.

Visit to Powhatan.—In three weeks Newport, Smith and twenty men went up to find the head of the river. They did not, of course, come to this, but they reached the falls of the river, where Richmond now stands, and set up a cross. The Indian town Powhatan, called after the Indian king, was close by.

Captain Smith Saves the Colony.—The Indians had been very friendly to the explorers, but had attacked Jamestown during their absence, and killed some of their comrades. From this time there was great suffering. Newport and the ships had gone back to England. Their provisions gave out. They were wasted by sickness, and constantly harassed and killed by the Indians. But for the courage and energy of John Smith they must all have been destroyed. He was made president of the colony, and infused new life into it, bearing himself the heaviest share of labor and hardship. He has left an interesting and instructive account of the colony and country.

Pocahontas.—On one occasion he saved his life by showing Powhatan's brother, Opechancanough, his pocket compass; on another he protected himself from attack by tying his Indian guide to his arm and using him as a shield. In his greatest

peril, when King Powhatan had ordered Smith's brains to be beaten out, the king's daughter, Pocahontas, a girl twelve years old, threw herself over him and protected his life at the risk of her own. This Indian princess proved a true friend to the colony, often furnishing them with provisions, and warning them of intended treachery and attack.

Smith's Explorations.—Smith's greatest labor was to supply the colony with provisions, and his most important work the exploring the Chesapeake Bay and all the rivers which



SMITH EXPLORING THE CHESAPEAKE.

empty into it. This voyage was made in an open boat with fourteen men. The accuracy of Smith's map and his account of the country and the Indian tribes he met with are wonderful when we consider the difficulties he had to contend with and the few opportunities he had for finding out about them. His efforts for the good of the colonists were greatly hindered by a gold fever which set them to digging a worthless yellow sand instead of any profitable work.

Efforts to Improve the Colony, 1609.—The Virginia Company had more territory granted it in a new charter, and sent out nine ships with five hundred new settlers. Only part of



WRECK OF THE SEA VENTURE ON BERMUDAS.

these reached Virginia at this time; the rest were wrecked on the Bermuda Islands.

Smith Returns to England.—Not long after this, Captain Smith was so much hurt by an explosion of gunpowder that he had to go to England for proper treatment, and never got back to Virginia.

Disasters of the Colony—Starving Time.—When Smith went away, the colony contained nearly 500 people, supplied with food and other needful things. But all energy and success seemed to leave with him. The people would not work, food became so scarce that this was known as the “Starving Time,” and in a year’s time sickness, starvation and the Indians had destroyed them all save sixty.

Lord Delaware Saves the Colony, 1610.—The Englishmen wrecked in Bermuda built two little ships and came to Jamestown. The settlers were so helpless, and the newcomers so wretched that they had all set sail for England when they met Lord Delaware’s fleet bringing fresh colonists, and a good store of provisions. All returned to Jamestown, and there was never again any thought of abandoning the new country.

Division of Land—Tobacco.—Up to this time everything had been held in common, and the idle had consumed what the industrious worked for. Sir Thomas Dale, the next governor,

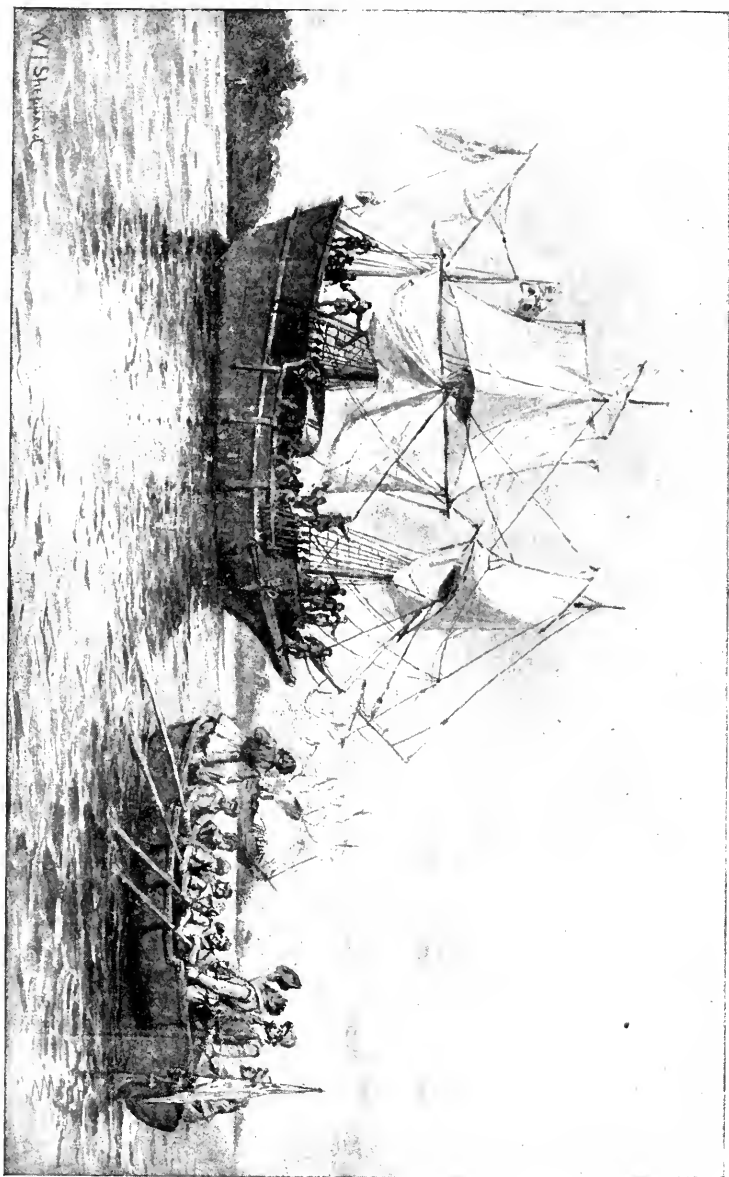
gave each settler some land, and made him pay part of his crop into the public granary. This division of land, and the new industry of planting tobacco gave new life and vigor to the colony.

First Election in America, 1619.—Two years before any other English settlement had been made in America, the Virginia House of Burgesses met at Jamestown. It was composed of two members elected from each settlement, then called boroughs, and from the first proved itself determined to protect the right of each citizen of the colony to his life, liberty and property. In August of the same year, a Dutch vessel brought twenty negroes and sold them as slaves to Virginia planters.

Slavery Universal, 1619.—No one at that time objected to slavery. The Spaniards made slaves of the Indians in the West Indies, and when they proved unfit for work, brought negroes from Africa to take their places. The bringing of these Africans was found so profitable that many English ships engaged in the slave-trade. Sir John Hawkins, one of Elizabeth's great captains, made so much money by selling a cargo of negroes in Cuba, that the queen went into partnership with him and gained great profit. From this time until the early part of this century the European nations carried on the African slave-trade without any scruples.

Shipload of Girls, 1620.—A very different cargo came over the next year—a shipload of girls from England. The colonists eagerly sought them as wives, each man paying one hundred and fifty pounds of tobacco for his wife's passage money.

Marriage and Death of Pocahontas.—When Captain Smith left Virginia, Pocahontas had nothing more to do with the colony, and her father, King Powhatan, was very hostile to it. Pocahontas was captured and taken a prisoner to Jamestown by a certain Captain Argall. She became a Christian, and was married in 1613 to Mr. John Rolfe. She went to England with her husband, and was much noticed as the "Lady Rebecca." Once she met Captain Smith, when she seemed much moved, addressed him as "father," and insisted that he should call her "child."



A MESSAGE FROM LORD DELAWARE—THE COLONY SAVED

She died suddenly at Gravesend, England. Her son was the ancestor of a number of Southern families.

Indian Massacre, 1622.—King Powhatan made friends with the English when his daughter was married. His successor, Opechancanough, hated them, and determined to destroy them. There were about 4,000 colonists scattered on the plantations near the rivers. The 22d of March was the day fixed for the destruction of the whites. At mid-day the work of slaughter began, and before the settlers could defend themselves three hundred of them were slain in the most barbarous way. When they resisted the Indians fled. This massacre so terrified the English that for a time they abandoned their plantations and crowded together for protection.

Lessons Taught by this First Colony.—James I. took away the patent or charter of the London Company and made Virginia a royal province. The story of this first of all English colonies shows the value of the English spirit of perseverance. It also furnished a model of self-government which the other American colonies all followed in some measure.

QUESTIONS.—1. Tell of the attempted French settlements and their fate. 2. Where and when did the Spaniards make a settlement? 3. When and by whom was Canada settled? 4. Tell of the first voyage around the world. 5. Tell of Sir Francis Drake and the second voyage around the world. 6. Describe the "Northwest" Passage and who attempted it. 7. What colony did Queen Elizabeth send out? 8. Tell of Sir Walter Raleigh and the lost colony of Roanoke. 9. Who was Virginia Dare? 10. Who first sailed along the coast of New England, and who gave that region its name? 11. What two companies were organized to colonize America? 12. Tell of the Virginia Colony. 13. Describe Jamestown, and tell how and when a settlement was made there. 14. Tell of the first church. 15. Who was Captain John Smith? 16. Tell of his visit to King Powhatan. 17. What trials had the colonists, and who helped them? 18. Tell the story of Pocahontas. 19. What important explorations did Captain John Smith make? 20. What was the fate of the ships sent to Virginia in 1609? 21. Why did Captain Smith return to England? 22. What disasters then befell the colony? 23. Who saved the colony in 1610? 24. What wise provision did Sir Thomas Dale make? 25. Tell of the first election in America. 26. When and how was slavery introduced? 27. What

was the opinion and practice of slavery at that time? 28. What sort of cargo was brought over in 1620? 29. Tell of the marriage and death of Pocahontas. 30. Tell of the Indian massacre in 1622. 31. What lessons were taught by the first colony?

CHAPTER IV.

EARLY SETTLEMENTS, CONTINUED—NEW YORK, NEW JERSEY, DELAWARE.

Henry Hudson.—In 1609 some Dutch merchants sent out Henry Hudson, an English sailor, to find a short route to the Pacific Ocean. The idea in Europe seems to have been that America was not a continent, but a large island or number of islands, and that between them a nearer way would be found to Asia. Hudson, in his ship, the *Half-Moon*, entered New York Bay, and sailed up the beautiful river, which bears his name, as far as Albany.

The Dutch in New York, New Jersey and Delaware.—Of course Hudson could find no way to the Pacific Ocean, but his



THE HALF-MOON ON THE HUDSON, 1609.

report of the valuable furs offered for sale by the Indians induced merchants in Holland to send more vessels to America. A fur-trade was opened, and in 1614 settlements were made at Albany, on Manhattan Island, and down at points in New Jer-

sey and Delaware. Forts were built to protect the settlers, and the territory was called New Netherland.

Patroons.—This territory was not held in common. Any one who bought land from the Indians and settled fifty persons on it was given possession of the land and great authority over the settlers. These land-owners, called “patroons,” took up land along the Hudson River and down the coast as far as Delaware Bay. They sent over farmers with cattle and everything necessary to make the new settlement successful. They also carried on a large fur-trade with the Indians, and for this purpose had gone into the Connecticut Valley.

Growth of the Dutch Colony.—These Hollanders were accustomed to a government composed of rich merchants and of noblemen, whose titles and estates descended from father to son, and were satisfied to be ruled by the patroons and merchants in America. The governor of New Amsterdam, as the settlement on Manhattan Island was called, became the head of the colony. To ensure the growth of the colony a free passage was offered to all new settlers. “Mechanics, farmers and laborers” were especially invited, so that the colony rapidly grew in numbers and prosperity,

Trouble with the Indians.—Under the influence of rum, the peace which at first existed between the Indians and Dutch was turned into strife. In 1642 the soldiers and citizens of Manhattan Island, under direction of Governor Kieft, massacred one hundred Indians at midnight. In revenge for this, the Algonquins took up arms, burned the villages of the white men, laid waste their fields, and slew the men at their work. But for the intervention of Roger Williams, who was at Manhattan at the time, the whole colony might have been destroyed. He was able to pacify the Indians and patch up a peace, and after awhile a treaty of peace was signed at “Battery Park,” now the southern end of New York city.

Swedes in Delaware.—The principal Dutch settlement in Delaware, near Lewistown, was destroyed by the Indians. A colony of Swedes sailed into Delaware Bay in 1638, bringing

with them their pastor, a supply of food, and articles for trading with the Indians. These emigrants from the frozen north were so charmed with the country that they called Cape Henlopen "Paradise Point." They bought land from the Indians and built, in the State of Delaware, a fort called Christiana, after the little queen of Sweden.

New Sweden taken by the Dutch.—Other colonists followed the first band, and forts were built at different points, one near the city of Philadelphia. The Swedish settlers cultivated the soil with success, and became prosperous. This aroused the jealousy of the Dutch, and in 1655 Governor Stuyvesant came from Manhattan and captured their forts and re-established the Dutch authority over their territory.

Dutch Slave-ships.—We have seen that the Dutch brought negro slaves to Virginia in 1619. They introduced them also into Manhattan, soon after settling there, and Governor Stuyvesant was directed to promote the sale of slaves as far as possible.

Settlement of Maryland—Clayborne's Settlement.—In 1627 William Clayborne, of Virginia, obtained from the governor of the colony permission to settle any part of Virginia lying along the northern parts of the Chesapeake Bay. This was within the region which Captain John Smith had explored and made a map of. Clayborne was greatly pleased with the fertility of the country, and established a colony on Kent Island, not far from Annapolis.

Lord Baltimore.—One year after this the English Lord Baltimore, who was a Roman Catholic, came to Virginia. Charles I. gave him a grant for the land which now forms the State of Maryland, so called in honor of the English queen, Henrietta Maria. King Charles did not regard the fact that this land had already been given away twice, once to the Virginia Company and once to Clayborne.

"Pilgrims of St. Mary's." 1634.—The first Lord Baltimore died before taking possession of his American grant, but it was at once given to his son, Cecil Calvert, who was a noble, high-souled man like his father. This second Lord Baltimore

sent his brother Leonard in charge of two hundred colonists to establish the new colony. Many of these were rich, respectable gentlemen, and they brought with them two Roman Catholic priests belonging to the society called Jesuits. The newcomers paid their respects to the Virginia government at Jamestown, and then sailed on up the Chesapeake Bay in their ships the *Dove* and the *Ark*. The Virginians were courteous to them, but told them that their grant belonged to Virginia. The settlement was made on land bought from the Indians and called St. Mary's, from which the settlers have been called the "Pilgrims of St. Mary's."

Religious Toleration.—These pilgrims, like those of Plymouth Rock, had come to the New World to enjoy their religion in peace. But they were not intolerant like the Massachusetts colonists, of whom we shall presently tell you, and unwilling that others should have the same right. The Calverts were too wise and liberal for that. The charter they got from the king showed their sagacity. Lord Baltimore, who was called the proprietor, because he was the owner of the land, had no authority over the life or property of the settlers. The laws were to be made only by a majority of the freemen, and, along with equal civil liberty, equal religious liberty was secured to all persons professing to believe in Jesus Christ. This was before Roger Williams suffered for his belief in civil and religious liberty, and Maryland has the honor of being the first country on the globe where the doctrine of the equality of all Christian sects was proclaimed.

Difficulty between the Settlements.—Clayborne refused to acknowledge Calvert's authority, and open war at last broke out between the settlements. But, notwithstanding the strife, the Maryland colony grew and prospered. The Indians taught the white men how to raise tobacco and Indian corn, and the women to make corn-bread and hoe-cakes, and the good priests, White and Altham, established missions and converted many of the savages to Christianity.

QUESTIONS.—1. Who was Henry Hudson, and what did he do? 2. When, and why did he come to America? 3. Where was New Netherland. 4. Who

settled there? 5. Who were the Patroons? 6. Tell of the growth of the Dutch colony? 7. What trouble arose with the Indians? 8. Who saved the colony? 9. Tell of the Swedes in Delaware? 10. Who captured the Swedish settlements? Find all the places mentioned. 11. Who established the first settlement in Maryland, when and where? 12. Tell of Lord Baltimore and the name given to Maryland. 13. Who were the "Pilgrims of St. Mary's?" 14. What were some of the laws of the colony, especially in regard to religion? 15. What strife soon arose? 16. In what way did the colony prosper?

CHAPTER V.

EARLY SETTLEMENTS, CONTINUED—NEW ENGLAND.

New England, 1607.—The Plymouth Company sent a colony to Maine, in 1607, but the settlers became discouraged and returned home. English vessels continued to come to the coast for the purpose of fishing, and in 1614 Captain John Smith examined and made a map of the region, which he named New England.



RETURN OF THE MAYFLOWER.

First Colony in New England, 1620.—A band of English who had separated themselves from the English church, first left their country for Holland and then determined to seek a home in America. They sailed from Plymouth, England, in the *Mayflower*, landed on Cape Cod, and then crossed the bay to a place which Captain Smith had named Plymouth several years before. This landing was on December 11, 1620. These emigrants had called themselves "Separatists," but now took the name of "Pilgrims," by which they have been ever since known, while the settlers at Boston were called "Puritans."

Suffering and Death.—In the cold New England winter more than half of the hundred settlers died, among them the governor and his family. Bradford was then chosen governor, and Captain Miles Standish appointed to defend the feeble colony. This was not so difficult as in Virginia, for the Indians along the coast had mostly perished in a pestilence, and the stores of food found in their wigwams were a great help to the destitute English. In 1621 Massasoit, chief of the Wampanoags, made a treaty of peace with the whites, which they faithfully kept for fifty years.

Massachusetts Bay Colony, 1628.—Salem was the first settlement in this colony. It was founded by Puritans. King Charles I. gave the company a charter in 1629, and in 1630 the whole of them, 1,500 in number, came over headed by Governor Winthrop, and brought their charter with them. They settled Boston, Cambridge, Lynn and other places. In a few years colonies were planted in Connecticut, Providence and Rhode Island.

The Puritans.—Opposition to the tyranny of the English king, and hatred to the English church, moved the Puritans to come to America. Numbers of those who first came were unfit for life in a new country. One hundred of them went back to England—two hundred of them died the first year. The survivors set about making homes for themselves. Having their families with them was a great encouragement to them and to the Pilgrims. The Puritans were prosperous in England, and they brought their thrift and industry with them. They were brave, hardy and energetic, pure in life and speech, but they had little Christian charity.

False Idea of Religious Liberty.—They have been said to come to America, seeking “freedom to worship God,” but they were unwilling that others should share that freedom unless they worshipped and lived in the strictest Puritan way. They not only thought themselves absolutely right, but the records show that they considered all who did not agree with them absolutely wrong and worthy to be punished. They had

quarreled with all who differed from their opinions, in England, and they brought the same intolerant spirit with them to New England.

Governor Endicott's Laws.—The Salem colonists were ridiculously intolerant. Their first governor, Endicott, even cut the cross out of the English flags, compelled all the men to have their hair short, and the women to wear veils over their faces in church. Some of the Salem settlers wished to use the English service and the governor immediately sent them back to England.

Voting Law, 1631.—At first all the freemen in the Massachusetts Bay colony were allowed to vote on all important questions, but in 1631 the court in Boston said that only church members should have that privilege. This gave great power to ministers. One of these, young Roger Williams, said that the magistrates had no right to make such a law; that they had nothing to do with a man's religious opinions, and had power only over his person and his property.

Exile of Williams—Rhode Island Settled.—For saying such things the magistrates drove Roger Williams from Salem, deprived his congregation of their land when they begged him to return, and determined to banish him from the colony. To avoid being shipped back to England, Williams stole off through the snow to some friendly Indians. Five of his friends joined him. They settled on Narragansett Bay, and called their new home Providence, in gratitude to God for their safe escape from their enemies. This was the beginning of the State of Rhode Island, in 1636. Other settlers came, and Williams obtained a deed from his Indian friend, Canonicus, for the territory of that State. Not long after leaving Salem, Williams became a Baptist. In 1644 Roger Williams got from Parliament quite a liberal charter for the Rhode Island settlements.

Anne Hutchinson.—Another person who was banished from the Massachusetts colony for strange religious views was Mrs. Anne Hutchinson. She claimed to have had special revelations from God, and the colony was full of strife between those who

avored and those who opposed her. At last she and some of her disciples were turned out of the colony. They went to New York, where they were afterwards killed by the Indians.

Settlement of Connecticut.—The Dutch, of whose coming to America I have already told you, had established a trading post at the mouth of the Connecticut River. The valley of that river was included in the grant of the Plymouth Company, and the English soon took possession of it. A party under Thomas Hooker settled at Windsor. Another came through the forests from the coasts, with their families and their goods, and established themselves at Wethersfield, Windsor and Hartford. Many of them came to avoid religious tyranny in Massachusetts.

Saybrook and New Haven.—Lord Say and Lord Brooke got possession of the territory of Connecticut and sent out a colony under John Winthrop, son of Governor Winthrop, of Massachusetts. He drove the Dutch away, and built a fort, called Saybrook, at the mouth of the river. New Haven was settled later, and in a few years all the settlements had a charter given them and became the colony of Connecticut. They held the same religious opinions as Massachusetts, and in New Haven none but church members had a vote.

Pequot War.—The Connecticut Indians were very hostile to the whites. They would kill the men at their work, burning some to death and torturing others cruelly. At last the settlers determined on revenge. They attacked the Pequot fort, near Stonington, and slew all but five of the seven hundred Indians who defended it. The Pequot tribe was destroyed, and the other Indians so much frightened that for thirty-eight years they did not molest the whites anywhere in New England.

New Hampshire Settled, 1623, and Maine, 1630.—The territory of Maine and New Hampshire was given to two Englishmen, Gorges and Mason. Portsmouth and Dover, on the Piscataqua, were settled in 1623, and seven years later Saco and Biddeford, in Maine. Gorges and Mason then divided the region—Gorges took Maine, and Mason the country south of it, which he called New Hampshire. When Mason died his terri-

tory became part of Massachusetts, but in 1667 was set off to itself as the colony of New Hampshire. The population of New England grew in twenty years to 26,000—15,000 in Massachusetts, the rest in the other colonies. When the strife began between Charles I. and the Parliament in 1640 the Puritans stopped coming to New England.

QUESTIONS.—1. What occurred in the years 1607 and 1614? 2. Tell of the *Mayflower* and the coming of the Pilgrims to New England. 3. Tell of the sufferings and bravery of the settlers, and the treaty with the Indians. 4. What other colonies besides the Massachusetts Bay colony were planted? when, and by whom? 5. What places were settled by them? 6. Describe the Puritans. 7. What ideas had they of religious liberty? 8. Tell of the laws made by Governor Endicott. 9. What voting law was made in 1631, and who opposed it? 10. How was Roger Williams punished, and where did he go? 11. Where did he settle, and what colony did he found? 12. Tell of Anne Hutchinson. 13. By whom, and where were the Connecticut settlements made? 14. Tell of Saybrook and New Haven, and the formation of the colony. 15. What can you tell of the Pequot War? 16. Tell of the settlement of New Hampshire and Maine. 17. What was the population of New England in 1640?

CHAPTER VI.

THE COLONIES UNDER THE COMMONWEALTH.

Execution of Charles I.—The quarrel between the king and Parliament in England became more and more violent. At last, after much fighting, Parliament gained the victory, captured the king, put him in prison, and then cut off his head on January 30, 1649.

Effect on the Colonies.—The strife in England was fortunate for the colonies in some respects. The “Mother Country” was so taken up with its own troubles, that the colonies were left to manage their own affairs in most respects. About the time the civil war began, Sir William Berkeley was made governor of Virginia. Like most of the Virginians, he was devoted

to the king and to the English church, and was at first very popular among all classes.

Acts of the Virginia Assembly.—The Assembly of Virginia believing that the trouble in England had arisen from the opposition of the Puritans and others to the established church, now required all citizens to conform to the English church or leave the colony. In those days intolerance and persecution were practiced by all nations and churches. We must blame the Virginians for being narrow-minded; but they never put any Christian to death for differing with them in religion. Although so far from valuing religious liberty the assembly was very watchful over the civil or legal rights of the people. A law was passed during the session of 1642-'43, which forbade the governor and council to lay any taxes without the authority of the assembly.

Second Indian Massacre.—There had never been real friendship between the Indians and whites since the first massacre in

1622. News of the trouble in England, somehow, reached the red men, and stirred them up to another attack on the whites.

Their chief, Opechancanough, who was one hundred

years old and blind, was still

fierce enough to persuade his people to undertake another

massacre of the hated colonists. The onslaught was

sudden, and before any general resistance could be made

five hundred whites had been killed. The murderers be-

came frightened and took to the woods. Governor Berkeley pursued them with an armed

force and killed many of them. Old Opechancanough was captured and carried mortally wounded to Jamestown. The old warrior fiercely resented being exposed to the gaze of the people

who crowded to look at him. A peace was made with Opechan-



INDIAN ATTACK.

canough's successor, and the Indians gradually died out before advancing civilization.

Prosperity of Virginia.—In spite of the Indian massacres the colony prospered greatly. Trade and commerce increased. In 1648 ten trading ships from London, two from Plymouth, twelve from Holland and seven from New England came and went regularly to Virginia ports.

Loyalty of the Colony to the King.—When the triumph of Parliament and the execution of King Charles were learned in Virginia the assembly declared that the colony was faithful to the king and loyal to his memory, and that it would adhere to his son, Charles II. Some of the colonists held a different opinion, but the majority were very loyal. Numbers of cavaliers, as those who were devoted to the royal cause were called, soon came to Virginia, where they were most cordially welcomed, especially by Governor Berkeley.

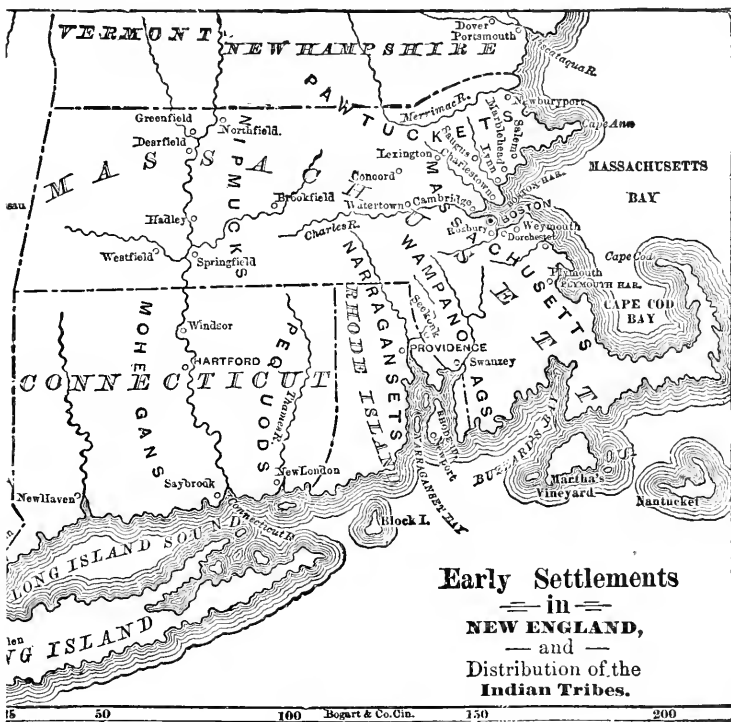
Virginia Yields to Parliament, 1652.—Parliament would not permit its authority to be thus defied, and sent out a naval force to bring Virginia under its control. Captain Davies sailed into James River and required the colony to surrender. After some days it did so on terms very advantageous to its rights and liberties. The citizens of Virginia were allowed all the privileges of freeborn Englishmen, were to continue to govern themselves, and should have the right to trade freely to all places.

Self-Government in the Colony.—Sir William Berkeley withdrew to his country home, and three republican governors were elected within the next eight years. They ruled mildly, and did not restrict the liberty of the people, who regulated their own taxes, built and garrisoned their forts and traded where they pleased. "Universal suffrage" was the rule at that time, for all freemen were allowed to vote.

Religious Freedom.—The treaty with Parliament allowed the use of the English prayer-book and service for only one year. But Cromwell and the Parliament were too busy at home to interfere much in such small matters. No form of public wor-

ship was forbidden, and liberty of conscience was extended to all. Even the Quakers, although excluded by law from 1660 to 1717, remained in the colony and practiced their religion with little interference from other people.

Maryland during the Commonwealth.—Clayborne was one of the men appointed to bring the Chesapeake colonies in subjection to Parliament. He went to Maryland and upset the existing government. Lord Baltimore tried to maintain his control of the colony. There were a good many Puritans in Maryland who took up arms against him. They defeated his followers, drove the priests to Virginia, and deprived the Roman Catholics of the religious freedom granted by them to all other Christians.



New England under the Commonwealth.—As I have told you, the Puritans stopped coming to America in 1640. The strife between the king and Parliament gave them enough employment in England. The Puritans in America sympathized with their friends in England, and rejoiced when the English church seemed conquered and the king was beheaded. Like Virginia, they profited by the inability of England to interfere with them, and regulated their own concerns.

United Colonies of New England, 1643.—The French were unfriendly to New England on the north, the Dutch in New York threatened Connecticut, and there was danger from the many tribes of Indians near the scattered settlements. To defend themselves against these dangers, the colonies of Massachusetts, Plymouth, Connecticut and New Haven formed a confederacy called the United Colonies of New England, which greatly promoted the prosperity of all of them. The Rhode Island colony was refused admittance to the confederacy because of its liberal views of religious freedom.

Trouble with the Indians.—The two tribes nearest the settlements were the Narragansetts and the Mohegans, who were

deadly enemies to each other. One of Mrs. Anne Hutchinson's friends, named Gorton, had settled in Rhode Island, where he bought land from Miantonomo, the chief of the Narragansetts. Two other Indians claimed this land and appealed to Massachusetts to protect their rights. The court in Boston decided against Gorton and Mianto-



THE HIDDEN FOE

nomo. War now broke out between the Narragansetts and the Mohegans, in which the former were defeated and Miantonomo was captured. Uncas, the Mohegan chief, did not dare to torture his prisoner to death, so he sent him to Boston to be tried. The preachers were asked to give sentence against him.

Slaying of Miantonomo.—There was no English law under which Miantonomo could be put to death, but, from fear of the Mohegans or hatred to Gorton, the preachers condemned the captive chief to death, and sent him back to Uncas. Uncas marched his enemy to the battle-field, had him slain with a tomahawk, and then tore the quivering flesh from his body and devoured it. Gorton and his followers were also captured, convicted of heresy and condemned to death, but the sentence was not executed.

Efforts against Intolerance.—Many persons in Massachusetts had grown tired of religious intolerance, and the law allowing nobody to vote except Puritan church members. A number of Presbyterians petitioned to be admitted to equal privileges with the New England churches and to equal civil rights. The Massachusetts authorities were enraged at this petition. The signers of it were heavily fined and put in jail for six months. The ministers came together and organized the Congregational church, which was made the established church of New England; and this was done by the very men who had so bitterly opposed an established church in the "Mother Country."

New England Friendly with Cromwell.—New England did not tamely submit to Parliament, although it hated the king. The new Confederacy refused to surrender their charters, and to take up arms against the Dutch on Manhattan Island. Their sympathies were with Cromwell and his army. The great Lord Protector was very friendly to them, and favored them in many ways. Massachusetts found great fault with Virginia for not yielding to Parliament, though she refused to do so herself.

Rise of the Quakers.—About this time George Fox, a brave, pious man, established a new sect in England. His followers called themselves "Friends," but others gave them in derision the title of "Quakers." These new religionists went farther than the Puritans in abolishing forms and ceremonies. They allowed no distinction of titles, but addressed all persons by their Christian names. They would not fight or contend, and wore their hats constantly as a proof that they paid homage only to

God. They were kind and good to everybody, but they thought they had "inward light" from heaven in their hearts, and that they must "testify" against anything contrary to it. They claimed that this light freed them from obeying any other law.

Quakers Persecuted.—Although the Quakers were good and upright, they made themselves disagreeable by speaking their minds. They were soon hated and persecuted all over Christendom. In England they were sentenced by Parliament to fines, whippings and imprisonment, and were even sold into slavery. The great, successful Cromwell proved no protector to them. But their worst treatment was in Massachusetts. The first who came to the colony were imprisoned and then shipped to the West Indies.

Banishment of Quakers.—Roger Williams did not love Quakers, but he refused to proceed against them. Massachusetts became very angry at this, and the four united colonies passed laws that the Quakers should be banished, and any ship captains who brought them to New England should be severely punished. These laws were very harsh in Massachusetts; milder in Connecticut.

Execution of Quakers.—In spite of hardship and prohibition the Quakers persisted in coming. Then harsher measures were decreed against them. The first return to the colonies was to be punished by flogging and imprisonment with hard labor, the second with cutting off the ears; for the third the tongue was bored through with a hot iron, and in 1658 capital punishment was decided on in Boston. Massachusetts alone agreed to this savage law, which was favored by Governor Endicott and the preachers. They continued to come, and several of them were hung, and their bodies refused Christian burial. This savage barbarity was stopped at last by the interference of the newly-restored King, Charles II.

QUESTIONS.—1. What occurred in England in 1649? 2. How did this affect the colonies? 3. Tell of Sir William Berkeley. 4. What laws were passed by the Virginia Assembly in his time? 5. What can you tell of the second Indian massacre? 6. Why was there little trouble with the Indians

after this time? 7. Tell of the prosperity of Virginia. 8. Her loyalty to the English king. 9. Her finally yielding to the Parliament. 10. What can you tell of the self-government of the colony and of her religious freedom? 11. What can you tell of Maryland during this time? 12. Tell of New England under the Commonwealth. 13. What union was formed there in 1643? 14. Which colony was excluded, and why? 15. Tell of troubles with the Indians, Gorton, Miantonomo and Uncas. 16. How were Miantonomo and Gorton treated? 17. What efforts were made against intolerance in Massachusetts, and what church was established in New England? 18. How did New England feel towards Cromwell? 19. Tell of George Fox and the Quakers. 20. How and where were the Quakers persecuted? 21. What laws did the four united colonies pass against them? 22. What modes of punishment were inflicted upon the Quakers, and what stopped the persecution?

CHAPTER VII.

VIRGINIA AFTER THE RESTORATION—BACON'S REBELLION.

Restoration of Charles II., 1660.—Charles II. was a selfish, unprincipled man, who cared for nothing but his wicked pleasures. Notwithstanding this, the Virginians rejoiced greatly when the king came to his own again. Governor Berkeley was also restored to power and a new assembly was elected, which passed laws contrary to the spirit of liberty which had flourished in the colony.

Restriction of Liberty.—Although Virginia had been so loyal to the king, she was now oppressed by both him and the Parliament. Parliament passed laws, called the Navigation Laws, ordering that all trade with the colonies should be carried on only in English ships to English ports, and imposed heavy taxes without consent of the colonial assemblies. The Virginians were much dissatisfied, and sent Governor Berkeley to obtain better legislation in England. Instead of doing this, he came back full of the spirit of oppression. The assembly, elected for only two years, was continued in power for fourteen, and upheld the governor in his tyranny. Unlawful taxes were

levied; large salaries were ordered for the governor and members of the government; voting was restricted to land-owners and housekeepers, and every one was required to conform to the Church of England.

Resistance.—To resist this oppression, the liberty-loving Virginians tried various plans. At one time only small crops of tobacco were planted, to lessen taxation; at another an insurrection was organized. This was betrayed, and some of the insurgents were captured and hanged.

Injustice of the King.—Charles himself was guilty of the greatest wrong to the colony. He gave to one of his favorites, Lord Culpeper, the well-settled country lying between the Rappahannock and Potomac Rivers; and to another, Lord Arlington, "all the dominion of land and water called Virginia," for thirty-one years. This injustice roused the people to great indignation, and even the tyrannical assembly was moved to defend the rights of the colony.

Efforts to Secure a New Charter.—The Burgesses sent three agents to petition the king to govern them himself, and not to subject them to any of their fellow-subjects, and to secure the liberties of the colony by a new charter. These agents made great efforts to ensure the rights of the colonists, but all in vain. They were detained in England a whole year without receiving any satisfaction, while matters were growing worse in Virginia.

Fresh Trouble with the Indians.—Twenty years before this time a fierce mountain tribe of Indians, the Ricahecrians, had come down into the region around Richmond, and seemed disposed to settle there. The Virginia planters lived scattered about, and the distance between their settlements made them specially liable to Indian attacks. They had put down the native Indians at the time of the second massacre, and by the help of the Pamunkey tribe, who had become their allies, they attempted to drive away the new-comers. This was not entirely successful, and Totopotamoi, the Pamunkey chief, was killed. From that time the Ricahecrians had infested the Piedmont

region, and committed outrages upon the peaceful settlers. Hostility was now shown by the Indians north of the Potomac against the people of both Maryland and Virginia.

Outrages in Virginia.—When an expedition of settlers on both sides of the Potomac moved against the Indians in Maryland, many of them came into Virginia, and committed murders and cruelties everywhere. There was terror throughout the country. Families were crowded together in houses which offered the best protection. The men did not dare to work or travel alone. They carried their arms always, and kept constant watch against hidden foes. Governor Berkeley did nothing to protect them, and the colonists found they must undertake their own defence.

Nathaniel Bacon.—A leader arose for the suffering colonists in the person of Nathaniel Bacon, a brave, well-educated young Englishman who had settled on James River about three years before this. The Indians had murdered the overseer and a servant on his plantation, near Richmond, and Bacon vowed vengeance upon them. Knowing this, several hundred colonists assembled, chose Bacon for their commander, and applied to Governor Berkeley to give him a commission.

Berkeley's Harsh Treatment of Bacon.—Berkeley hated Bacon for his liberal views and refused to grant the commission. The danger from the Indians was so pressing that Bacon moved against them without it. Berkeley was so enraged at this that he declared that all Virginians who did not return at once to their homes should be treated as traitors and rebels. Most of the men with Bacon yielded to this threat, but Bacon, with fifty of them, attacked the Indians, and gained one victory over them. Berkeley was about to pursue Bacon when other troubles recalled him to Jamestown.

A New Assembly.—The citizens of the lower counties believed that most of their troubles arose from the long continuance of the assembly. They, therefore, rose in arms and demanded that it should be dissolved. Berkeley was compelled to yield to them, and issued writs for the election of a new one. The county of Henrico elected Bacon as their delegate, but

Berkeley had him arrested on his way to take his seat at Jamestown. The new assembly was friendly to Bacon, and patched up a peace between him and the governor. Bacon was to ask pardon for his offences and promise not to repeat them. He was then promised the commission and made commander-in-chief against the Indians. Bacon performed his part and took his seat. The assembly began at once to repeal oppressive laws and redress the grievances of the people, and they hoped that freedom and justice had come again to Virginia.

Berkeley's Tyranny, 1676.—But the governor would agree to scarcely any decrees of the assembly. He became daily more arbitrary, and refused to sign the commission for Bacon. This injustice made the people angry, and numbers of them flocked around Bacon. The Indian outrages became unbearable and



"A FAIR MARK—SHOOT!"

war against them a necessity. At the head of four hundred men Bacon marched to Jamestown and demanded the promised commission. Berkeley could only collect one hundred militia, the rest were with Bacon.

The Commission Granted.—Berkeley was no coward, and when Bacon and his troops appeared the old cavalier advanced to meet them, bared his breast, and called out loudly, “A fair mark—shoot!” Bacon answered civilly that they had no intention of harming him or any one else; that they had come for the commission promised him, in order to have authority against the Indians, and that they intended to have it. The Burgesses wished the commission to be given, and at last the governor was induced to sign it. He also approved the milder laws passed by the assembly.

Further Ill-Treatment of Bacon.—The joy at the granting the commission was short-lived. Bacon had scarcely marched against the Indians when the governor proclaimed him a rebel and traitor, and declared that his commission was taken away. News of the governor’s treachery was carried to Bacon by Drummond and Lawrence, two earnest patriots. Berkeley had gone to the loyal county of Gloucester to raise a force to oppose Bacon, but the people would not join him, and said they looked upon Bacon as their brother and defender. Bacon was justly angered at Berkeley’s insults, and marched to Gloucester to compel their withdrawal. But Berkeley did not wait for him. He took all the powder and ammunition from Fort York, the principal defence of that part of Virginia, and crossed the Chesapeake Bay to Accomac.

Bacon’s Rebellion.—Bacon now urged the freemen of the colony to come together and free the colony from Berkeley’s tyranny. A large number of citizens assembled at “Middle Plantations,” afterwards Williamsburg, and called a convention of the colonists. They declared that the governor had given up his office by withdrawing to Accomac, and were very earnest in behalf of their liberties. The convention took an oath to protect Bacon against the governor, and join him against the Indians.

First Declaration of Rights, 1676.—The convention drew up a paper stating the wrongs done them by the navigation laws, the heavy taxes, and the leaving them exposed to Indian

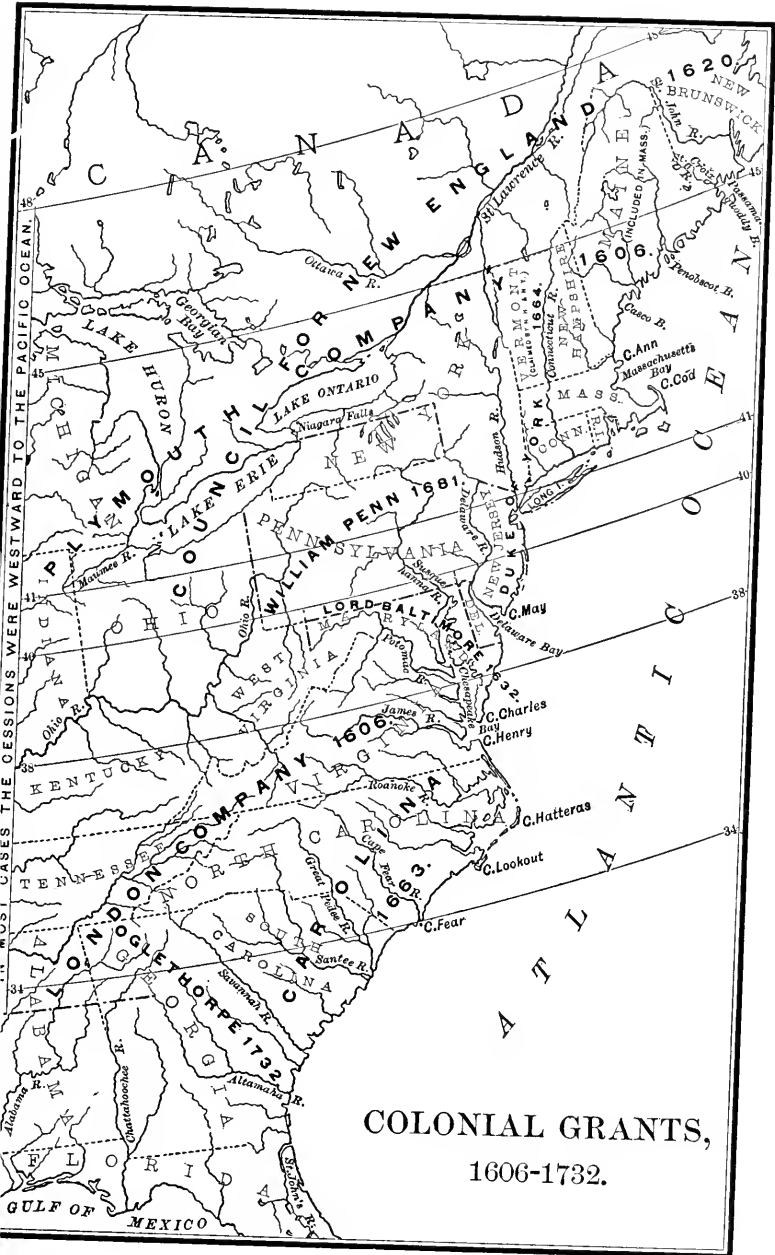
atrocities. They also declared that as Berkeley had asked for royal troops, to attack them as rebels and traitors, they would resist those troops until the true state of affairs in the colony was made known to the king. You must remember that this was done one hundred years before another young Virginian wrote the Declaration of Independence to be signed by another assembly of American freemen.

Indians Defeated at Bloody Run.—After these measures at Middle Plantations Bacon led his army against the Indians. He attacked their stronghold near Richmond, routing them completely and destroyed their power in Virginia forever. The little stream along which this fight occurred has been called “Bloody Run” ever since.

Jamestown Burned.—Berkeley collected an army in Accomac of unprincipled and wicked men, whom he tempted by hope of plunder. With this force and some English vessels in the bay he came back to Jamestown, and once more proclaimed Bacon a rebel and traitor. When Bacon marched upon Jamestown the governor and army stole off to the ships. Bacon then burned the town that it might not again shelter his enemies.

Bacon's Death.—While he was thus contending for the principles of free government, fatigue and exposure threw the patriot leader into a fever from which he died. To prevent outrage to his remains they were buried secretly, and his grave is forever unknown. He was a man of a noble soul, a true patriot and lover of freedom. His followers became discouraged and scattered. Berkeley hunted them down, and hanged twenty-two of them. For years after this the colony was more oppressed than ever.

Resistance of the Planters.—Berkeley's successor, Culpeper, was a man very eager to get money, and did everything to wring it from the Virginians. A law was made that towns should be built at certain places, and that no tobacco should be shipped except from these towns. This was hard on the planters scattered along the rivers and streams. They openly





disobeyed the law, and when the government became angry destroyed their young tobacco to deprive the government of a profit on it. This was declared treasonable and was punished with hanging.

Treaty with the Five Nations, 1684.—The frontiers of Virginia were threatened by warriors from the Five Nations. To avert the danger Lord Effingham, Culpeper's successor, together with Governor Dongan, of New York, and commissioners from Massachusetts, held a conference at Albany with the sachems of the Mohawks, Oneida, Onondaga and Cayuga tribes. There was much talk, and then a treaty of peace was made, the tomahawk was buried, the Indian songs of peace were sung, and the peace-pipes smoked.

Effects of the Restoration in Maryland.—With the return of the king Lord Baltimore regained his power in Maryland, where he exercised his authority so wisely that the colony steadily increased in prosperity and numbers.

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you tell of Charles II. and his restoration? 2. How did it affect Virginia? 3. What unjust laws were passed by Parliament, and what restrictions laid upon the Virginians? 4. What resistance did they make? 5. What acts of injustice did King Charles perpetrate against Virginia? 6. What steps did the Burgesses now take and with what success? 7. In what region of Virginia did fresh troubles with the Indians break out, and why? 8. What outrages were committed in Virginia, and how did they affect the colonists? 9. Who was Nathaniel Bacon? 10. How was he treated by Governor Berkeley, and why? 11. Tell of the new assembly and its efforts to redress grievances. 12. Tell of Berkeley's tyranny and of Bacon's patriotism. 13. Under what circumstances did the governor sign the commission? 14. What proclamation was now made against Bacon, and what steps were taken by the patriot and the tyrant? 15. What is meant by Bacon's rebellion? 16. Tell of the first Declaration of Rights, and when it was drawn up. 17. Who wrote the Declaration of Independence one hundred years later? 18. Tell of the defeat of the Indians at "Bloody Run." 19. How was Jamestown burned? 20. Tell of the death and burial of Bacon. 21. What revenge did Berkeley take? 22. What law was made which was resisted by the planters? 23. Tell of the treaty with the Five Nations. 24. What effect had the restoration in Maryland? Find all places mentioned on the map.

CHAPTER VIII.

THE NORTHERN COLONIES AFTER THE RESTORATION—THE CAROLINAS,
PENNSYLVANIA, DELAWARE.

Effects of the Restoration in New England.—The colonies of Connecticut, Hartford, Plymouth, Rhode Island, and even New Haven, proclaimed Charles II. king as soon as they heard of his return to the throne. Massachusetts did not acknowledge it. Two of his father's judges had come to that colony and New Haven, and the new king was not disposed to friendship with them.

Charters of Connecticut and Rhode Island.—Connecticut sent Governor Winthrop to ask for a charter. He procured a liberal one, in which Hartford and New Haven were included. Rhode Island also was given a charter with all the privileges which Roger Williams had desired.

Subjection of Massachusetts.—The king also promised to respect the charter of Massachusetts if she would acknowledge his authority, would allow all the freemen to vote, and permit the services of the English church to be held in her territory. The first condition only was complied with.

John Eliot.—Many efforts had been made to Christianize the Indians since the settlement of New England. John Eliot, a godly and learned man, devoted his life to this work. He made a grammar of the Indian language and translated the Bible into it. By his efforts and those of other missionaries, there were four thousand "praying Indians," professed Christians, in Massachusetts in 1674.



JOHN ELIOT.

King Philip's War, 1675.—The converted Indians seemed friendly to the whites, but all the rest

had grown more and more hostile, and in 1675 the worst outbreak occurred that had ever taken place. Philip, chief of the Wampanoags, was the leader in this bloody strife. His tribe and the Narragansetts lived close to the Massachusetts and Rhode Island settlements. They numbered seventeen hundred warriors.

Attack on Swanzey.—The Indians swooped down on Swanzey one Sunday in June, burned the town and butchered the people. If driven from one place, they attacked another with fire, torture and murder, sparing neither men, women nor children.* When Philip was defeated, he went to the Nipmucks, in the Connecticut Valley, and the work of destruction grew worse than ever.

Result of the War.—The Narragansett chief, Canonchet, hated the English for the murder of his father, Miantonomo. He held a stronghold within the borders of Rhode Island. The whites attacked and captured this fortress, killing one thousand Indians. The war continued until both Philip and Canonchet were killed and their followers nearly destroyed. The captured Indians, Philip's little son, nine years old, among them, were sold as slaves to the West Indies, and the Indian power in southern New England was broken forever, but not before twelve towns had been burned, forty others attacked and one thousand whites slain.

Massachusetts Charter Annulled.—In 1684 agents were sent to Boston to enquire if the king's demands had been obeyed. They had not been, and the king ordered that the charter of the colony should be surrendered to him. When the assembly declined to do so, their charter was declared void, and the whole region was made a royal province.

Dutch Territory Given to the Duke of York, 1684.—Disregarding the charter he had granted to Connecticut, and the fact that the Dutch held New Netherland, King Charles in 1684 gave to his brother, the Duke of York, the land lying between the Connecticut and Delaware Rivers. England was at peace with Holland, but the king did not scruple to send over vessels

to attack the Dutch colony at New Amsterdam. There were by this time many English living among the Dutch, who wished to assert their right to self-government and, when the English ships appeared, the governor of New Amsterdam found so many of the colonists opposed to his arbitrary rule that he surrendered without resistance. Their liberties, rights and property were secured to the colonists, and New Netherland was renamed New York. The English governor renewed the treaty with the Five Nations, and the whole change was peaceably made.

Colony of New Jersey.—The Dutch and Swedish settlements along the Delaware also submitted to English authority. The Duke of York gave the territory to two English lords, and it became a separate colony under the title of New Jersey. England now held the whole Atlantic coast as far down as Florida.

Beginning of the Carolinas.—Charles II. was a royal giver. He regarded neither former grants, charters nor promises. In 1663 he bestowed upon eight of his courtiers the country between 31° and 36° of latitude, stretching back to the Pacific Ocean. The southern portion of this grant was claimed by Spain, the northern part had first been given to the Virginia Company, and afterwards to different individuals. Out of it were formed The Carolinas, so called in honor of the king.

Settlements in North Carolina.—There were already a good many whites in the eastern part of North Carolina. There were Puritans from New England along the Cape Fear River, Non-conformists from Virginia, on Albemarle Sound, and emigrants from Barbadoes in other places. Governor Berkeley, of Virginia, was one of the eight to whom Carolina had been given, and he made William Drummond, who has been mentioned in connection with Bacon, governor there.

The Grand Model.—The eight courtiers wished to set up a strong, tyrannical government, and they employed the philosopher, John Locke, to draw up a plan for it. They wished to divide the country into provinces with great lords over them, to have a nobility, knights, and distinct orders in society. Locke's plan was called the "Grand Model," and had one hundred sep-

arate regulations. It was entirely unsuited to a free people who had to work hard for their living, and never succeeded, although the English governors tried to enforce it for years. The freemen in the settlements made laws to suit themselves. They encouraged immigration, and protected all in their civil rights. After Bacon's death a number of his followers sought safety in Carolina, and fostered the spirit of liberty among the Carolinians. This increased until the people rose against Sothel, who had tyrannized over them for five years, deprived him of office and drove him from the colony.



JOHN LOCKE.

South Carolina Settled, 1670.—It was hoped that the “Grand Model” would succeed better in a new settlement, and the proprietors set about establishing a new colony farther south. An English colony came to Port Royal where John Ribault, a Frenchman and a Huguenot, had attempted a settlement a hundred years before. In a short time they moved to the mouth of the Ashley River, and founded a city called Charleston after the king. The soil of the new region was fertile and the climate pleasant, and immigrants flocked to it. Dutch settlers came from New York and from Holland, and English, Irish and Scotch from Great Britain. A colony from Barbadoes having with it two hundred negro slaves came first to Cape Fear, and then into South Carolina. The “Grand Model” was no more popular than it had been in the northern colony. The people paid little attention to it, but established laws for their own regulation, and carried on a constant struggle against the governors appointed by the proprietors.

The Huguenots in the Colonies.—At this time the French Protestants, called Huguenots, were forced by persecution to flee from France. They were among the best of the French people, nobles, gentlemen, worthy citizens, honest tradesmen and skillful artisans, who were welcomed everywhere. Numbers of them came to America and settled—many more in South

Carolina than elsewhere. As many as sixteen thousand made their homes along the Cooper and Santee Rivers. The English settlers, at first, looked coldly upon the French new-comers, but the Huguenots were refined, cultivated, well-bred, industrious, and courageous, and became the most prosperous and prominent people in South Carolina. Their descendants in all parts of the United States have been the advocates of liberty and education, of purity of character and life.

Indian Troubles.—The Carolinas, as Virginia had done, suffered greatly from Indian outrages. They had bloody fights with the savages, and were several times obliged to seek aid from Virginia against them.

Grant to Penn, 1681.—What is now the State of Delaware had been bought by the Quakers for a thousand pounds as an asylum for their persecuted brethren. The territory west of it was now given by King Charles to William Penn, one of the most distinguished among them. Penn's father, a famous English sailor, had lent the king in his days of poverty and exile sixteen thousand pounds. In payment of this debt Charles granted the land west of the Delaware River to William Penn, and called it Pennsylvania in compliment to the Quaker courtier. For this grant Penn was to pay the king two beaver skins a year.



WILLIAM PENN.

Founding of Philadelphia, 1682.—The first settlement in the new colony was made near Philadelphia in 1681 in holes dug in the hillsides. The next year Penn himself came over. The Duke of York appointed him governor of the "lower counties," now the State of Delaware. All the whites welcomed Penn eagerly, and he at once proceeded to establish a government under which every man should enjoy both civil and religious liberty. He directed that a town should be laid out in squares along the Delaware and Schuylkill Rivers, which he called "Philadelphia," or Brotherly Love.

Treaty with the Indians.—True to his peaceful principles,

Penn sought to avert quarrels with the Indians by fair and honest dealing. He invited the Indian chiefs to consult with him and agree upon a treaty of peace and love. The Indians were not unwilling to grant this request, because the English power was now become formidable in the colonies, and because the tribes to which it was addressed belonged to the Lenni-Lenape, who had been subdued by the Iroquois, who were allies of the English. The council was held under an elm tree at "Shack amaxon," in the city of



PENN'S TREATY.

Philadelphia, and the spot is marked by a marble monument. The Indians smoked their peace pipes; Penn made them a friendly speech, and offered them presents, with which they were much pleased. They also gave him the token of peace, a wampum-belt, and promised to live at peace with him and his children while the sun and moon endured.

Growth of the Colony.

Lands for the settlers were bought from the Indians, which were rapidly filled up. Freedom from fear of Indian outrage brought crowds of wealthy settlers to accept Penn's invitation to all who were oppressed, to find homes in his fertile territory. English, Irish, Scotch, Welsh and Germans came in such numbers that in three years Philadelphia



became a town of six hundred houses, and there were ten thou-

sand people in the colony. The government was a free one. The law-makers were chosen by all the freemen. Land was sold very low to any who could pay for it, and equal rights were secured to each citizen who obeyed the laws.

Delaware a Separate Colony, 1703.—In this year Delaware was separated from Pennsylvania, and made an independent colony with its own assembly and laws. You have thus learned how each of the thirteen original States was settled, except Georgia, which took place fifty years later.

QUESTIONS.—1. How did the Restoration affect the New England colonies? 2. Which one refused to acknowledge the king? 3. What charters did Connecticut and Rhode Island procure? 4. Tell of the subjection of Massachusetts. 5. What great and good work was done by John Eliot? 6. What can you tell of King Philip's War? 7. Tell of the attack on Swanzy. 8. What was the result of the war? 9. Why was the charter of Massachusetts annulled? 10. What great tract did the king bestow upon his brother, and to whom did it originally belong? 11. Tell of the formation of the colony of New Jersey. 12. How were the Carolinas formed? 13. Tell of the settlements in North Carolina, and its first governor. 14. What was the "Grand Model," and who wrote it? 15. Tell of the settlements in South Carolina and the growth of the colony. 16. Tell of the Huguenots and their coming to the colonies. 17. Did the Carolinas suffer from Indian outrages? 18. Who had bought the present State of Delaware, and what great tract was granted to William Penn? 19. Tell of the founding of Philadelphia and the meaning of its name. 20. What treaty did Penn make with the Indians, and when? 21. Tell of the growth of the colony and its government. 22. When did Delaware become a separate colony? Find on the map the colonies which had been settled by 1703.

CHAPTER IX.

COLONIES UNDER JAMES II.—THEIR DIFFERENCES AND RESEMBLANCES.

New England Charters Revoked, 1687.—Charles II. was succeeded in 1685 by James II., who was a narrow-minded man, and a worse ruler than his brother. To deprive the New England colonies of all their liberties, he sent over as their gov-

ernor Sir Edmund Andros, who was hated by the people. Rhode Island and Connecticut were ordered to give up their charters. They did not obey at once, and Andros went to Rhode Island first, set aside the government, and broke the seal of the charter, and compelled the brave little colony to submit.

Story of the Charter Oak, 1687.—Andros then went to Hartford to seize the charter of Connecticut. The governor, old Robert Treat, a gallant captain in King Philip's War, pleaded earnestly with Andros the right of the colony to retain its charter. They argued until nightfall. The charter was in view of all, on the table. Suddenly the candles were blown out, and when they were relighted the charter had disappeared. William Wadsworth, of Hartford, snatched it away in the darkness and hid it in a hollow oak-tree close by. Andros assumed control, and the secretary of the colony wrote "finis" on the colonial records, because he thought liberty at an end. New York and New Jersey were also under the authority of Andros, who governed all the colonies from Maine to Maryland.

Andros's Tyranny.—New England was oppressed in every way. Andros dissolved the courts and laid the taxes. Nothing could be printed without his sanction, and personal liberty was greatly restricted. Perhaps the most grievous thing to the people of Boston was the king's order that the Church of England service should be held in one of the Boston churches. The use of the old South Meeting-house for this purpose was refused, and Andros took possession of it and had the services of the Church of England performed alternately with the Congregational.



OLD SOUTH MEETING-HOUSE.

James, the Friend of Penn.—James was a friend of William Penn. The Quaker's colony was not interfered with, and twelve hundred Friends were released from prison.

Unfriendly to Maryland.—Although a Catholic, like Lord Baltimore, James showed no favor to Maryland, and had made arrangements to take that colony into his own hands when he was dethroned.

Virginia Oppressed.—In Virginia a continued struggle went on between the governor, who represented the crown, and the assembly elected by the people. The first assembly after James's accession protested that the governor had no authority to set its decrees aside. The king was so much enraged at this that he had the assembly dissolved, and Robert Beverley, their clerk, prosecuted and deprived of the right to vote. Beverley at one time was a staunch Royalist, but his patriotic spirit opposed the king's oppression, and in punishment he was imprisoned and died a victim to the sovereign's disfavor.

Monmouth's Followers Sold as Slaves.—James also wreaked his vengeance on the supporters of the ill-fated Duke of Monmouth by sending them as slaves to Virginia, and ordered that they should not be redeemed for ten years. Children were also kidnapped and sent to the colonies to be sold. Even the queen and her great ladies made money by this shameful traffic.

Downfall of James.—For three years the English endured the king's tyranny, then they rose up and drove him from the kingdom.

William and Mary.—The Prince of Orange and his wife, the Princess Mary of England, were called to take possession of the throne, which they did, promising to be guided by the wishes of Parliament. Thus the second English revolution was effected without bloodshed in 1688.

Effects in America.—When James was deposed Andros also lost his power. Massachusetts and Rhode Island restored their governments according to their charters, and the charter of Connecticut was brought from its hiding-place.

Leisler in New York.—The rising against Andros's authority in New York was headed by Leisler. For awhile he got possession of the government, but was afterwards falsely accused of treason, was taken prisoner and beheaded.

Colonies in 1688.—The twelve English colonies had been settled in the following order :

Virginia, by the English, at Jamestown.....	1607
New York, by the Dutch, at New York.....	1614
Massachusetts, by the English, at Plymouth.....	1620
New Hampshire, by the English, at Portsmouth.....	1623
Connecticut, by the English, at Windsor.....	1633
Maryland, by the English, at St. Mary's.....	1634
Rhode Island, by settlers from Massachusetts, at Providence..	1636
Delaware, by the Swedes, at Christiana.....	1638
Pennsylvania, by the Swedes, at Philadelphia.....	1643
North Carolina, by the English, near Albemarle Sound.....	1663
New Jersey, by the English, at Elizabeth Town.....	1664
South Carolina, by the English, at Charleston.....	1670

When William and Mary came to the throne the whole Atlantic coast from New Brunswick to Florida belonged to England.

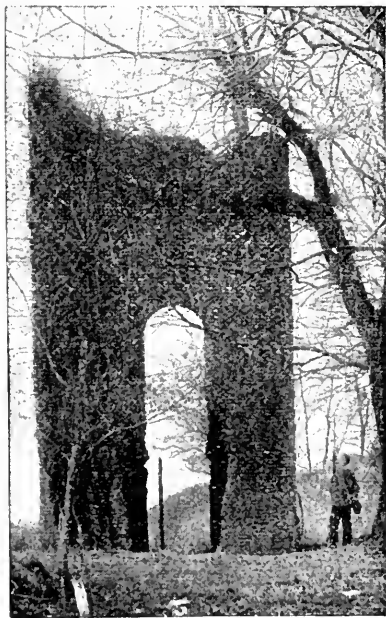
Resemblances Among the Colonists.—In these colonies the people were very different in some things; in others much alike. They almost all spoke the same language, used the English Bible, and held the Protestant faith. They all loved freedom, and claimed the right to make their own laws and lay their own taxes. They had all passed through early trials of starvation, sickness and Indian warfare, but had made steady progress for many years.

Differences Among the Colonists.—The differences between the colonies were as marked as their resemblances. Their habits and modes of life, their forms of worship, and their ideas of their relations towards each other were widely different in different places.

Character and Opinions of the Virginians.—Virginia was settled chiefly by men from the middle and aristocratic classes, who loved the king and Church of England. They steadfastly claimed and contended for the personal rights of each freeman,

but were slow to try new ways or to upset established forms. Conservative is the word which best describes them. Their belief in the rights of every one made them respect freedom of thought and action in their neighbors. They jealously defended the rights of the colony to all the lands granted by its charters, but, apart from that question, they were always kind and helpful to the neighboring colonies. Maryland received from them cattle, poultry, fruit-trees and seeds, as well as important help against the Indians; and the Carolinas, later on, were assisted in many outbursts of war.

Modes of Life in Virginia.—From the first the Virginians showed no fancy for settling in towns and villages. They preferred life on farms or plantations, especially after tobacco became their important crop. The wealthy planters had fine



OLD CHURCH TOWER AT JAMESTOWN.

houses of wood or brick, with English gardens and orchards, while the “quarters” for the servants, black and white, near by, formed quite a settlement. The large stables were filled with some of the finest horses in the world. In these homes bountiful hospitality was extended to all, and the poorer people followed the same plan. This feeling of kindness and courtesy gave gentleness to the manners of the rudest among them.

Education in Virginia.—

The distances between the homes of the people prevented the early establishment of common schools in

Virginia and the regular attendance upon public worship. But neither religion nor education were wholly neglected.

One of the first houses built at Jamestown was the church, and following this example, churches of brick or wood were built wherever there were a number of settlers or plantations in reach. A hundred acres of land was set apart as a "glebe" to support the minister, whose salary was paid in tobacco. Parish schools were frequently attached to the churches. As early as 1619 large sums of money were given to found a college at Governor Dale's city of Henrico, and another endowed school was established in Charles City county. The Indian massacre in 1622 put an end to these. The governors under Charles II. and James II. discouraged education in every way, and Sir William Berkeley boasted that there was not a free school nor a printing press in the colony. This did not check education among the higher classes. They sent their eldest sons to England for school and college training, and employed tutors for their other children from among the "indented" colonists or needy refugees. The constant use of the English Bible and Prayer-Book in the families, and of Shakespeare, trained them in high morality and pure, vigorous English.

Massachusetts Settlers.—The first colonists of Massachusetts, unlike the Virginians, hated alike the English monarchy and the church. They came to America to set up a government to suit themselves, modeled, as far as possible, on that of Moses over the Israelites. They allowed no rights, civil or religious, to any who differed with them, and permitted only church members to have any share in the government. They built towns from the first, each of which was an independent power, jealous of its rights and suspicious of its neighbors. They banished from among them all who differed from their Puritan ways and beliefs.

Puritans a Peculiar People.—The Puritans took special pride in showing their difference from other people. They changed the names of the months, the seasons, of their churches and their children. Timothy, Jonathan, Habbakuk, Make-peace and Accepted were usual names among the boys; Abigail, Jerusha, Prudence, Temperance, Faith and other Christian virtues

among the girls. And these harshly-named young folk had to keep solemn faces and wear sad-colored clothes, with long, narrow sleeves, and short, uncurled hair.

Education in New England—Harvard College, 1636.—



HARVARD COLLEGE, 1895.

It was easy to establish schools in the New England towns, and mothers were glad to be freed from the care of their children by sending them to these schools. Education flourished, and the school-house and meeting-house stood close together

in every village. The first college in America, established in 1636 at Cambridge, in Boston, still bears the name of its founder, John Harvard.

Intolerance.—I have told you that the New England governments were copies from that of the Jews. Moses and Joshua destroyed the heathen in Canaan, and in like manner God's elect in America must exterminate the natives of the soil. The Puritans thought that they alone were right or had rights, and therefore they constantly interfered with their neighbors and gave them much advice. Thus Rhode Island was excluded from the New England Confederacy. Trade was forbidden with Virginia for opposing Parliament, and the English were aided in overcoming the Dutch in New York.

New England Modes of Life.—The cold climate and barren soil made farming unprofitable in New England, and the people from the first, engaged in ship-building, fishing and manufacturing, which they still excel in. The classes of society were as distinct among the Puritans as the Virginia cavaliers. Ministers and governors were looked upon with special reverence. But

the people lived plainly and even roughly, because they considered that elegance and luxury were part of the vices of the English court.

Life in the Other Colonies.—The habits of the people in New York were simple and formal, as the Dutch had been. In New Jersey, Delaware and Pennsylvania they lived, talked and dressed as the Quakers did. The people built towns, and also planted in the low, level country. Education was always fostered by the Quakers. The Maryland people were like the Virginians in their general character and habits. Agriculture was the principal occupation and plantation life the custom in the Carolinas, and they have continued to prevail to the present time in the Southern States.

Slavery Universal.—The colonies were all alike in being slave-holders at this time and for nearly a hundred years later. There were no conscientious scruples anywhere about selling and buying Africans or Indians. But the negro was much more profitable in planting tobacco, rice, cotton and sugar, than he could be in the colder Northern colonies, and gradually he was sold South for the money he brought.

How Life Has Changed.—In these colonial times there were no stoves, grates or furnaces; huge wood fires in wide chimneys warmed the houses. There were few roads and no public conveyances. Land journeys were made on foot or on horseback. Along the rivers people travelled in boats. There were no newspapers or post-offices. Letters and news were carried by messengers. The women in the families, or the slaves on the plantation, spun, wove, cut and made all the clothing, except a few costly garments brought from England for the wealthier folk. These things would seem very hard to us, but our virtuous, healthy, independent ancestors did not find them so two hundred years ago.

William and Mary College, 1693—Yale College, 1700.—The second college in America was established at Williamsburg, Virginia, and named after the king and queen, who gave it an endowment. Yale College, in Connecticut, was founded the

year that William and Mary College, in Virginia, held its first commencement.

QUESTIONS.—1. What sort of man was King James II., and how did he tyrannize over New England? 2. What is the story of the Charter Oak? 3. Tell of Andros's tyranny and the Old South Meeting-house. 4. How did the king treat the Quakers? 5. How behave towards Maryland? 6. Tell of oppression in Virginia, and the fate of Robert Beverley. 7. Who were brought to Virginia and sold as slaves? 8. What was the fate of King James? 9. Who succeeded him on the throne, and in what year? 10. What effect had the Revolution of 1688 in America? 11. Who was Leisler, and what did he do? 12. How many and what colonies had been settled by 1688? Give the dates of these settlements. 13. What were their names, and by what nation was each settled? 14. Who now possessed all the Atlantic coast from New Brunswick to Florida? 15. Mention some resemblances amongst the colonists. 16. In what respects did they differ? 17. Tell of the character and opinions of the Virginians, and in what way they helped other colonies. 18. What were the modes of life in Virginia? 19. What provision was made for churches and schools in Virginia? 20. How were her young men educated, and younger children trained? 21. Describe the settlers in Massachusetts. 22. How did the Puritans show their peculiarities? 23. Tell of education in New England and of Harvard College. 24. How did she exercise her intolerance towards other colonies? 25. Tell of modes of life in New England, and of her social classes. 26. Describe the modes of life in other colonies. 27. Did slavery exist in all the colonies? 28. Tell how life has changed since colonial days. 29. Of William and Mary College and of Yale College.

CHAPTER X.

FRANCE IN THE NORTH AND WEST.

Champlain's Explorations.—The Indians north of the St. Lawrence River were deadly enemies of the Iroquois south of it. When Champlain settled Quebec, in 1608, a fierce war was going on. Champlain joined in an expedition against the Iroquois, during which he explored the lake which bears his name. Champlain desired to extend the dominion of France in the New World. He could not go southward without danger from

the Iroquois, so he pressed westward. In 1615, five years before the Pilgrims came to Plymouth, he had gone as far as Lake Huron.

French Missionaries.—To make friends with the Indians, and build up the power of France, Champlain enlisted the zeal of the Roman Catholic Church. Pious priests were eager to save the souls of the red men, and carried the cross from eastern Maine to Lake Huron, preaching the gospel and chanting their litanies in the midst of the savage tribes.

France on the Great Lakes.—Hearing of great waters still farther west, the missionaries pressed on thither. Father Claude Allouez called the falls between Lakes Superior and Huron, Sault St. Marie, and Dablon and Marquette established a mission station, the first white settlement in Michigan. For two years Allouez dwelt alone among the Indians, preaching and teaching not only the natives of the region, but others who came from afar attracted to hear the strange white teachers. Among these were warriors from the great Sioux nation, who dwelt on the great river, the "Meché Sepé."

Exploration of the Upper Mississippi, 1673.—The French were anxious to get possession of the great river, which had been almost forgotten since De Soto's time. In 1673 the good priest Marquette, with the fur-trader Joliet, five other Frenchmen and two Indian guides, made their way to the Wisconsin River. The Indians refused to go farther, but the Frenchmen launched their canoes and floated down the Wisconsin for seven days until, with great joy, they passed into the Great River.

First Trip Down the Mississippi.—Past the Des Moines, the Missouri, the Ohio and the Arkansas, they followed the downward current, claiming the country on both sides for France. Learning from the Indians that they were still far from the mouth of the river, the explorers turned their course northward. They followed the Illinois River to its head, and separated. Joliet carried the story of their journey to Quebec. Marquette resumed his missionary work on the shores of Lake Michigan, where he died two years later.

La Salle.—Joliet's account of his journey kindled the enthusiasm of the Chevalier La Salle, who commanded Fort Fontenac, on Lake Ontario. The young officer went to France and obtained a commission from the king to explore the whole length of the Mississippi. The expense of the expedition was to be paid by collecting and selling furs. For this purpose La Salle built a little ship called the *Griffin*, took her to Green Bay and loaded her with skins and furs. Unfortunately the vessel was lost on the voyage to Lake Erie, and did not return with needed supplies. While waiting for her, La Salle and his party moved into southern Illinois and built a fort, which they called "Crève Cœur," or Heart Break, from the disappointments they met with.

Ascent of the Mississippi.—Joliet and Marquette had gone down the Mississippi. La Salle now sent Father Hennepin to ascend it as far as possible. La Salle himself returned through the wilderness, a thousand miles, to Montreal, for needed aid, leaving Fort Crève Cœur under command of De Tonti. Hennepin's party went up eight hundred miles from the Illinois to the Falls of the Mississippi, which he named after Saint Anthony.

La Salle Reaches the Gulf, 1682.—After many delays and disappointments La Salle succeeded in traversing the whole downward course of the Mississippi, and planting the arms of France near its mouth. He called the river St. Louis, and the great valley through which it rolled Louisiana, in honor of the French king, and claimed the whole region over which he and his men had travelled for France.

La Salle's Death.—To take firm possession of these lands La Salle went to France for men and arms. An expedition sailed for the mouth of the Mississippi, but the pilots carried the ships four hundred miles too far west to Matagorda Bay, and so Texas became part of Louisiana. After two years La Salle set out to reach Canada overland to bring them succor. His men soon mutinied and murdered their patient, brave, persevering leader.

Louisiana Settled, 1699.—D'Iberville built a fort at Biloxi, and planted the first white colony on the coast of Mississippi. Traders continued to come and go from Canada to the Gulf of Mexico, and France maintained her title to the whole great valley.

French Names in the Mississippi Valley.—You can trace the journeys of the French explorers by the names of different places. The missionaries called their stations St. Mary, St. Joseph, St. Francis, St. Louis. *Eau Claire, Prairie du Chien, Lac qui Parle, Terre Haute* and like titles show how the natural characteristics of the country were observed. At *Des Moines* pious monks preached the gospel; and other names will tell equally interesting stories.

QUESTIONS.—1. What explorations did Champlain make, and what difficulty had he to contend with? 2. How far west had he gone before the Pilgrims came to New England? 3. Who came from France to help him make peace with the Indians? 4. Tell of the first settlements on the Great Lakes, and for what purpose they were made. 5. Who first explored the waters of the Upper Mississippi, and when? 6. How far down the Mississippi did the explorers go? 7. Who was La Salle, and what was his plan? 8. What were his first experiences? 9. Tell of the ascent of the Mississippi, and of the toilsome journeys of La Salle and Hennepin. 10. When did La Salle reach the Gulf of Mexico, and what name did he give to the river and the country? 11. What effort did he make to secure possession of the country for France? 12. How did he meet his death? 13. When and by whom was Louisiana settled? 14. Give some of the French names in the Mississippi Valley, and tell their meanings. 15. Find all places mentioned on the map.

AUTHORITIES.—Irving's Columbus; Fiske's Discovery of America; Prescott's Ferdinand and Isabella, and Conquest of Mexico; Century Papers on Columbus; Monette's History of Louisiana and the Mississippi Valley; Bancroft's History of the United States, Vol. I., II., III., IV.; Winsor's Narrative and Critical History of the United States, Vol. I., II., III., IV.; Drake's Indians of North America; Fisher's Colonial Era; Captain John Smith's Generall Historie of Virginia; Brown's Genesis of the United States; Campbell's History of Virginia; Cooke's History of Virginia; McIlwaine's Religious Toleration in Virginia; Hildreth's History of the United States, Vol. I.; Fiske's Beginnings of New England; Fiske's History of the United States; Tucker's Mansford; Macaulay's History of England; Williamson's History of North Carolina; Ramsay's History of South Carolina.

SUMMARY FOR REVIEWS AND ESSAYS.

DISCOVERY OF AMERICA.—What the ancients thought; how knowledge of geography grew; Christopher Columbus: becomes a sailor; Portuguese discoveries; Columbus in Spain; sails from Palos; courage of Columbus; the New World not Asia; people of the islands; return to Spain; hope of wealth; ill-treatment of Columbus; discovery of South America; naming the New World; North America discovered by the English; French discoveries; Florida; Spanish Conquests; hostility of the natives; Ferdinand De Soto.

THE AMERICAN INDIANS.—Origin of the Indians; appearance of the Indians; savage Indians; barbarous Indians; habits and customs of barbarous Indians; traits of Indian character; Indian religion: "pipes of peace"; half-civilized Indians; Aztecs and Peruvians; Mound-Builders; three different races.

EARLY SETTLEMENTS—VIRGINIA COLONIZED.—Unsuccessful effort of the French; Spanish settlements; Canada settled; first voyage around the world; second voyage around the world; first English settlement; Raleigh's settlements; Bartholomew Gosnold; Virginia and Plymouth Companies; Virginia colony; settlement at Jamestown, 1607; the first church; Captain John Smith; visit to Powhatan; Captain Smith saves the colony; Pocahontas; Smith's explorations; efforts to improve the colony, 1609; Smith returns to England; disasters of the colony—starving time; Lord Delaware saves the colony, 1610; division of land—tobacco; first election in America, 1619; slavery universal, 1619; shipload of girls, 1620; marriage and death of Pocahontas; Indian massacre, 1622; lessons taught by this first colony.

NEW YORK, NEW JERSEY AND DELAWARE.—Henry Hudson; the Dutch in New York, New Jersey, and Delaware; patroons; growth of the Dutch colony; trouble with the Indians; Swedes in Delaware; New Sweden taken by the Dutch; Dutch slave-ships.

SETTLEMENT OF MARYLAND.—Clayborne's settlement; Lord Baltimore; "Pilgrim's of St. Mary's," 1634; religious freedom; difficulty between the settlements.

SETTLEMENT OF NEW ENGLAND.—New England, 1607; first colony in New England, 1620; suffering and death: Massachusetts Bay colony, 1628; the Puritans; false idea of religious liberty; Governor Endicott's laws; voting law, 1631; exile of Williams—Rhode Island settled; Anne Hutchinson; settlement of Connecticut: Saybrooke and New Haven; Pequot war; New Hampshire settled, 1623, and Maine, 1630.

THE COLONIES UNDER THE COMMONWEALTH.—Execution of Charles I.;

effect on the colonies; acts of the Virginia assembly; second Indian massacre; prosperity of Virginia; loyalty of the colony; yields to Parliament, 1652; self-government in the colony; religious freedom; Maryland during the Commonwealth; New England under the Commonwealth; united colonies of New England, 1643; trouble with the Indians; slaying of Miantonomo; efforts against intolerance; New England friendly with Cromwell; rise of the Quakers; Quakers persecuted; banishment of Quakers; execution of Quakers.

VIRGINIA AFTER THE RESTORATION.—BACON'S REBELLION.—Restoration of Charles II., 1660; restriction of liberty; resistance; injustice of the king; efforts to secure a new charter; fresh trouble with the Indians; outrages in Virginia; Nathaniel Bacon; Berkeley's harsh treatment of Bacon; a new assembly; Berkeley's tyranny, 1676; the commission granted; further ill-treatment of Bacon; Bacon's rebellion; first Declaration of Rights, 1676; Indians defeated at Bloody Run; Jamestown burned; Bacon's death; resistance of the planters; treaty with the Five Nations, 1684; effects of the restoration in Maryland.

THE NORTHERN COLONISTS AFTER THE RESTORATION—THE CAROLINAS, PENNSYLVANIA AND DELAWARE.—Effects of the restoration in New England; charters of Connecticut and Rhode Island; subjection of Massachusetts; John Eliot; King Philip's War, 1675; attack on Swanzezy; result of the war; Massachusetts charter annulled; Dutch territory given to the Duke of York, 1684; colony of New Jersey; beginning of the Carolinas; settlements in North Carolina; the "Grand Model"; South Carolina settled, 1670; the Huguenots in the colonies; Indian troubles.

PENNSYLVANIA.—Grant to William Penn, 1681; founding of Philadelphia, 1682; treaty with the Indians; growth of the colony; Delaware a separate colony, 1703.

COLONIES UNDER JAMES II.—THEIR DIFFERENCES AND RESEMBLANCES.—New England charters revoked, 1687; story of the Charter Oak, 1687; Andros's tyranny; James the friend of Penn; unfriendly to Maryland; Virginia oppressed; Monmouth's followers sold as slaves; downfall of James; William and Mary; effects in America; Leisler in New York; colonies in 1688; resemblances among the colonists; differences among the colonists; character and opinions of the Virginians; modes of life in Virginia; education in Virginia; Massachusetts settlers; Puritans a peculiar people; education in New England—Harvard College, 1636; Intolerance; New England modes of life; life in the other colonies; slavery universal; how life has changed; William and Mary College, 1693—Yale College, 1700.

FRANCE IN THE NORTH AND WEST.—Champlain's explorations; French missionaries; France on the Great Lakes; exploration of the Upper Mississippi, 1673; first trip down the Mississippi; La Salle; ascent of the Mississippi; La Salle reaches the Gulf, 1682; La Salle's death; Louisiana settled, 1699; French names in the Mississippi Valley.

FRENCH AND INDIAN WARS.—1689-1763.

CHAPTER XI.

KING WILLIAM'S WAR AND QUEEN ANNE'S WAR.

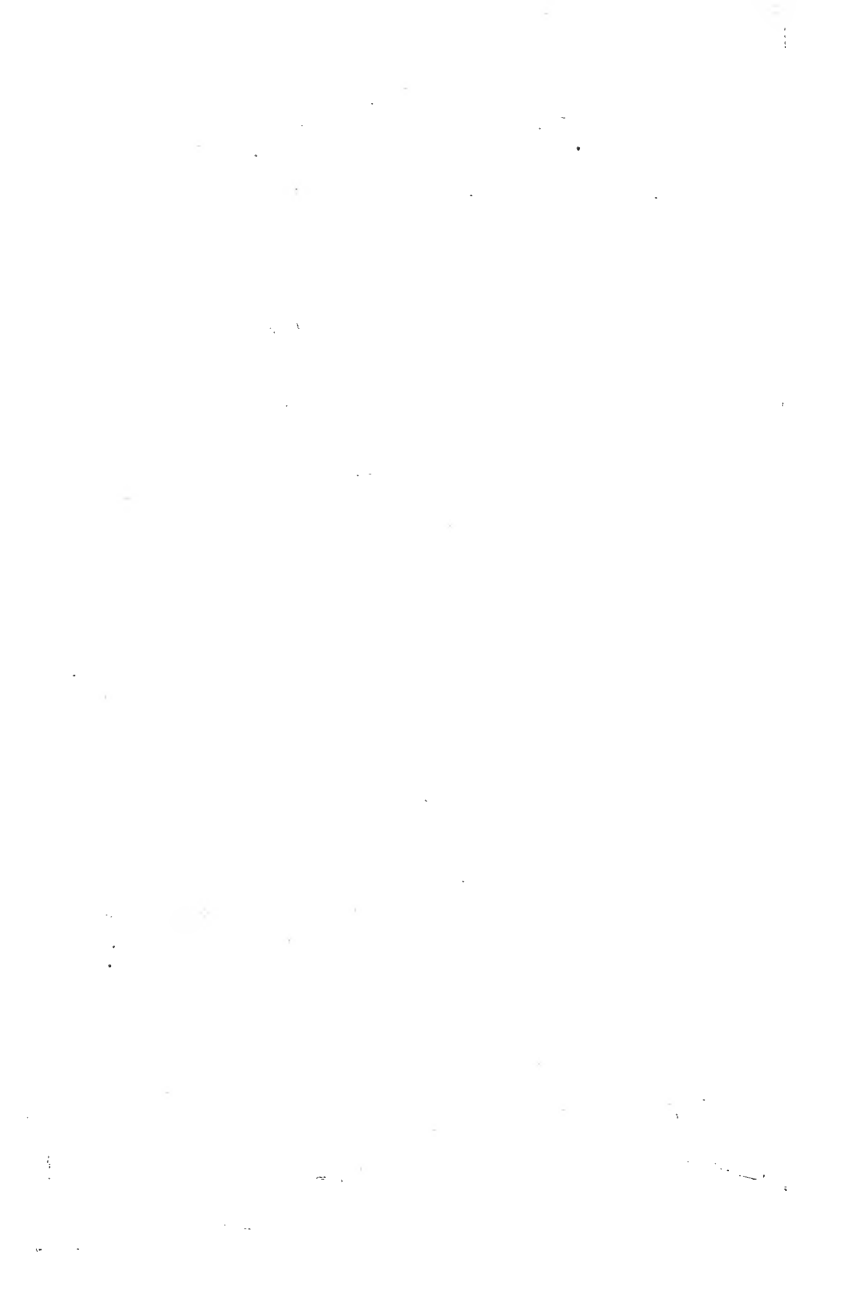
War of 1689.—There were at this period about 200,000 white people in the English colonies. In New France, from the St. Lawrence to the Gulf of Mexico, were nearly 12,000 whites. A fierce war at once broke out between France and England, which extended to America. The Iroquois were allies of the English. All the other Indians were friendly to the French.

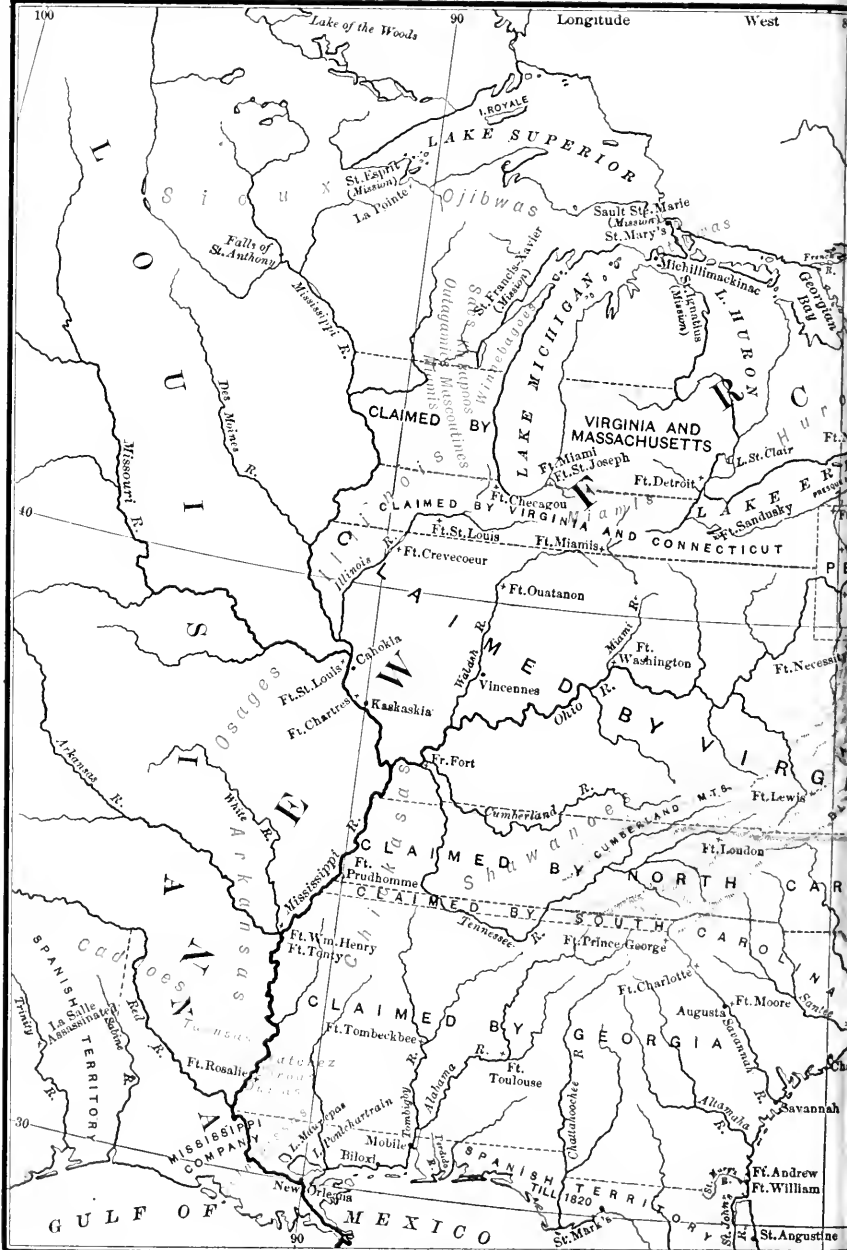
Cruelties of the French and Indians.—All sorts of savage deeds were committed. The Iroquois burned, and murdered, and ravaged in Canada, and bands of Frenchmen did the same things in New York. These fearful midnight surprises, burnings and killings, went on for several years. In 1692 more than a third of the residents in New York and Maine were slaughtered.

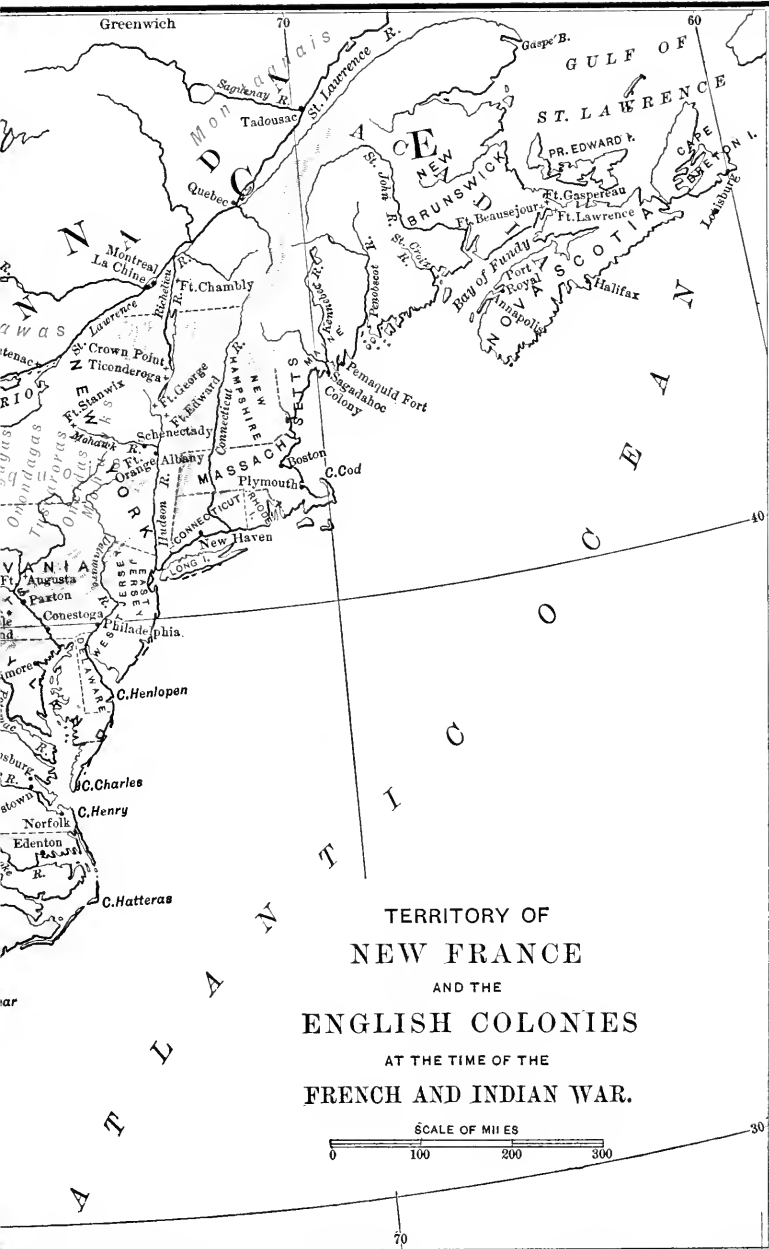
New England Makes Resistance.—The people of New England sent expeditions against both Quebec and Montreal, but without success. Port Royal, in Acadia, however, surrendered to a New England fleet.

Peace of Ryswick, 1697.—The war in Europe came to an end. A treaty was made at Ryswick, and peace followed in America for awhile.

Queen Anne's War, 1702.—The next outbreak occurred when Queen Anne succeeded William and Mary. The colonists in the north and the south were again involved. In both North and South Carolina there were frequent fights between the Indians and the colonists. South Carolina punished the red men so severely that for a long time their outrages ceased. Fearful destruction and murders were committed by the Tuscaroras and Coree tribes in North Carolina, but at last, by help from







South Carolina, the Indians were thoroughly defeated. They became disheartened, abandoned Carolina, and joined the confederacy of the Iroquois in New York, which was from that time called the Six Nations.

Indian Atrocities.—Along the northern borders more cruel acts were committed than before. Tortures, murders, burning and scalping were so frequent that the English at last offered to pay ten pounds for every Indian scalp brought to them.

End of the War, 1713.—There was a second unsuccessful effort to capture Quebec. Nova Scotia, however, was conquered, and, together with Newfoundland and the Hudson Bay territory, remained in possession of the English when peace was made in 1713.

France in the Northwest.—During both these wars New France became stronger in the Northwest. A chain of forts was built between the Great Lakes and the Mississippi Valley. William Penn, Governor Spotswood, of Virginia, and Governor Schuyler, of New York, tried in vain to induce England to establish similar military posts west of the Alleghanies.

The Central Colonies.—This war did not affect the central colonies, which continued prosperous during the whole time, although their trade was somewhat interfered with; and there was always a strife for power between the representatives of the people and the royal governors.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was the number of white settlers in the English colonies when William and Mary came to the throne? 2. What territory was claimed by France, and what was the cause of King William's war? 3. What cruelties were perpetrated in New York and New England by the Indians and French? 4. What resistance was made by New England? 5. When was the peace of Ryswick, and what effect had it in America? 6. When did Queen Anne's war break out, and which colonies were involved in this struggle? 7. Tell of Indian outrages in North Carolina. 8. What effort was made by the English to put an end to the Indian atrocities? 9. When did Queen Anne's war end, and what territory remained in possession of the English? 10. How did the French grow stronger in the Northwest? 11. Who tried to persuade the English to pursue the same course west of the Alleghanies? 12. Tell of the Central Colonies. 13. Find all places mentioned on the map.

CHAPTER XII.

COLONIES UNDER GEORGE I. AND GEORGE II.

Increase of Population, 1688-1714.—When the German George I. succeeded Queen Anne on the English throne, the population of the colonies had increased from 232,000, in 1688, to 465,000 in 1714—had doubled in twenty-six years, notwithstanding the wars spoken of in the last chapter. Some of this increase was from European immigration, but most of it was among the native whites.

Peace in George I.'s Reign.—The bad old king interfered little with affairs in England, not at all in the colonies, which were left pretty much to themselves. The nations of Europe were exhausted by fighting, and were glad to be at peace. This peace was broken in America only by occasional contests with the Indians.

Defeat of the Yemasseees in South Carolina.—The Yemassee tribes in the southwestern part of South Carolina, after friendship with the whites, became hostile, and made a sudden war upon them. One hundred white people were butchered at Pocotaligo on the morning of April 17th, 1715. People from other villages fled to Charleston, and the country was filled with alarm. Governor Craven, with a few hundred whites and some faithful slaves, marched against the Indians, who had nine hundred warriors. North Carolina and Virginia sent him men, and New England sent arms, and at last the Yemasseees were driven into Florida.

South Carolina Becomes a Royal Province.—Shortly after this, South Carolina threw off its proprietary rule, elected a governor and became a royal province.

Advance of the Colonies.—Local wars retarded very little the general advance of the whole country. There was always more or less struggle between the royal governors and

the assemblies of the colonies, but education and prosperity steadily increased.

Governor Spotswood in Virginia.—In 1710 Queen Anne sent to Virginia the best royal governor the province ever had, Alexander Spotswood. Governor Spotswood did much to develop the resources of Virginia and promote its prosperity. He compelled the Indians to adhere to their treaties of peace, and at the same time supported schools to educate their children.

Spotswood's Iron Works, 1714.—In 1714 Governor Spotswood established at Germanna, on the Rappahannock, a furnace for forging iron, one of the first in the colonies. At Massa-



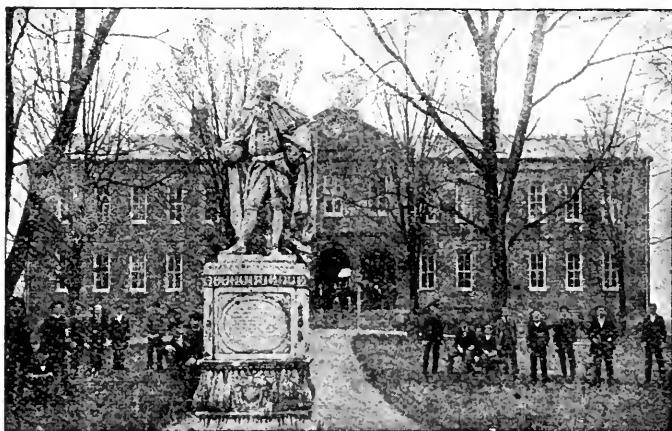
GOVERNOR SPOTSWOOD CROSSING THE BLUE RIDGE.

ponax, lower down the river, he had a foundry where andirons, firebacks, pots, shovels and other simple utensils were made, better and cheaper than those brought from England.

Expedition Across the Blue Ridge, 1716.—Spotswood is chiefly distinguished for his exploring expedition to the unknown region beyond the Blue Ridge Mountains. This expedition set out in August from "Chelsea," on the Mattaponi River, where Spotswood's son-in-law, Austin Moore, lived. The party consisted of twelve gentlemen, two small companies of rangers and four Meherrin Indians to act as interpreters. At Germanna the horses were shod to fit them for the rough mountain travel-

ling. Going up the Rappahannock, through a fertile country filled with game, Spotswood, on the 5th of September, climbed to the top of the mountains and saw the beautiful Valley of Virginia spread out before him.

Valley of Virginia Taken Possession of.—With blowing of trumpets and drinking of healths, he claimed the whole region for his master, King George. The party crossed the Shenandoah River, which they called the Euphrates. The place where this crossing was made is believed to have been Swift



WILLIAM AND MARY COLLEGE.

Run Gap. Spotswood wished to establish in commemoration of it the "Knights of the Golden Horseshoe," but it never came to anything.

Spotswood Displaced by the Council, 1722.—In spite of all that Spotswood had done to promote the welfare of the colony, he gave great offence, by taking the part of the clergy against the vestries. Both people and council were opposed to him in 1722, and he was displaced by the council which had become very powerful in Virginia.

George II., 1727.—George II. succeeded his father in 1727. Three years later he made Governor Spotswood, who continued

to reside in Virginia, the deputy postmaster-general for the colonies. Spotswood appointed Benjamin Franklin one of his deputies, and put such energy into his work that Williamsburg and Philadelphia were brought within ten days of each other.

Prosperity of Virginia.—During this period the colony was as important and prosperous as at any time before the Revolution. Following the governor's example, the rich planters lived in elegance at their stately homes, some of which may still be seen along the river banks. The oldest sons were sent to school and college in England, the younger ones to William and Mary College. The daughters of the family received such education as was customary for women in those days, went to Williamsburg in the season, danced at the governor's balls and assisted in entertaining the guests at their hospitable homes.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was the increase in population in the colonies from 1688 to 1714? 2. Tell of George I. and his reign. 3. What Indian outbreak occurred in South Carolina, and how was it put down? 4. What change took place in South Carolina about this time? 5. Tell of the advance of the colonies during this period. 6. When did Governor Spotswood come to Virginia, and in what ways did he benefit the colony? 7. When and where were tools and utensils of iron first made in the colonies? 8. Tell of Spotswood's expedition across the Blue Ridge Mountains. 9. How was the Valley of Virginia taken possession of? 10. When and why was Spotswood displaced? 11. Tell of the postal system in the colonies in George II.'s time. 12. Describe the life of the planters in Virginia.

CHAPTER XIII.

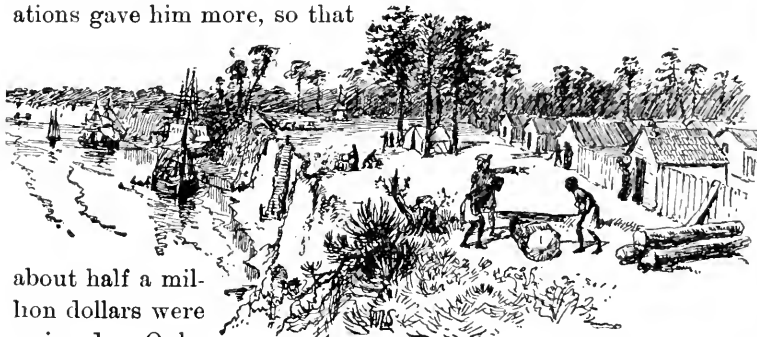
SETTLEMENT OF GEORGIA.

Grant to Oglethorpe.¹—In 1733 George II. granted a patent to James Edward Oglethorpe for the country lying be-

¹ James Edward Oglethorpe, an Englishman of noble character and fine education, became deeply concerned at the miserable condition of poor men in England. Whoever could not pay what he owed was thrown into prison without hope of release. Oglethorpe first induced Parliament to do something for these poor debtors, and then formed a plan to provide for them in America.

tween the Savannah River and the Altamaha, which was called Georgia after the king.

Settlement at Savannah.—Parliament voted ten thousand pounds to assist in Oglethorpe's project, and missionary associations gave him more, so that



SETTLEMENT OF SAVANNAH, 1733.

about half a million dollars were raised. Oglethorpe then

crossed the ocean with one hundred and fifty men, his first supply of colonists, and laid off a town where the city of Savannah now stands.

The Indians Friendly.—The Yamacraw Indians close to the new town brought the white men a buffalo skin painted on the under side with the head and feathers of an eagle, which signified love. The Muskogees south of Savannah also sought the friendship of the English, and Oglethorpe made a treaty with them. The Cherokees from the mountains and Choctaws from the west also desired to be their friends.

German and Italian Settlers.—Oglethorpe offered an asylum to persecuted Protestants as well as to oppressed Englishmen. Roman Catholics were excluded from his province. The first to accept his proffers of religious freedom was a band of Protestants from Salzburg in Germany, who came over in 1734. Other Salzburgers followed, and a Moravian congregation, led by their pastor, came over and settled near their countrymen. These people were accustomed to privations and hardships, and brought with them their industrious, frugal, German habits. Italians came also to introduce the cultivation of silk, and, like

the Germans, were helpful in developing the resources of the new country.

The Scotch at Darien.—Oglethorpe went back to England to interest the people and bring out fresh colonists. He carried some Indians with him who excited much admiration. Before long Oglethorpe returned to Georgia with several hundred recruits. A band of Scotch Highlanders with their families and their pastor, were settled on the banks of the Altamaha River, about sixteen miles from St. Simon's Island. Here the sturdy Scots built a fort, and called the country around it Darien. Oglethorpe established a trading post at Augusta and built a strong, fortified town called Frederica, on the west side of St. Simon's Island.



OGLETHORPE.

Slavery and Rum Prohibited.—While in England, Oglethorpe induced Parliament to forbid slaves and rum to be taken to Georgia. This dissatisfied the Georgians, who thought that negro labor would be very profitable in their climate.

The Wesleys and Whitefield.—Three famous English clergymen, John and Charles Wesley and George Whitefield, came to Georgia about this time, hoping to do much good by preaching to the colonists and converting the Indians. The Wesleys were much opposed to the introduction of slaves into the colony. Whitefield was equally in favor of it, because he believed it to be the means of doing the savage negroes good. His side proved the stronger and African slavery prevailed in Georgia as in the other twelve colonies. Whitefield was so much struck with an orphan asylum among the Moravians that he established one in Savannah, which exists there still.



JOHN WESLEY.

War with the Spaniards.—The Spaniards in Florida were very hostile to the English in Georgia, and Oglethorpe prepared for the war which he saw must come. He was made a

general and commander of all the forces in South Carolina and Georgia, and had a regiment six hundred strong from England.



WHITEFIELD.

Before making war on the Spaniards, General Oglethorpe met a number of Indian chiefs in council, smoked a pipe of peace with them and obtained a fresh title to the land of the State of Georgia. In 1739, when war was declared between England and Spain, Oglethorpe made an unsuccessful effort to capture St. Augustine, in Florida. He then devoted himself to strengthening the defences of Georgia.

Effort against Savannah.—In June, 1742, fifty Spanish ships with five thousand troops came to capture Frederica, and destroy the English in Georgia. Oglethorpe had only a few small vessels and a thousand men. In some way he got word to the Spanish commander that he was expecting large British reinforcements. Just at this time, a few ships from Charleston came in sight. The Spaniards became so much alarmed that they went off at once, leaving their cannon and stores behind them.

Georgia a Royal Province, 1752.—Ten years later, Georgia became a royal province, and increased steadily in prosperity and population up to the time of the American Revolution.

Northwest Sold to Virginia, 1744.—In 1744 the Six Nations of Indians made a treaty with Virginia, in which they bound themselves for four hundred pounds, to make a deed “recognizing the king’s right to all the lands that are or shall be by his majesty’s appointment in the colony of Virginia.” By which deed the claims of Virginia were extended indefinitely toward the west and northwest.

New England Captures Louisburg, 1745.—The continuance of hostilities in Europe, encouraged renewed strife between New England and Canada. In 1745 Louisburg, on Cape Breton Island, the strongest French fortress after Quebec, and the chief harbor for the French privateers which plundered New Eng-

land ships, was captured, after a siege of six weeks, by 4,000 New England soldiers commanded by William Pepperell, a rich merchant, assisted by four English warships. For this gallant action Pepperell was made a baronet. The people of New England were greatly disgusted because when peace was made in 1748, Louisburg was restored to France.

Steady Improvement—First Newspaper.—The population of the colonies had doubled in fifty years; their commerce improved even more. Boston was the leading town in commerce and ship-building, and New England had built fine ships of war for the British navy. In Boston, too, the first American newspaper, "The News Letter," had been published in 1704. By the middle of the century there were other papers in New England, New York, Philadelphia, Maryland, Virginia, and South Carolina. Printing had, in spite of the opposition of the royal governors, made its way into Virginia, and several books had been printed there.

Benjamin Franklin—George Washington.—In 1724 there came to Philadelphia, having run away from his home in Boston, a young printer, Benjamin Franklin by name. He had received little education, but had a fine intellect, a healthy body, and much industry and perseverance. He got good work and made many friends in Philadelphia, and played an important part in the stirring times of which you will soon be told. Other men even greater and better than Franklin were now being trained to take their part in shaping the destinies of the country. Foremost among them was George Washington, who was born at Wakefield, near Bridges' Creek, on the Potomac River, in Westmoreland county, Virginia, on February 22, 1732.

QUESTIONS.—1. Tell of James Edward Oglethorpe, and his interest in the poor debtors. 2. What was his plan, and what grant was made him by George II.? 3. When and how was the city of Savannah settled? 4. What Indian tribes showed a desire for peace with these settlers. 5. Who were the Salzburgers, and when did they come to Georgia? 6. From what other country did settlers come, and why? 7. In what part of the colony did the Scotch settle? 8. What were at first prohibited? 9. Tell of the Wesleys

and Whitefield in Georgia. 10. What preparations did Oglethorpe make for the war with the Spaniards? 11. Tell of his unsuccessful effort against St. Augustine. 12. What effort was made against Savannah in 1742, and with what result? 13. When did Georgia become a royal province? 14. When and in what way did Virginia gain the Northwest? 15. Tell of the capture of Louisburg by the people of New England. 16. When was peace made? 17. Describe the progress of the colonies at this time. 18. What and where was the first newspaper published? 19. What can you tell of Benjamin Franklin and George Washington?

CHAPTER XIV.

SETTLEMENT OF THE VALLEY OF VIRGINIA—THE FRENCH IN THE WEST AND NORTH.

Valley of Virginia Settled, 1732.—The first settlements in the Valley of Virginia were made on Opequon Creek and along the Shenandoah River and its branches, by Scotch-Irish Presbyterians from Pennsylvania. The beginning of the town of Winchester was two cabins, built in 1738 near the Shawnee Springs, a favorite camping place of the Indians.

Salling's Exploration.—John Marlin, a peddler, and John Salling, a weaver, explored the great valley running southward. Salling was captured by the Indians and held as a prisoner for six years. John Lewis and John Mackey were so much pleased with Salling's account of the region beyond the Blue Ridge that they went there with him, with a party of Scotch-Irish who had just come over from the old country. Lewis built a stone house (Lewis's Fort) near Staunton; Mackey went farther west, near Buffalo Gap; and Salling established himself fifty miles away at the forks of the James River, where "Salling's Mountain" recalls his memory.¹

¹These Scotch-Irish were a sturdy race. Among them were men of good family and education. They first built cabins for themselves and then put up their churches. Old stone churches are still to be seen, where the women brought sand for mortar in their aprons, while the men built up the rock quarried with hard labor, keeping guard all the while against the Indians.

Benjamin Burden in Rockbridge County.—Benjamin Burden, an agent of Lord Fairfax, visited Lewis in his backwoods home. The country pleased Burden, and he obtained a grant for five hundred thousand acres of land on condition that he should in ten years settle one hundred families upon it. This grant comprised most of what is now Rockbridge county, Virginia.

Religious Toleration.—There was never any active religious persecution in Virginia, although the cavaliers and English churchmen had made laws which bore hardly upon those who differed with them. When the Valley of Virginia was settled by Presbyterians a petition was drawn up that they should be allowed “the free enjoyment of their civil and religious liberty.” Full toleration was then granted them by Governor Gooch.

Germans in the Valley, 1745.—Not only the Scotch-Irish, but Germans in large numbers came from Pennsylvania to Virginia. They settled at Shepherdstown, on the Potomac River, and farther up the Valley, where many of their descendants still live in the counties of Shenandoah and Rockingham.

George Washington, the Young Surveyor.—Thomas, Lord Fairfax, who owned great estates on the Rappahannock, removed from there in 1745 and settled at Greenway Court, thirteen miles from Winchester. The king had given Fairfax a patent for a vast tract of land in the Valley, and he employed his young connection, George Washington, to survey it. Washington was only seventeen years old, but he did his work so well that no mistake has ever been found in the many plats made by him.

The French in the West and North.—

The English had only reached the eastern slopes of the Alleghanies, but the French had steadily pushed forward in the country west of the mountains. La Salle’s military posts on the Illinois and Mississippi Rivers were kept up, and continual intercourse went on between Canada



BIENVILLE.

and Louisiana, where Bienville had settled New Orleans in 1718. The Indians were much opposed to having white settlements and forts established among them, and there was constant strife.

France Claims the Ohio.—By the middle of the century sixty French posts had been established between the lakes and the Gulf of Mexico. The principal one, on the Wabash, was called Vincennes. French attention was now turned to the Ohio—*la belle rivière*, “the beautiful river”—and the country drained by it. Celeron claimed it for France by nailing to trees and burying in the ground leaden plates on which the French claims were inscribed.

Resistance to French Claims.—The English in the colonies and the Indians along the rivers both opposed these claims. The colonies would not consent to be excluded from the regions beyond the mountains, of which hunters and traders brought goodly report. Benjamin Franklin was sent by Pennsylvania to consult with the Indians at Logstown, not far from Pittsburg. It was time, for Franklin carried back to Philadelphia intelligence that the French had already built three forts on the Alleghany River, and were about to do the same on the Monongahela.

The Ohio Company of Virginians, 1749.—Parliament had given six hundred thousand acres of land on the south side of the Ohio to a company of Virginians, with exclusive permission to trade with the Indians there. If the French advanced to the Monongahela they would be in Virginia territory, and the colony determined to assert itself against such encroachments.

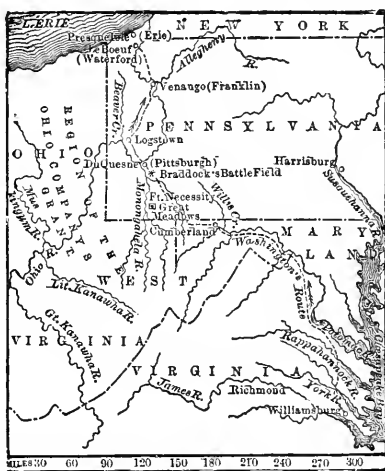
QUESTIONS.—1. Who settled the Valley of Virginia, and when and where was the settlement made? 2. Tell the story of Salling’s exploration and settlement. 3. What settlement was made by Benjamin Burden? 4. Describe the Scotch-Irish settlers and the building of their churches. 5. Was there religious toleration in Virginia? 6. What other race settled in the Valley, when and where? 7. What can you tell of Lord Fairfax and George Washington? 8. How and where had the French established themselves in the west and north? 9. To what river did the French lay claim? 10. What resistance was made to this claim? 11. What grant had been made to Virginia in 1749?

CHAPTER XV.

OPENING OF THE COLONIAL WAR.

Causes of the Colonial War.—This war was different from those against the Indians for self-preservation, or the fights against the French and Spaniards on account of England. It was begun by the colonists in defence of their rights. There were nearly 200,000 of them native-born, and loving their country. The 20,000 French whites were in alliance with the North-western Indians. But the native colonists did not dread the red men as their fathers had done. They were as swift to march, as sudden to attack, as alert and fearless as the Indians, and bore defeat and torture with equal stoicism.

Washington Carries a Message to the French.—Before beginning active hostilities, Governor Dinwiddie, of Virginia, thought it best to send the French commander on the Ohio a protest against his invasion of Virginia territory, and a notice that war would ensue if he did not withdraw from it. George Washington, who was just twenty-one, and who had been made a major, was selected for this dangerous mission. He set out from Williamsburg on October 30, 1753, with his old fencing-master, Van Braam, to act as interpreter. At Will's Creek, now Cumberland, Maryland, the Ohio Company had a trading-post. Here Christopher Gist, the company's agent, joined Washington, and they proceeded



ROUTE OF WASHINGTON AND SCENE OF
FRENCH AND INDIAN WARS.

to Logstown to confer with the Indians. Several of the chiefs accompanied Washington to seek the French commander. The Chevalier de St. Pierre received the young Virginian courteously, but tried to entice the Indians to forsake him and join the French.

Result of the Embassy.—Great perils and hardships were encountered on the winter journey homeward. Washington and Gist made their way on foot to Gist's home, on the Monongahela, where Washington got a horse and rode as fast as he could to Williamsburg with his letter from the French commander. St. Pierre sent a civil reply to Governor Dinwiddie, but said he must obey his superiors. Washington advised that a Virginia fort should be built at the "forks of the river," where Pittsburg now stands.

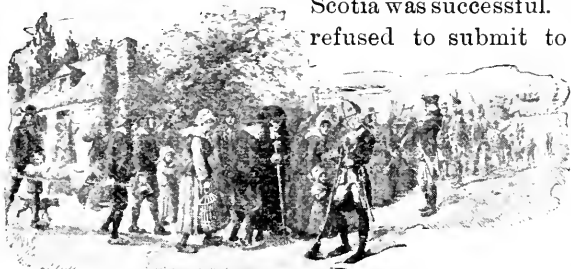
The Fort Captured by the French.—Orders were given to raise six companies of Virginia soldiers; the assembly voted two thousand pounds, and the Ohio Company sent men to build a fort at the appointed place. Colonel Fry was in command of the troops, with Washington, now a lieutenant-colonel, second in command. When Washington, with two companies, reached Will's Creek, he learned that a large French force had driven off the Virginians, taken possession of their fort, had finished and garrisoned it, and called it Fort Du Quesne. Colonel Fry died suddenly, and the command devolved upon Washington, who advanced cautiously towards the fort. A small French force was encountered in the woods. Both parties fired, a number of French were killed, and the rest surrendered. Notwithstanding this success, Washington was obliged to fall back to save his men from the greatly outnumbering French.

Great Meadows, 1754.—At Great Meadows the Virginians built a small fort called Fort Necessity. Before it was done, Washington's 400 men were attacked by 1,500 French. A fierce fight went on from 10 o'clock until nightfall. By that time 200 Frenchmen had been killed or wounded, and their commander asked for a conference. Washington and his men had been most of the day up to their knees in mud and water. He knew that it would be impossible for them to keep the contest up, and

made an honorable surrender on the 4th of July. A vote of thanks was given to Washington and his officers when they returned to Williamsburg, and a sum of money to be divided among his men.

France and England Take Part in the War.—There was peace in Europe, but both France and England joined in the war in America. In 1755 General Braddock was sent out from England with two regiments of British regulars. In April Braddock held a council of war at Alexandria, in which the governors of Virginia, Maryland, Pennsylvania, New York and Massachusetts took part. It was decided that four separate attacks should be made on the French—one against Nova Scotia; one against Crown Point, on Lake Champlain; one against Fort Niagara, between Lakes Erie and Ontario, and the most important of all by General Braddock against Fort Du Quesne and the French in the Ohio Valley.

Exile of the Acadians.—The attack upon Acadia, in Nova Scotia was successful. The Acadians refused to submit to the English



EXILE OF THE ACADIANS.

laws, and were, therefore, expelled from their country. Seven thousand of them were

carried to different parts of the English colonies. Many of their descendants, called "Cajans," are found in western Louisiana. In Longfellow's poem "Evangeline," you may read a touching account of them.

QUESTIONS.—1. What causes brought on the Colonial War? 2. Tell of Washington's embassy to the French in 1753, and who accompanied him. 3. When did he return to Williamsburg? 4. What was the result of his embassy? 5. Where was the fort built, and how was it captured? 6. What was the result of Washington's effort to recapture the fort? 7. Tell of the

attack at Great Meadows in 1754. 8. How were Washington and his officers received on their return to Williamsburg? 9. What countries now took part in the Colonial War, and what officer was sent out from England to take command of the forces? 10. What colonies took part in the council of war, and what plan of attack was decided upon? 11. Which expedition was successful? 12. Where may you read the story of the Acadians? 13. Find on the map all places mentioned.

CHAPTER XVI.

COLONIAL WAR—INDIAN WARS.

Braddock's Advance, 1755.—On April 20th Braddock began his march with 2,500 men and a quantity of vehicles unsuited for mountain travelling. The British general had no opinion of the colonial troops, and would not believe that the Indians were dangerous foes. Washington, who went as an aide-de-camp, could not persuade him to take any precautions against them. By July 9th Braddock's army was within seven miles of Fort Du Quesne. As the red coats marched forward, their bayonets glittering in the sun, they fell into an ambush, and a storm of bullets burst upon them from unseen enemies.

Braddock's Defeat.—The colonial soldiers at once scattered among the trees and rocks to defend themselves. The regulars halted in the road, and in vain attempted to return the fire of the unseen foe; terrified by the yells and deadly aim of their hidden assailants, they retreated in utter panic. The officers tried vainly to rally them; they left their cannon and baggage and fled for their lives. Seven hundred were killed, including General Braddock and most of the officers.

Washington's Bravery.—Washington had two horses shot under him, and four bullets passed through clothing, but he bore himself with the utmost coolness. He helped to bear Braddock from the field, and buried him at Great Meadows. Virginia rewarded his bravery with three hundred pounds, and the command of all her forces.

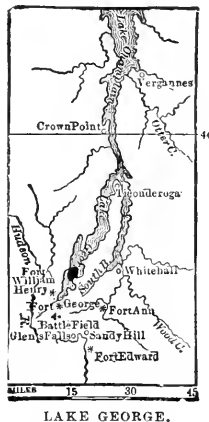
Victory at Lake George.—Braddock's defeat discouraged the colonies and prevented the attack on Fort Niagara. Sir William Johnson, however, gained an important victory over the French and Indians near Lake George. He also built Fort William Henry as a defence of the upper Hudson.

The Seven Years' War.—France, Austria and Russia about this time made war upon Prussia. England took the Prussian side. The whole of Europe was involved, and great preparations were made for a struggle in America.

French Success in New York.—At first the French had much the best of it. Their general, Montcalm, captured Forts Oswego and Ontario, and gained control of Lake Ontario. He then captured Fort William Henry at the southern extremity of Lake George. General Abercrombie, the English general, failed in an effort to capture Fort Ticonderoga on Lake Champlain, and fell back in affright before a smaller French army.

English Successes.—William Pitt now took the head of affairs in England, and under his management a great change was effected in America. General Wolfe captured and destroyed Louisburg, General Bradstreet seized Fort Frontenac, which commanded Lake Ontario, and Colonel Washington took possession of Fort Du Quesne. This fort was repaired and renamed Fort Pitt. Pittsburg on the same spot bears the name of the great Englishman. Niagara, Ticonderoga and Crown Point also fell into English hands.

Attack on Quebec, 1759.—The capture of Quebec was now the most important effort, and this enterprise was entrusted to General Wolfe. The fortress of Quebec, which stands on the "Heights of Abraham," at the top of cliffs three hundred feet high, was held by Montcalm with 7,000 men. After months of watching and waiting, Wolfe espied a narrow path ascending



between two steep cliffs, and then determined to try and reach the Heights by means of it.



WOLFE.

said the sentinel. When the cove was reached a body of light infantry clambered up the cliff, and dispersed the pickets at the top. The rest followed, until 4,000 disciplined British soldiers stood on the plain on the north side of the citadel. They also drew up, with severe labor, one or two small cannon.

French Resistance.—

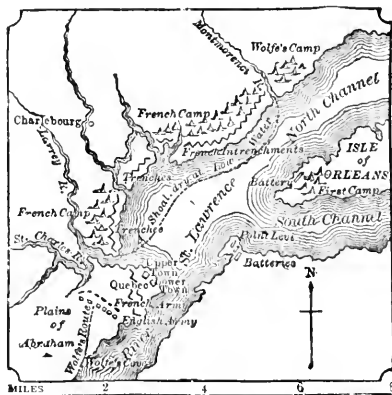
The French were greatly surprised to find the English close to them. They were more in number, but less efficient than their assailants. Montcalm made desperate but unsuccessful efforts to dislodge the British. Wolfe's men did not fire until the French came within forty yards, then they mowed them down.

Victory—Death of

Wolfe.—In the fierce struggle many fell on both sides. Montcalm's second in command was killed—he himself wounded. Wolfe also was shot in the hand. He bound up the wound and led a bayonet charge of two regiments. As the French retreated, Wolfe received a bullet through his lungs. An officer who was supporting his general's head cried out, "They fly!

Climbing the Heights of Abraham.—

Before dawn on September 13th, English troops moved noiselessly in small boats to the foot of the path. A French sentinel hailed them in passing, "*Qui va là?*" "Who goes there?" "*La France,*" was the reply. "*De quel regiment?*" "*De la Reine,*" answered an Englishman who knew that such troops were near by. "*Passé,*"



QUEBEC AND VICINITY.

they fly!" "Who fly?" whispered the dying hero. "The French! the French!" answered the officer. "God be praised," gasped Wolfe, "I die happy," and his spirit passed from earth in the very moment of victory.

Surrender of Quebec.—General Montcalm had also received his death wound. When the surgeon told him he could only live a few hours. "So much the better," he replied; "I shall not see the surrender of Quebec." That surrender was made in a few days, and the French dominion in America came to an end.

Monument to Wolfe and Montcalm.—

You may now see on the plain where they fell a tall granite monument sixty feet high, bearing an inscription on one side to General Wolfe, and on the other side to the Marquis de Montcalm.



MONTCALM.

Treaty of Paris, 1763.—When the "Seven Years' War" came to an end, England gained the Floridas from Spain and all the region held by France east of the Mississippi. France gave to Spain, in exchange for Florida, her possessions west of the Mississippi and the island on which New Orleans stood.

Important Results of Colonial War.—During this war the colonies lost 30,000 men and \$11,000,000, but the people had been trained in self-reliance. Their troops had learned the tactics and discipline of the British army, had often found themselves superior to the regulars, and had gained immensely in experience and ideas of self-government.

Pontiac's War, 1763.—In 1763 what is known as Pontiac's War, because Pontiac, the gigantic chief of the Ottawas, was the leading spirit in it, broke out, the object of which was the destruction of the English. Pontiac was more intelligent, more fertile in resources, and more persevering than the Indians generally were. Under his direction the war raged for two years. The English garrisons in the western forts were almost all captured and massacred with savage cruelty, and the settlers all

along the frontiers, especially in Pennsylvania, were tortured and butchered with fiendish atrocities.

Bouquet's Victory, 1764.—At last Colonel Henry Bouquet, a Swiss officer, who understood the Indian character and modes of fighting, collected a force and marched to defend the Ohio Valley. At Bushy Run a bloody battle was fought against an Indian force on their way to capture Fort Pitt, and Bouquet gained the most decisive victory ever won over the red men. This defeat broke up Pontiac's confederacy. Treaties of peace were made, and two hundred white captives were given up. Pontiac himself sued for peace. He was murdered later on, at Cahokia, in a drunken brawl.

QUESTIONS.—1. Describe the advance of General Braddock's army in 1755 and the ambush into which it fell. 2. Tell of Braddock's defeat. 3. What was Washington's experience during the fight, and how was his bravery rewarded? 4. Where was an important victory gained over the French? 5. What war was going on in Europe at this time? 6. What success did the French meet with in New York? 7. Who now became the head of affairs in England, and how did this affect the war in America? 8. What city bears his name? 9. Tell of the situation of Quebec, and to whom its capture was intrusted. 10. Describe the ascent of the Heights of Abraham. 11. What resistance was made by the French, and how was it met by Wolfe's men? 12. Tell of the victory and of General Wolfe's death. 13. What was the fate of the French general and of Quebec? 14. What now stands upon the spot where the brave commanders fell? 15. What did the English gain by the Treaty of Paris? 16. What were the results of the Colonial War? 17. What caused Pontiac's War, and how long did it last? 18. Who put an end to it, and what became of the Indian chief Pontiac? 19. Find on the map all places mentioned.

AUTHORITIES.—Bancroft's History of the United States, Vol. II., III., IV.; Hildreth's History of the United States, Vol. II.; Winsor's Narrative and Critical History of the United States, Vol. III., V.; Campbell's History of Virginia; Cooke's History of Virginia; Fiske's Beginnings of New England; Marshall's and Irving's Life of Washington; Ramsey's History of South Carolina; Thackeray's Virginians; Roosevelt's Winning of the West; Fiske's History of the United States.

SUMMARY FOR REVIEWS AND ESSAYS.

KING WILLIAM'S WAR AND QUEEN ANNE'S WAR.—War of 1689; Cruelties of the French and Indians; New England makes resistance; Peace of Ryswick, 1697; Queen Anne's War, 1702; Indian atrocities; End of the War, 1713; France in the Northwest; the Central Colonies.

COLONIES UNDER GEORGE I. AND GEORGE II.—Increase of population, 1688-1714; Peace in George I.'s reign; Defeat of the Yemasees in South Carolina; South Carolina becomes a royal province; Advance of the colonies; Governor Spotswood in Virginia; Spotswood's ironworks, 1714; Expedition across the Blue Ridge, 1716; Valley of Virginia taken possession of; Spotswood displaced by the council, 1722; George II., 1727; Prosperity in Virginia.

SETTLEMENT OF GEORGIA—GEORGE II.'S WAR.—Grant to Oglethorpe, 1733; Settlement of Savannah; the Indians friendly; German and Italian settlers; the Scotch at Darien; slavery and rum prohibited; the Wesleys and Whitefield; War with the Spaniards; effort against Savannah; Georgia a royal province, 1752; George II.'s War; Northwest sold to Virginia, 1744; New England captures Louisburg, 1745; steady improvement—first newspaper; postal improvements; Benjamin Franklin—George Washington.

SETTLEMENT OF THE VALLEY OF VIRGINIA—THE FRENCH IN THE WEST AND NORTH.—Valley of Virginia settled, 1732; Salling's exploration; Benjamin Burden in Rockbridge county; the Scotch-Irish settlers; religious toleration; Germans in the Valley, 1745; George Washington, the young surveyor; the French in the west and north; France claims the Ohio; resistance to French claims; the Ohio Company of Virginians, 1749.

OPENING OF THE COLONIAL WAR.—Causes of the colonial war; Washington carries a message to the French; result of the embassy; the fort captured by the French; Great Meadows, 1754; France and England take part in the war; Exile of the Acadians.

COLONIAL WAR—INDIAN WARS.—Braddock's advance, 1755; Braddock's defeat; Washington's bravery; victory at Lake George; the Seven Years' War; French success in New York; English successes; attack on Quebec, 1759; climbing the Heights of Abraham; French resistance; victory—death of Wolfe; surrender of Quebec; monument to Wolfe and Montcalm; Treaty of Paris, 1763; important results of Colonial War; Pontiac's War, 1763; Bouquet's victory, 1764.

THE REVOLUTION—1763-1786.

CHAPTER XVII.

CAUSES OF THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION.

The Next War.—The next war which broke out in the colonies was not with the Indians nor with foreign nations. It was the war of the American Revolution—the great struggle for freedom on the part of the colonies. We must first consider the causes which led to it, and the condition of the Americans when they began it.

Colonies Strenuous for their Rights.—From the earliest times the colonists, especially in Virginia and Massachusetts, insisted that they had the right to choose their own law-makers, to regulate their own affairs, to lay their own taxes, and to say how the money raised should be spent. These rights had been disregarded in England. Navigation laws hampered and oppressed them, and forbade them to engage in trade except when it put money into English pockets. Manufactures had been restricted and prevented as much as possible. In New England the hated English church had been forced upon the descendants of the Puritans, and in Virginia the loyal churchmen had to resist stoutly the efforts of government to place over them clergymen who were not to their taste.

England Wishes to Tax the Colonies.—While England was continually at war in Europe, she had neither leisure nor troops to enforce many of her claims over the colonies. But even during this period, when they were steadily growing stronger, it was a favorite project with the royal governors and commissioners to make them pay taxes to support the English government.

First Cause of Hostility.—This project was sure to provoke resistance whenever such taxing should be attempted.

But it was not the first cause for hostility between the colonies and the mother country. The first difficulty arose in Virginia between the people and the clergy, and involved a direct resistance to the English king.

Two-penny Act.—Tobacco was for many years the currency in Virginia, and the clergymen were paid their salaries in it. In 1758 the tobacco crop failed, and there was great distress for want of means. A law was passed that debts should be paid in money at the rate of two-pence a pound for tobacco, which was its value when the salaries of the clergy were fixed. Tobacco had risen to sixpence a pound, but there was very little of it, and the people could not raise the money to pay what they owed at that price. The change in their salaries bore hard on the clergy, and some of them appealed to the crown for redress. King George III. thought he had the right to govern the colonies as he pleased, and declared that the "Two-penny Act" was no law at all. The clergy sued the vestries for the salaries they claimed, and the assembly stood by the vestries.

Patrick Henry.—The most famous of these suits was brought in Hanover County, Virginia, and argued by a then unknown young lawyer, who became one of the most famous men of his time.



PATRICK HENRY.

The "Parson's Cause," 1763.—When this famous suit was brought for the salary of the Reverend James Maury, the vestry engaged Patrick Henry¹ to defend their cause. The rector of the parish in Hanover was Henry's uncle, and the young lawyer persuaded him to go away lest his feelings might be hurt. The presiding justice was Patrick's own father. There was a

¹ Patrick Henry was the son of a gentlemen of small means, and a large family in Hanover County. He was educated mainly by his father, who taught him Latin, a little Greek and some mathematics. At the age of fifteen he was put into a store to learn how to be a merchant. Before young Henry was twenty he married, and tried several ways of making a living—first farming, and then store-keeping again. He next studied law, and was admitted to the bar in 1760.

special jury, and a great crowd assembled. Young Henry was awkward and much embarrassed, but as he warmed to his subject his audience felt that he was a genuine orator. His bold defence of the rights of the people to make their own laws and lay their own taxes, and his charge of injustice against the king for interfering with them were even considered treasonable. The jury was convinced by his arguments and his eloquence, and awarded the plaintiff only one penny for damages. Henry was greatly applauded by the crowd, and his speech and the decision against the king which it caused may be looked upon as the beginning of the revolution against English authority. It was a question of principle for which the Virginians were contending, and you will see how they resisted more and more any trampling on their rights.

Writs of Assistance.—Real hardship and loss were caused in New England by the revival of the Navigation Laws. Trade was hindered, the fisheries broken up, and poverty ensued. For a long time these laws had been eluded, but now the English government ordered the courts to issue “writs of assistance” under which the revenue officers could call on any one to assist them in bringing offenders against the law to justice. In a suit against these writs in 1760, James Otis pleaded the cause of the people against such injustice. The court, however, proceeded to issue the “obnoxious writs.”

Higher Taxes.—Parliament became still more arbitrary, and laid higher duties on many things, especially sugar and molasses. The New Englanders brought these products from the West Indies in exchange for fish and lumber, used as much as they needed, and manufactured the rest into rum, which in its turn they exported.

Stamp Act, 1765.—A Stamp Act now passed by the Parliament in England proved more irritating to the colonists than any other measure. This act compelled all papers necessary in carrying on business—bills, receipts, licenses, deeds, bonds and wills—to be written on stamped paper, for which a high price must be paid. But it was not so much the amount of the tax

as the assertion of the right to tax the colonies without their consent, that made them oppose it.

Stamp Act Opposed.—The principal opposition to the revenue and navigation laws began in Boston, the principal port in Massachusetts, but the Stamp Act was equally objectionable to all the colonies. The first declaration against it was made in the Virginia Assembly, where Patrick Henry, in a set of five resolutions, affirmed that the Virginians had always been entitled, under the royal charters, to all the rights and privileges of Englishmen; that the taxing of the colonists by themselves alone was one of the most important of these rights, and that any attempt to lay taxes otherwise was likely to destroy not only American but British freedom. Under the influence of Henry's fiery eloquence the resolutions were carried by a small majority.¹

Congress of Colonies, 1765.—Massachusetts called a colonial congress to consider what should be done to resist the Stamp Act and preserve the liberties of the colonies. The meeting took place in New York in October, 1765. There were no representatives from Virginia, North Carolina, Georgia or New Hampshire. In Virginia the governor would not permit the assembly to meet and elect delegates. South Carolina, influenced by the wise patriot, Christopher Gadsden, promptly enrolled herself on the side of liberty. Georgia and New Hampshire sent messages of sympathy, and the assembly of North Carolina expressed the same feeling.

Taxation without Representation.—The congress denied the right of Parliament to tax them as long as they had no representatives in that body, and sent petitions on the subject to the king. The four absent colonies sent similar petitions.

Repeal of Stamp Act.—The stamp distributors were forced to resign or be greatly ill-treated, and the execution of the Stamp Act was everywhere opposed. Parliament, finding they could

¹ No report was made of this speech, but Thomas Jefferson, who heard it, declared it most wonderful. In its course the speaker said: "Caesar had his Brutus; Charles I. his Cromwell; and George III—" "Treason! Treason!" cried out his opponents. Henry paused, looked the Speaker of the House full in the eyes, and went on: "May profit by their example. If this be treason, make the most of it."

not enforce it, repealed the act, but declared that the king, with the advice of Parliament, had a right to make what laws he pleased.

Committees of Correspondence.—In 1772 a band of Rhode Islanders boarded and burned the *Gaspée*, a revenue vessel which ran aground in trying to catch a packet from Providence. The crown officers directed the governor of Rhode Island to arrest the offenders and send them to England to be tried. This order, although not complied with, was considered the greatest outrage upon American liberties, and the Virginia Assembly at once organized a committee to correspond with the other colonies as to the best means for preserving their liberties. The other colonies followed Virginia's example, and the way was thus prepared for the first Colonial Congress, which, on the proposal of Virginia, met the next year, 1774, in Philadelphia.

An Important Tea-Party.—Parliament repealed all the revenue taxes except a small one on tea, which was to be sent in large quantities to America and sold at a very low price, even when the tax was included. But the colonists were contending for a principle, and determined that none of the taxed tea should be landed on their shores. Ships bringing out tea were either sent back with their cargoes or the tea was rendered unsalable. At Boston, when two tea-ships sailed into the harbor, they were boarded at night by men disguised as Indians, who threw overboard \$90,000 worth of tea. Parliament, in revenge, declared that no ships should enter the port of Boston—an act of tyranny which kindled a blaze of indignation in all the colonies; and they at once sent messages of sympathy and offered assistance to the ill-treated city.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was the next war in America? 2. For what rights had the colonies always been strenuous, and how had they been oppressed? 3. What was the favorite project of the royal governors? 4. What was the first cause of hostility? 5. Tell the story of the Two-penny Act. 6. Give a sketch of Patrick Henry's life up to 1760 (note). 7. What can you tell of the Parson's cause, and of Patrick Henry's defence of the vestries? 8. From what cause rose the first resistance in New England? 9. Tell of the higher

taxes imposed by Parliament. 10. What was the Stamp Act, and when was it passed? 11. Tell of the opposition to it and of Patrick Henry's great speech in 1765. 12. Give an account of the Congress of colonies in the same year. 13. What stand was taken by this Congress? 14. What became of the Stamp Act? 15. Tell the story of the *Gaspée*. 16. What committees led to the first Colonial Congress in 1774? 17. What led to the Boston "Tea Party," and how were the colonies roused?

CHAPTER XVIII.

COLONIES IN 1760-1775.—SETTLEMENT OF KENTUCKY AND TENNESSEE.

Condition of the Colonies.—The colonies were better able to undertake a struggle with the mother country than at any previous time. Their population had increased to nearly 3,000,000. Of these about 500,000 were negro slaves, who were found in all the colonies, though much more numerous south of the Potomac. Virginia and South Carolina with their crops of tobacco and rice had more slaves than their neighbors.

Education.—In spite of wars and other troubles the prosperity of the country had increased like its population. This is especially shown by the diffusion of learning and literature. To the first three colleges, Harvard, William and Mary, and Yale, six others had been added. Dartmouth and Brown University in New England; Columbia in New York; Princeton and Rutgers in New Jersey, and the University of Pennsylvania. Smaller schools, afterwards to become important, were also established in many places.

Newspapers.—In 1776 there were thirty-seven newspapers. Twenty years earlier there had only been nine. These papers did much to foster the growing spirit of independence, and prepare the way for unity of action among the people. Dr. Franklin as postmaster-general of the colonies had greatly im-



BENJAMIN FRANKLIN.

proved the postal service. He had also increased the comfort of the world by inventing the Franklin stove, and had discovered that lightning and electricity were the same.

Social Conditions.—There was little change in the social condition of the people except that they were growing more alike in thought and feeling. Rich folk were building fine houses with great halls and galleries like those of their English ancestors. In the North these were generally in or near the towns, while the Southern planters preferred life in the country amidst their broad acres and their slaves. The Huguenots of South Carolina built chateaux like those of France, some of which were still standing a few years ago. All these fine houses were furnished with European luxury. English coaches were found in their stables. French satins and velvets and English laces and jewels furnished their wardrobes, and their sideboards displayed fine stores of china, glass and plate. In the South, the estates were like small kingdoms. The negroes were trained as carpenters, blacksmiths, and wagon-makers. They spun and wove, were shoemakers and tailors, and ran saw and grist-mills for their masters, besides cultivating the crops. Everything necessary on the plantation was made within its gates, except the luxuries of the “great house.”

Life among the Middle Classes.—The middle classes also lived in great comfort in their strongly-built log or stone houses, furnished with home-made chairs and tables, with wooden or pewter plates and dishes, and wore garments spun, woven and made up by the women of the household. When the time of trial came the wealthy men and women with their silk attire and luxurious surroundings signed the non-importation agreements, by which they pledged themselves to use nothing brought from England, as promptly as the poorest and most hard-working of their neighbors.

Non-Importation Agreements.—These agreements forbade the bringing in not only of wine, tea, silks, laces, china, plate and other articles of luxury, but laid especial stress on the non-importation of more negro slaves.

Opposition to Slavery.—South Carolina and Virginia, which held more slaves than the other colonies, were the first among them to oppose slavery in earnest. In 1760 the South Carolina Assembly restricted the bringing in of more slaves. The next year the Virginia Assembly laid such a heavy duty on each slave brought into the colony that their importation would be practically prevented. England immediately vetoed this law, and instructed the colonial governors not to permit any restrictions of the slave-trade, which was considered and spoken of by the English government as “a traffic beneficial to the nation.”

Settlements in Tennessee.—Open Indian warfare ceased at the close of Pontiac's war, and a steady stream of immigration set in from Pennsylvania to the valleys west of the Alleghany Mountains in Virginia and farther south. A mixed race, sprung from ancestors of Scotch-Irish, German, Huguenot and English blood, the fearless, independent “backwoodsmen” of the western frontiers, now took possession of the country between the mountains and the Mississippi River, where they met the Indians with equal cunning and fortitude, and almost with as much cruelty.

Counties of Botetourt and Fincastle.—This immigration moved southwest down the Valley of Virginia, and that region and all the territory towards the west claimed by Virginia was set off into the counties of Botetourt and Fincastle. Kentucky was an unknown wilderness, penetrated only by some stray hunter or trader.

Daniel Boone in Kentucky, 1769.—In 1769 Daniel Boone crossed the mountains into Kentucky with a small party, and hunted for six months without molestation. Then the Indians attacked and killed most of the white men. Boone and another hunter were captured, but made their escape. One of Boone's brothers and another hunter came from North Carolina to join them. The two other men were killed by Indians, but the



DANIEL BOONE.

two Boones spent the winter in the wilderness, hundreds of miles away from any white man. There were no Indians settled in Kentucky, but each one who came to the hunting ground was a treacherous foe to the whites.

Kentucky Settled, 1771.—After remaining two years in the wilderness Daniel Boone returned to the Yadkin, and moved his own family and several others to Kentucky. There he built a stockade fort, and established a settlement at Boonesborough.

Watauga Settlement, Tennessee, 1769.—Settlements were also made along the headwaters of the Clinch and Holston rivers, and at the time that Boone went to Kentucky a whole community from central North Carolina, wishing to escape oppression, moved across the mountains and settled in the Watauga and Nollichucky Valleys, in the State of Tennessee. Their distance from other settlements compelled them to form some plan of government, which they did under the influence of James Robertson and John Sevier, both Virginians, and both under thirty years of age.¹

QUESTIONS.—1. What was the condition of the colonies between 1760 and 1775? 2. What advance had been made in education? 3. Tell of the newspapers at this time. 4. What was Dr. Franklin's position, and what important invention and discovery had he made? 5. Describe the social condition and mode of life of the rich at the North and at the South. 6. What was the mode of life among the middle classes? 7. What were the non-importation acts? 8. What efforts were made to restrict the slave-trade, and how were they met by England? 9. Tell of the settlements in Tennessee, and by whom they were made? 10. Where were the counties of Botetourt and Fincastle, and what is that region now? 11. Tell the story of Daniel Boone. 12. When and in what way was Kentucky settled? 13. Where was the Watauga settlement, and how was it governed? 14. Find on the map all the places mentioned.

¹ Robertson was born in Brunswick county, Virginia, in 1742. He had no early education, and was taught to read and write by his wife, but he was a born leader of men, possessing a masterful character and fine intellect. John Sevier was born in Rockingham county, was of Huguenot ancestry, well educated, accomplished, and very handsome. These two drew up the first written constitution in America, and established an organized government, which regulated the Watauga settlement for six years, when it became a part of Washington county, which then formed the western part of North Carolina.

CHAPTER XIX.

FIRST CONTINENTAL CONGRESS—INDIAN WAR IN VIRGINIA.

Conventions in Virginia, 1769 and 1774.—The first Revolutionary convention in Virginia made the non-importation agreement in 1769. When the assembly or legislature of Virginia of 1774 expressed sympathy with Boston after her port was closed, Lord Dunmore, the governor, dismissed it. The members repaired to the Raleigh Tavern, condemned the action of the English government, and advised that a convention should meet at Williamsburg on August first, which should elect delegates to the "General Congress" of the colonies to be convened during the same year.



THE THIRTEEN ORIGINAL STATES.

First Continental Congress, 1774.—This Congress met in

Philadelphia in September, 1774. Every colony except Georgia was represented. Peyton Randolph, of Virginia, was chosen president, and Charles Thompson, of Pennsylvania, secretary. Its deliberations were made with closed doors, and only their results were published. It first defined its own character by voting itself a congress of separate and distinct political bodies; and then determined that each colony must be considered equal and have an equal vote. The members were not ready for independence, and hoped to persuade the king to redress their grievances. They, therefore, sent a petition to the king, and also said very plainly what they considered to be the rights of the colonies.

“The Minute Men.”—The Americans were especially opposed to having English troops quartered upon them. General Gage was in Boston with two British regiments. He was made governor of Massachusetts, called the General Court of the colony together and then forbade its members to assemble. They met, nevertheless, declared themselves the congress of the province, made John Hancock their president, and chose committees of safety and of supplies. They also voted that 12,000 troops should be raised, and that one-fourth of the militia should be enlisted as “Minute Men,” who should be ready to march or fight at a minute’s notice.

Indian War in Virginia, 1774.—In the midst of the agitation and anxiety of the whole country a bloody war occurred in Virginia. The Indians north of the Ohio, the Shawnees, Mingoes and remnants of other tribes were filled with jealousy of the white men who were gradually taking possession of their hunting grounds and hiding places. More than all others they dreaded the Virginia pioneers—the “Long Knives.”¹

Armies for Defence.—An increase of Indian outrage in the spring of 1774 caused the frontiersmen to assemble in self-de-

¹ Cornstalk, the Shawnee, and Logan, chief of the Mingoes, were the leaders among the Indians. Cresap and Greathouse were the two white men who most resembled the Indians in cunning, skill and deadly cruelty.

fence. Various small encounters took place with savage wrongs on both sides. The whites killed and scalped friendly as well as hostile Indians. Greathouse and his band made Logan's whole family drunk and then murdered them. The fierce strife which followed was so serious that Lord Dunmore ordered 3,000 men to assemble to defend the frontier. Half of these were commanded by General Andrew Lewis, the other half by Dunmore himself. Both armies were to meet at the mouth of the Great Kanawha River. Lewis's force from the west and southwest counties of Virginia—Augusta, Botetourt and Fincastle—promptly obeyed the summons to come to defend their brethren. It was purely an American army, clad in hunting shirts of deerskin or homespun, and armed with clumsy rifles and muskets.

Battle of the Great Kanawha.—Lewis, with some 1,100 men, encamped near the mouth of the Kanawha, and Cornstalk determined to attack and overpower the "Long Knives" in their sleep. On the night of October 9th, 1,000 Indian warriors were noiselessly ferried over the Ohio River, but were perceived by some hunters who at once gave the alarm to Lewis and his men. The whites seized their arms, sheltered themselves behind trees and rocks, and carried on a stubborn and bloody fight until afternoon. Colonels Lewis and Field were killed, Colonel Fleming wounded, and fourteen other of the officers were either killed or disabled. The men continued a hand-to-hand contest with the savages, who, after nightfall, retreated across the Ohio, leaving their dead in the enemy's hands.

Result of the Battle.—This was the fiercest and most persistent battle ever fought between the border men and the Indians. It completely broke the spirit of the savages, and induced them to make peace, which made the settlement of Kentucky practicable within a few years. Dunmore's force did nothing in the war, but his officers, dissatisfied with their inaction, united with those of Lewis in declaring their sympathy with the Continental Congress, and with all efforts to preserve the liberties of the colonies.

George Rogers Clarke.—Among the men engaged in this campaign who did gallant service for their country within the next ten years was George Rogers Clarke. He was a young Virginian from Albemarle county, of good family, was well educated, a skillful hunter, and fond of a roving, adventurous life. He had been employed as a surveyor along the Ohio, where he took part in different contests with the Indians.

QUESTIONS.—1. When did the first Revolutionary Convention meet in Virginia, and what did it do? 2. The second Revolutionary Convention? 3. When and where did the first Continental Congress meet? 4. Who were some of its officers? 5. What did it do? 6. Tell of General Gage, John Hancock and the "Minute Men." 7. What fresh trouble now arose in Virginia? 8. Who were the two famous Indian leaders, and what two white men most resembled them? 9. Where did the first fighting take place, and with what results? 10. What army was raised? 11. By whom was it commanded? 12. Where were the divisions to meet? 13. Describe the battle of the Great Kanawha. 14. What were its effects upon the savages and upon emigration? 15. What did Lord Dunmore's officers do? 16. Who was George Rogers Clarke?

CHAPTER XX.

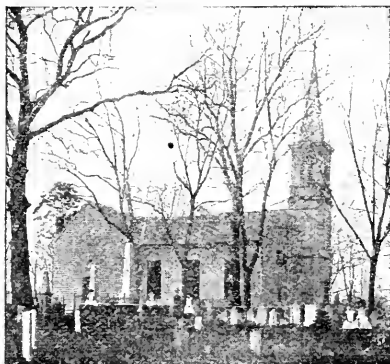
OPENING OF THE REVOLUTION.

Second Virginia Convention.—Notwithstanding the efforts for conciliation made by Lord Chatham, formerly known as William Pitt, early in 1775, the British Parliament still farther restricted American liberties. The second Virginia convention met in St. John's Church, Richmond. The members differed in their views. Patrick Henry proposed that measures should be taken to raise and equip soldiers for the defence of the colony, but the more conservative members did not think the time had come for such a revolutionary measure. Henry then made a grand speech in which he uttered the eloquent words: "We must fight; an appeal to arms and to the God of battles is all that is left us," and concluded with the thrilling declaration,

"I know not what course others may take, but as for me give me liberty or give me death." Henry's resolutions were adopted and the enlisting of soldiers and preparation of arms went on throughout the colony.

Removal of the Powder.

Dunmore, in the meantime, forbade that delegates should be sent to the congress which was to assemble in May. He also carried off the powder from the magazine in Williamsburg to one of the British ships in the river, and thus strove to cripple the de-



ST. JOHN'S CHURCH.

fence of the colony as Berkeley had done one hundred years before. This high-handed act excited great indignation, and the Virginians everywhere volunteered to march to Williamsburg and compel the restoration of the powder. A troop from Hanover County, led by Patrick Henry, forced Dunmore to pay the value of the missing powder.

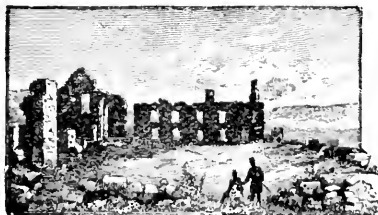
Battle of Lexington, 1775.—The opening fight of the Revolution occurred in Massachusetts. General Gage had 3,000 British troops in Boston. He determined to destroy a supply of ammunition stored by the colonists at Concord, sixteen miles away. On the night of April 18th, 800 British soldiers marched for Concord. Dr. Warren, one of the committee of safety, sent men to alarm the country. Signals of danger were also given by a lantern hung in a church tower. These warnings were heeded, and at Lexington the British found seventy "minute men" assembled. Major Pitcairn, a British officer, rode forward and asked what they meant. "We are going to Concord," was the reply. "Disperse, ye rebels!" shouted Pitcairn, firing his pistol and calling on his men to fire. Seven "minute men" were killed and nine wounded. The British continued on to Concord and destroyed such stores as had not been removed.

By this time a number of "minute men" had assembled who kept up a continual attack on the British as they returned to Boston. Two hundred and seventy-three English soldiers were killed and eighty-nine of the Americans.

Israel Putnam and John Stark.—Tidings of this fight ran like lightning through the colonies. Men made ready to meet the war which had come. In Connecticut, Israel Putnam, leaving his plow in the furrow, rode off on one of the plow-horses to join the army before Boston. In New Hampshire, John Stark, already trained in the French and Indian wars, left his home in ten minutes after hearing of the fight, and rode to Boston, encouraging the men along his road to bestir themselves in defence of liberty.

The Country Rises Everywhere.—The eagerness for resistance was universal. The men of Charleston, South Carolina, seized the royal arsenal and distributed twelve hundred stand of arms the night after hearing of Lexington. The assembly of the colony ordered two regiments of infantry and one of rangers to be raised, and issued \$100,000 in support of the war. Georgia, also, took possession of the king's magazine in Savannah, where they found a valuable supply of powder.

Capture of Ticonderoga.—Ethan Allen, of Vermont, at the head of a small force of New England volunteers, surprised Fort Ticonderoga in New York. When the commander of the fort was aroused from sleep by Allen's summons of surrender, he naturally asked: "By what authority?" "In the name of the Great Jehovah and the Continental Congress," was Allen's reply.

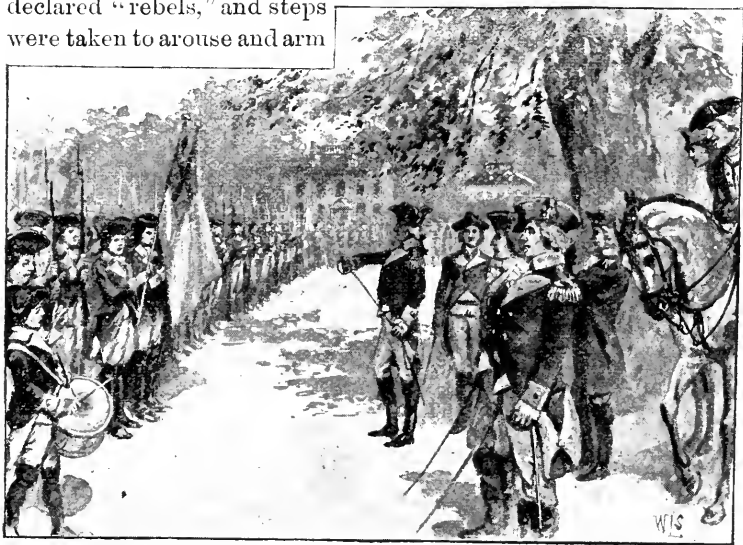


RUINS OF TICONDEROGA.

The fort, with its garrison of fifty men and nearly two hundred cannon and many military stores, was surrendered. Crown Point and Fort George soon fell into the hands of the Americans.

Second Continental Congress, 1775.—The second Continental Congress met in Philadelphia on May 10th, the day of the capture of Ticonderoga. John Hancock, of Massachusetts, was made president. Congress, not yet prepared for open revolt, sent another petition to King George, which he refused to receive. Addresses were issued to the people of Great Britain, of Ireland, and of New England, in the name of the twelve united colonies, the representatives from Georgia not having arrived at the time.

Scruples of Congress Overcome.—When the news of the battle of Lexington reached England violent proceedings against the colonies were at once determined on. The colonists were declared “rebels,” and steps were taken to arouse and arm



WASHINGTON TAKING COMMAND OF THE ARMY.

the Indians and negroes against the whites. These extreme measures convinced the most irresolute among the congressmen that their only hope lay in prompt resistance.

“The United Colonies.”—Events in New England, also, put an end to hesitation. There were now about 10,000 British troops in Boston, under Gage. On June 12th a proclamation declared Massachusetts under martial law, and offered pardon to all who would lay down their arms, except Samuel Adams

and John Hancock. This proclamation decided the action of Congress. A Federal Union was at once formed under the name of the "United Colonies." The army already assembled was adopted, and called the "Continental Army," and \$30,000 were borrowed to purchase powder. It was determined to issue \$3,000,000 of paper money and to raise an army of 20,000 men. The patriot forces of New York were charged with the duty of keeping the way open between New England and Philadelphia.

Washington Commander-in-Chief.—The election of a commander-in-chief was also decided on. Several of the leaders, and John Hancock especially, desired the position, but George Washington was chosen as the most experienced and fittest person for it. Four major-generals, (Ward, Charles Lee,¹ Philip Schuyler and Israel Putnam) and eight brigadier-generals (Pomeroy, Montgomery, Wooster, Heath, Spencer, Thomas, Sullivan and Greene) were chosen.

Appearance and Character of Washington.—Washington was in the prime of life, forty-three years old, tall and stately,



WASHINGTON'S BIRTHPLACE.

noble in bearing and always dignified. All who saw him admired his manly presence, soldierly look, and the fine appearance he made, especially on horseback. The commission bestowed on June

20th laid on him as heavy a responsibility as any one man has ever borne. You will see how nobly he sustained it, and what his country owes to his courage, fidelity and patriotism.

QUESTIONS.—1. When and where was the second Virginia Convention held? 2. Tell of Patrick Henry's great speech and its result. 3. Why did Governor Dunmore carry off the powder, and how was his action met? 4. Tell the story of the battle of Lexington. 5. Who were Israel Putnam and John Stark? 6. What effect had the battle of Lexington upon the other colonies? 7. How was Fort Ticonderoga captured, and by whom? 8. What

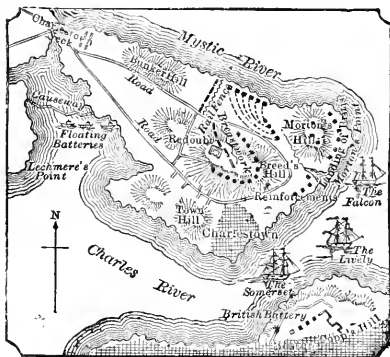
¹ Charles Lee was an English officer, who, after fighting in various wars, had resigned and settled in Virginia. Horatio Gates, another British soldier of ability, who had also become a Virginia planter, was, by Washington's influence, made adjutant-general of the Continental Army.

other forts were also taken? 9. When and where did the second Continental Congress assemble? 10. Why were only twelve colonies represented? 11. What was England's course when hearing of the uprising in America? 12. What proclamation was made in Boston? 13. What course of action was immediately decided upon by Congress? 14. Who was chosen commander-in-chief of the army? 15. What general officers were appointed? 16. Describe Washington's appearance and character.

CHAPTER XXI.

PROGRESS OF EVENTS IN NEW ENGLAND—INVASION OF CANADA.

Battle of Bunker Hill, 1775.—While Congress was calling a nation into being the first battle of the Revolution was fought before Boston. About 15,000 poorly armed and equipped men from New England had collected around that city. The British army in Boston had fortified Boston Neck. The Americans extended from Charleston towards the south outside the city. A rumor reached them that General Gage was about to fortify Dorchester Heights, and the Americans determined to intrench themselves on Bunker Hill.



BUNKER HILL.

Intrenchment of Breed's Hill.—On the night of June 16th 1,200 men, under Colonel Prescott, marched to Charlestown, carrying intrenching tools. On Copp's Hill, just across the mouth of Charles River, was a British battery, so that the utmost caution and silence were necessary. Finding that Breed's Hill, though lower than Bunker's, was nearer Boston, it was decided to make the intrenchment there. Colonel Gridley marked out the lines. The men began digging about midnight and

worked so fast that by dawn they had thrown up a fort and an embankment six feet high on the crest and down the side of the hill. A British vessel, the *Lively*, opened fire on them, but they worked on, while, to encourage his men, Prescott walked around the top of the embankment.

British Prepare to Attack.—There was no American force on Charlestown Neck, and Generals Howe and Piggot landed 2,000 British troops there by noon. Howe saw some New Hampshire troops marching up in the distance, so he halted and sent to Gage for reinforcements, while the men already landed were given food and beer. Stark and his men reached Breed's Hill during this delay and threw up a novel breastwork by planting one fence a little way behind another, and filling the space between with hay.

Repulse of the British.—When the British advanced against the intrenchments the Americans were ordered not to fire until they could "see the whites of their eyes." The volley then poured with deliberate aim into the assaulting column caused it to fall back in confusion. A second charge was repulsed still more vigorously. Howe's attack upon the breastwork of the fences was also driven back by a murderous fire at thirty paces.

Americans Obligated to Retreat.—Howe made a third attack, this time against the hill. The Americans had no more powder. Further resistance was impossible, and Prescott ordered them to retreat. British and Americans in a confused mass surged down the hill. The Americans passed over some unfinished works on Bunker Hill and down behind it, the men at the fence maintaining their ground until Prescott's force was in safety, when they, too, slowly withdrew. During this retreat General Warren, who had volunteered as a private, was shot through the breast. The English intrenched themselves on Bunker Hill, and no effort was made to renew the fight.

Opinions of the Battle.—The British felt humiliated, because, with a loss of 1,054 men, they had only succeeded in driving the despised colonial force from their feeble defences. The Americans lost 450, but were mortified at what they consid-

ered a defeat. Their gallant fighting aroused much enthusiasm throughout the colonies. When Washington, who was on his way to Boston, met the courier carrying tidings of the battle to Congress, and heard how bravely the militia had behaved, he exclaimed: "The liberties of our country are safe."

Washington Takes Command of the Army.—Washington took command of the army at Cambridge on July 2d. He was received with great joy, and a salute was fired, although the army had a very small supply of powder.

The Continental Line.—The first work of the commander-in-chief was to reduce the undisciplined force at Cambridge into an efficient army. To curb the independent spirit of the volunteers, the men were enlisted for the war or some definite time into what was called "The Continental Line."

Troops from Pennsylvania, Maryland and Virginia.—The ranks of the army were filled by troops from other colonies. Fourteen hundred riflemen came from Pennsylvania, Maryland and Virginia¹. Washington knew what a valuable assistance these hardy hunters and fighters would prove. This increase of soldiers did not, however, increase the American supply of ammunition. Two thousand of the men were without muskets, and Washington could make no attack on the British lines because his men had no powder.



DANIEL MORGAN.

Efforts to Seize Canada, 1775.—To weaken the British power, considerable efforts were made to take possession of Canada. The Canadians were not in favor of the project, and it came to nothing. Montreal fell for a time into the hands of the colonies. Washington thought that the capture of Quebec would accomplish his object, and sent Benedict Arnold with 1,100 men by way of the Kennebec River to approach Quebec on

¹ When Daniel Morgan, with his ninety-six mounted riflemen, who had come six hundred miles from the Shenandoah Valley, following Morgan's brief order—"A bee line for Boston"—rode into camp, Washington is said to have welcomed them with glistening eyes.

the east and co-operate with another force, under Montgomery, from the west.

Attack on Quebec.—Arnold's force reached Quebec after great hardship and danger. The men from the western side refused to advance, and Montgomery could only bring a small number to Arnold's assistance. On the last day of the year a disastrous assault was made on the citadel. Montgomery was slain, Arnold severely wounded, and 400 of the attacking force were either killed or captured. Morgan was among the prisoners. The Colonial army, from which much had been expected, returned home in the spring, having accomplished nothing.

First Colonial Flag, 1776.—The first flag of the United Colonies, thirteen stripes added to the British union or blue square, was hoisted over the American camp at Cambridge on the 1st of January, 1776.

British Driven from Boston.—At last Washington secured powder enough for his long-desired attack on Boston, and occupied Dorchester Heights on the night of March 4th. By the next morning a formidable-looking fortress commanded the whole British encampment and fleet. When the British commander saw it he exclaimed, "These rebels have done more work in one night than my whole army would have done in a month." The British could no longer maintain themselves in Boston, and on the 17th of March Howe, who had succeeded Gage, and his 11,000 men, sailed away to Halifax, where he remained about three months. The Americans occupied the city the next day.

Washington's Army Goes to New York.—Boston no longer needed the army. Sir Guy Carleton was preparing to descend upon the Hudson Valley from Canada, and General Howe to take possession of New York. General Washington, therefore, took his army to defend that city.

QUESTIONS.—1. What troops were assembled around Boston in 1775? 2. Tell of the intrenchment of Breed's Hill. 3. Who commanded the Americans and who the British troops? 4. What preparations for the attack were made by the British? 5. Describe the assault and its repulse

by the Americans. 6. Why were the Americans obliged to withdraw? 7. What brave officer was killed during the retreat? 8. What opinions of the battle were entertained by both sides? 9. When and where did Washington take command of the army? 10. What was the Continental line? 11. What troops came from Pennsylvania, Maryland and Virginia? 12. What was the condition of the army? 13. Tell of Daniel Morgan and his marching order (note)? 14. What expedition was sent to the north? 15. Why was it sent? 16. Tell of the attack on Quebec and its result. 17. What was the first Colonial flag? 18. When and where was it hoisted? 19. How were the British driven from Boston? 20. Where did Washington take his army, and why? 21. Look carefully on the map for all the places mentioned.

CHAPTER XXII.

REVOLUTION IN THE SOUTHERN COLONIES—DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

Dunmore Deposed by the Virginia Assembly.—Lord Dunmore convened the Virginia Burgesses on the 1st of June. He then took offence with them and moved himself and family to the Fowey man-of-war, twelve miles off in the river. The assembly, therefore, declared that by refusing to return to his post he had abdicated his position as governor, and that the president of the council was the head of the colony.

Convention of 1775.—The assembly then adjourned, and met again in Richmond on July 17th, as the Convention of 1775. This convention ordered two regiments of regulars to be enlisted for a year, and two companies to defend the western border. It divided the colony into sixteen districts, and directed the militia to be exercised as minute men. A committee of safety consisting of eleven members with Edmund Pendleton at their head, was organized to take charge of the affairs of the colony. Laws were passed to raise money, to procure arms and supplies of saltpetre, lead and sulphur, and to encourage the manufacture of gunpowder.

Dunmore Declares War on Virginia.—Patrick Henry was made colonel of the First Regiment, and Colonel Woodford of the Second. A camp was established on the Williamsburg green. Dunmore carried on a predatory war along the coasts with his armed vessels, and on November 7th proclaimed martial law. He ordered the citizens who did not join his standard to be proclaimed traitors, and offered freedom to all slaves who would rise against their masters. He also ordered the Indians to be stirred up against the colonies, and a regiment of backwoodsmen to be enlisted against the patriots. A British ship ran aground near Hampton, and was burned by the citizens of the town, and their resistance to an attacking force was the first real contention in the colony.

Battle of Great Bridge.—Dunmore had gone to the southeastern part of the colony where there was a number of Tories. General Woodford was ordered to go after him with 800 men. Dunmore had intrenched himself at the Great Bridge, over the Elizabeth River, about twenty miles from Norfolk. Woodford could not attack Dunmore for want of cannon, but also intrenched himself. His slight defences were attacked by the British grenadiers. The Americans did not fire until their foes were close upon them, and then took such deadly aim that after a second assault every grenadier was killed, while Woodford did not lose a single man. The British retreated in the night, and Dunmore took refuge on shipboard.

The Mecklenburg Declaration, 1775.—North Carolina showed herself fully in sympathy with the other colonies, and equally determined to resist British oppression. May 20, 1775, the people of Mecklenburg county passed bold resolutions asserting their right and intention to govern themselves. The patriots defeated all efforts to raise troops for British aid, and sent 600 North Carolina troops under Colonel Howe to Woodford's assistance against Dunmore. The provincial troops took possession of Norfolk, and on January 1, 1776, the town was shelled and burned by the British. Dunmore was finally driven from Virginia.

What South Carolina and Georgia Did.—South Carolina was as determined as Massachusetts and Virginia to defend her own rights and to help the other colonies. She raised troops for defence, and appointed a committee of safety, with Henry Laurens for president. They took possession of the defences of



COL. POLK READING THE MECKLENBURG DECLARATION.

Charleston and strengthened them to resist attack from the British ships. Georgia took a similar stand. Two war-vessels with troops on board came to Tybee, and, though there were neither ships nor men to oppose them, the committee of safety arrested the governor, and so prevented outrages like those of Dunmore in Virginia.

Acts of Congress.—The knowledge that King George had hired foreign soldiers to fight against the colonies; that he had ordered his ships to burn the towns along the coast, and that he would use any means to crush them, forced Congress to act with decision. Efforts were made to provide a navy for the colonies, and “letters of marque,” or permission to any ship to

arm itself and fight against the English ships, were issued. The colonies were advised to set up governments for themselves, and the country from Maine to Georgia was divided into military districts to be defended by the Continental Army.

South Carolina Declares Herself Independent, 1776.—The first steps of avowed independence were taken in the South. On the 24th of March, 1776, South Carolina organized an independent government with its legislature, its courts, and its army. John Rutledge was president, Henry Laurens, vice-president, and William Henry Drayton, chief-justice. Christopher Gadsden left Congress to command the little army. This colony was thus the first to proclaim herself an independent State.

North Carolina Goes Farther.—In a few weeks North Carolina went even farther, and authorized her delegates to join the other delegates in declaring themselves independent, and in forming foreign alliances.

Bold Stand of Virginia.—But it was Virginia, the oldest and most English of the colonies, which urged upon Congress the necessity for independence. Her arguments convinced the reluctant, and confirmed the wavering, and her sons presented to Congress the Declaration of Independence which gave to the world the confederation of the States of America.

Virginia Convention of 1776.—This convention met in Williamsburg on the 6th of May. Edmund Pendleton was again chosen president. The necessity and importance of declaring the colonies independent at once engaged the attention of the body. In a few days resolutions were passed instructing the Virginia delegates to propose that Congress should “declare the United Colonies free and independent States.” A committee was appointed to prepare a “Bill of Rights,” and a plan for the government of the colony.



RICHARD HENRY LEE.

Congress Appoints a Committee to Prepare a Declaration of Independence.—Obeying the instructions of Virginia, Richard Henry Lee, on

the 7th of June, offered a resolution in Congress, which was seconded by John Adams, that they should separate at once and entirely from Great Britain. After long debate a committee was appointed to draw up a suitable declaration of independence. Mr. Lee had been compelled to return to Virginia, and Thomas Jefferson¹ was made chairman of the committee. The other members were John Adams, of Massachusetts; Benjamin Franklin, of Pennsylvania; Roger Sherman, of Connecticut, and Robert Livingston, of New York.



THOMAS JEFFERSON.

Virginia Bill of Rights and Constitution.—Before Congress accepted the Declaration of Independence the convention of Virginia had unanimously adopted the Bill of Rights and the Constitution of Virginia, drawn up by George Mason, and Patrick Henry was elected first governor of the Commonwealth of Virginia. Two southern colonies thus declared themselves free and independent States before Congress took such a stand for the United Colonies. The Declaration of Independence was adopted on July 4, 1776, in Independence Hall, Philadelphia, and was signed by the delegates from all the thirteen colonies.

QUESTIONS.—1. Why was Lord Dunmore deposed by the Virginia assembly in 1775? 2. What regulations were made by the convention of 1775? 3. What preparations for war were made by Virginia, and what did Lord Dunmore do? 4. Describe the battle of Great Bridge. 5. What action was taken by North Carolina? 6. What became of Lord Dunmore? 7. What stand was taken by South Carolina and Georgia? 8. What measures were now taken by Congress, and why? 9. Tell of South Carolina's new Constitution and its officers. 10. What further stand did North Caro-

¹Thomas Jefferson, who prepared the Declaration of Independence, was from Albemarle county, Virginia, of English descent, and considerable fortune. After good schooling, he graduated at William and Mary College. He then studied law and began to practice at the age of twenty-four. An earnest student of nature and of books, and possessing a brilliant and logical mind, he became noted as a forcible thinker and writer. His feeble voice shut him off from oratory, but at the age of thirty-three he had become a leading statesman and patriot. No man of that eventful time exerted a more powerful influence on the history of the country.

lina make? 11. In what way did Virginia show herself the boldest of all the colonies? 12. What was done in the Virginia convention of 1776? 13. Under what circumstances did Congress appoint a committee to draw up a Declaration of Independence? 14. Give a sketch of Thomas Jefferson (note). 15. Which was the first and which the second colony to become a State? 16. When and where was the Declaration of Independence signed?

CHAPTER XXIII.

DEFENCE OF CHARLESTON.—BATTLES AROUND NEW YORK.

Defence of Charleston, 1776.—The English fleet expected in New York went instead to South Carolina. Great efforts



MAP OF CHARLESTON.

were made to put Charleston in a state of defence. Two regiments came from North Carolina and one from Virginia to assist in repelling the attack. Charleston harbor is shut in by sandbars and islands. On Sullivan's Island, there was an unfinished fort of palmetto logs and sand-bags.

Attack by the British, 1776.—

On June 27th the British ships opened a fierce cannonade on the fort, but the balls buried themselves in the spongy palmetto and did little damage. The vessels, on the other hand, suffered much from the American guns, and several of them which ran aground had to be abandoned. The British captains, therefore, weighed anchor and sailed away northward. The little fort was called Moultrie after its gallant commander.¹

¹ While the battle was fiercest the American flag was shot down and fell outside of the fort. Sergeant Jasper sprung outside, seized the flag, and, in spite of the hot fire from the enemy, carried it back to the fort, bound it on a new staff, and planted it again on the rampart. For his gallant conduct he received the thanks of Governor Rutledge. He afterwards declined a lieutenant's commission, which was offered him for this daring deed.

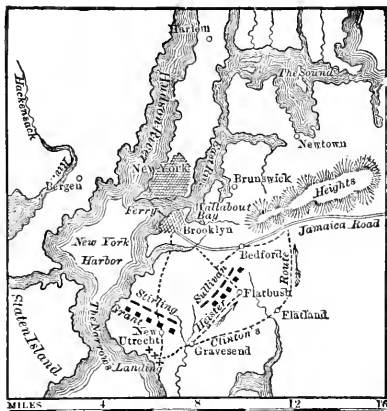
Results of the Victory.—By the successful resistance at Charleston, the Carolinas and Georgia were freed from attack for nearly two years.

The Forces Around New York.—Clinton sailed from Charleston to New York. Anticipating an attack there, General Washington had sent General Charles Lee to fortify that city. Strong works were thrown up on Brooklyn Heights and other defences prepared, extending nearly twenty miles. To hold these, Washington had only 10,600 men for duty out of a nominal roll of 26,000. On Staten Island, at the mouth of the harbor, were 31,600 finely-equipped men, under command of General William Howe. Six thousand of these were Hessian troops hired by King George, and 24,400 of them were equal to any soldiers in the world.



RUTLEDGE.

Battle of Long Island or Flatbush.—General Howe, on August 23d, advanced against Brooklyn Heights with 20,000



PLAN OF BATTLE OF LONG ISLAND.

men and forty cannon. There were only 8,000 men, mostly raw militia to oppose them. Led by Tories on Long Island, Howe surrounded General Sullivan's command. A number of them were killed, and 1,000 captured with their general. Howe then prepared to besiege the Heights.

Washington Withdraws to Harlem and White Plains.—In the face of the enemy, Washington withdrew his army from Long Island on the night of August 29th, without the movement being detected. He himself crossed in the last boat, having been forty-

eight hours in the saddle. In a few days Howe also crossed East River and occupied the city of New York. For awhile Washington held a strong position at Harlem, but when the British ships passed the obstructions placed in the Hudson River, he left Manhattan Island, burnt the bridge behind him and withdrew to a fortified camp at White Plains.

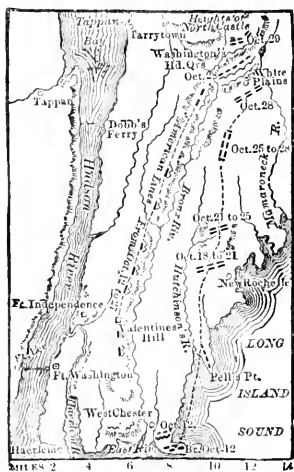
Fort Washington Surrendered.—In falling back, Washington left a large garrison at Fort Mifflin lower down the Hudson. The British captured the fort with 3,000 soldiers, on November 23d. In consequence of this, Washington was obliged to move into New Jersey, and, before long, to cross the Delaware into Pennsylvania, just above Trenton.

Disobedience of General Charles Lee.—General Charles Lee, who had been left on the east side of the Hudson with 7,000 men, was now ordered to join Washington. Instead of doing so, he busied himself in criticising that general to Congress, in the hope of superseding him as commander-in-chief. When he did

move, he went to Morristown, where he was captured by some British dragoons.

Congress Removes to Baltimore, 1776.—Alarmed at Washington's retreat into Pennsylvania, Congress withdrew from Philadelphia to Baltimore, first giving Washington "power to order and direct all things" necessary for the war. By this authority three battalions of artillery were enlisted, an increase of pay promised, and ten dollars to each soldier who would serve six weeks longer than the time of his enlistment.

¹ During the darkest hours of this campaign, Washington declared that if men and means failed elsewhere, he would "retire to the mountains of West Augusta, and from there, if need be, cross the Alleghanies to secure independence."



OPERATIONS ABOUT NEW YORK.

Battle of Trenton.—To strike a blow at the enemy before his army was too much weakened by the returning home of his men Washington crossed the Delaware River, which was full of floating ice, on Christmas night, marched nine miles through a driving snow, and attacked the British at Trenton. The ice in the river and the difficulty of the march prevented all the troops from getting up in time; but notwithstanding this and the fact that the intense cold froze one man to death and benumbed many others, the expedition was a great success. The British were entirely surprised, twenty Hessians were killed and nearly 1,000 captured, with an American loss of two men and two officers killed, and one man frozen.



BATTLE OF TRENTON.

QUESTIONS.—1. What defence was made at Charleston, in South Carolina, in 1776? 2. Tell of the attack by the British, and of Moultrie's defence. 3. What is the story of Sergeant Jasper? 4. What was the result of the victory? 5. What forces now gathered at New York? 6. Describe the battle of Long Island. 7. To what point did General Washington first withdraw? 8. Why did he leave Manhattan Island? 9. Where was the next battle fought? 10. What forced Washington to cross the Delaware into Pennsylvania? 11. What can you tell of General Charles Lee's disobedience? 12. Why did Congress leave Philadelphia? 13. Where did it go? 14. Tell of the recrossing of the Delaware and of the battle of Trenton. 15. What was Washington's determination (note)? 16. Have you found all the places on the map?

CHAPTER XXIV.

BATTLE OF PRINCETON—BATTLES NEAR PHILADELPHIA—BURGOYNE'S CAMPAIGN AND SURRENDER.

Battle of Princeton, 1777.—In a few days after Washington's success at Trenton, Cornwallis came against him there with

7,000 men. There were less than 4,000 Americans, and ice in the Delaware prevented their receiving reinforcements or retreating. Lord Cornwallis thought that this time he would surely "bag the fox." Instead of this, the fox slipped away. In the night of January 3d Washington, passing round the British flank, attacked and defeated the rear of the army with a loss of thirty men, the gallant General Mercer among them. Five hundred of the British were killed, wounded or captured. Washington then went into winters quarters at Morristown, New Jersey, where he could threaten his enemy's communications. Cornwallis, therefore, fell back to Amboy, and both armies took a rest.¹

Dwindling of Washington's Army.—In the meantime the forces at Morristown were rapidly decreasing, and the re-enlistments and coming in of new troops were painfully slow. Washington was not strong enough to change his place until late in May, when he moved to Middlebrook.

Effort to Seize the Hudson.—The British from Canada aided by Hessians and Indians, now made another effort to take possession of the Hudson River. Washington apprehended this, and advised General Schuyler to examine the country thoroughly and fortify all points where he could impede the enemy's advance. He also sent him 500 mounted Virginia riflemen under General Morgan, and other troops under General Arnold.

Howe in the Chesapeake.—While Washington was watching his enemies at Middlebrook, General Howe embarked his army at New York and sailed away southward. The entrance to the Delaware being strongly defended, Howe entered the capes of Virginia and proceeded slowly up to the head of the Chesapeake Bay. Learning where to expect the British, Washington moved forward to meet them.

¹ In 1776 Silas Deane, of Connecticut, was sent to France as a commissioner to procure aid for the United States. Dr. Franklin and Arthur Lee, of Virginia, then acting as commissioner in England, were now sent to join Deane. These commissioners were, if possible, to obtain recognition and alliance with France. For some time they had little success. Still, secret aid was given, and a quantity of arms and powder was brought to America in an armed vessel. Money was also advanced, for which the commissioners promised to furnish tobacco and other produce.

Battles of Brandywine and Germantown, 1777.—As the American army marched through Philadelphia the only approach to any uniform, was a sprig of green stuck in each soldier's hat. To pacify the fault-finding of Congress, it was now determined to risk a battle for the defence of Philadelphia. On September 11th the armies came together on the banks of Brandywine Creek. The well-equipped British army was 3,000 stronger than the poorly provided Americans. Both sides fought bravely, but the British, by a flank movement, crossed the stream higher up, attacked the Americans in the rear, and drove them all along the line. Pursuit was soon checked, and the Americans retired in good order to Chester. The American loss was 1,000, that of the British 579. Washington withdrew through Philadelphia to Germantown, where he was again defeated in October. Howe took possession of Philadelphia. The forts on the Delaware were captured, with a British loss of 400 Hessians, and the river was opened to the enemy's ships.¹

Burgoyne Advances from Canada.—

General Burgoyne advanced from Canada, by way of Lake Champlain and the valley of the Hudson, against General Schuyler with nearly 8,000 well-equipped soldiers, 400 Indians, and a fine supply of brass cannon. Seventeen hundred men under Colonel St. Leger were to move farther to the west, capture Fort Schuyler, and sweep through the Mohawk Valley to join Burgoyne. By July 5th Burgoyne occupied Ticonderoga, and later in the month proceeded to Fort Edward. From that point his march was surrounded with



BURGOYNE'S ROUTE.

¹ By this time a number of soldiers from Europe, who were ardent lovers of freedom, had made their way into the States. Count Pulaski, from Poland; Baron DeKalb, from Germany, and the Marquis Gilbert Motier de Lafayette, a rich French nobleman only twenty years old, joined Washington during this march. Major Henry Lee, of Virginia, also brought his cavalry corps, which became so efficient, and from which he received the title of "Light Horse Harry."

difficulties. The country was wild and rugged, the roads had been blocked up by General Schuyler, and the bridges destroyed; trees were lying everywhere, and in places the dry lands were flooded, so that advance was almost impossible. All supplies had been carried from the region, and the British had to subsist on what provisions they carried with them, and they had not animals enough to haul their artillery and their food.

Battles of Oriskany and Bennington, 1777.—Two serious disasters also increased his embarrassment. St. Leger was attacked by 800 militia at Oriskany, and suffered severe loss, and afterwards failed in his attack on Fort Schuyler, from which he retreated in haste on August 22d before 800 men, under Arnold, sent to relieve the fort. General Burgoyne sent Colonel Baum, with 1,340 British and Hessians, to Bennington, in Vermont, to seize the stores there and to scour the country for horses and cattle. General John Stark, with 1,400 militia, attacked the British in front, flank and rear. He led the main attack himself, saying to his troops: "Now, men, there are the red-coats. Before night they must be ours, or Molly Stark will be a widow." The Americans then drove Indians, Tories, British and Germans before them, and captured their guns. Baum was mortally wounded, 207 of his men were killed, 700 captured, and all his artillery, 1,000 stand of small arms and most of his baggage fell into Stark's hands. The Americans had forty men killed and forty-two wounded. These defeats added greatly to Burgoyne's difficulties, as he could neither advance nor retreat without attack from the Americans, who were daily receiving reinforcements.¹

Schuyler Superseded by Gates.—At this very time, when General Schuyler's labors seemed about to be crowned with

¹ The brutal murder of Miss Jane McCrae by some Indians added to Burgoyne's troubles. Miss McCrae was staying with Mrs. O'Neil at Fort Edward, when some Indians seized the two ladies and carried them off in different directions. The young girl's betrothed lover was an officer in the British camp, and she promised her captors a large reward if they would carry her there safely. As they went the Indians began to quarrel, and one of them slew the poor girl and carried her scalp to Burgoyne's camp, where it was recognized. The massacre of this innocent girl stirred up lively feelings of revenge among the Americans, and many who had been neutral now joined the patriot ranks.

victory, he was ordered by Congress to turn his command over to General Gates, and answer to a charge that he had neglected to defend Fort Ticonderoga. Congress furnished the new commander with what had been withheld from Schuyler, and the ability of Arnold, Morgan and Lincoln partly remedied his inefficiency.

Battles Near Saratoga.—On September 19th there was a bloody fight between the two armies. Arnold and Morgan would have gained a complete victory if properly supported. But Gates, instead of reinforcing Arnold, put him under arrest and made no mention of him in his dispatches. Both sides claimed the victory, and then waited for reinforcements. Two thousand New England men joined Gates. Burgoyne waited in vain for Sir Henry Clinton and his army from New York. They did not come, and as his forces were suffering for want of food and forage, and growing less by desertion, Burgoyne made an unsuccessful effort, on October 7th, to break through the American lines. The fighting was very hot. Morgan and Arnold again played an important part in the engagement, which continued until nightfall. The British were defeated with the loss of 700 men, several officers, and all their artillery.

Burgoyne Surrenders.—The British army fell back to Saratoga in the night, and ten days afterward General Burgoyne surrendered his whole force of 5,500 men with cannon, small arms, clothing and tents. The victory encouraged the Americans greatly and aroused much respect for them in Europe.

QUESTIONS.—1. Describe the battle of Princeton. 2. When did Washington go into winter quarters? 3. Who were sent to France as commissioners, and for what purpose (note)? 4. What was the condition of Washington's army? 5. What effort did the British now make? 6. What steps did Washington take to defeat it? 7. What move did General Howe make? 8. Describe the battles of Brandywine and Germantown. 9. What three noted foreign officers now joined the Americans (note)? 10. Who brought a legion of Light Horse from Virginia (note)? 11. Who commanded the British advance from Canada? 12. What successes did he meet with? 13. What difficulties did he encounter? 14. Describe the battle of Oriskany. 15. The battle of Bennington. 16. Tell of the murder of Miss Mc-

Crae (note). 17. What change was made by Congress in the army? 18. Tell of the battles near Saratoga. 19. What became of General Burgoyne, and what was the effect of the American victories in Europe and America? 20. In what year did these battles occur? 21. Find all the places mentioned on the map.

CHAPTER XXV.

VALLEY FORGE, MONMOUTH, WYOMING, FRENCH FLEET—CHEROKEE WAR IN THE SOUTH.

Conspiracy Against Washington.—Gates's success at Saratoga brought danger to the country and wrong to General Washington. Gates was a poor soldier, and had a jealous, vain and arrogant disposition. He had supplanted Schuyler, and now hoped to supersede Washington himself. The Congressmen from New England who were unfriendly to Washington; the Pennsylvanians, who complained that their State had not been properly defended, and a number of disappointed officers, set about a scheme to put him in Washington's place. The undertaking was known as the "Conway Cabal" from an Irish general who took prominent part in it.

Sufferings at Valley Forge, 1777-'78.—After the battle of Germantown, Washington put his army into winter quarters at Valley Forge, about twenty miles from Philadelphia, where they suffered incredible hardships. The men had no tents, no blankets. They were barefooted, half-naked and nearly starved, and until they built rude huts were without shelter from the cold and the snow. We must wonder how the soldiers bore such privations and their commander endured the responsibility and anxiety of the winter. The treachery and dissatisfaction which produced the Conway conspiracy added to his anxieties.

Inefficiency of Congress.—These troubles arose mainly from the inefficiency of Congress. Many of the wisest statesmen had left the Congress to organize the governments in their own States; some were in Europe, some with the army, and some of those still remaining in Congress yielded to sectional prejudice

and countenanced unworthy schemes. Even John Adams wrote: "I am sick of Fabian systems." Gouverneur Morris, of New York, wrote at the time: "The Continental Congress and the currency have greatly depreciated." People would not take the paper money, and supplies could not be carried to the army for want of money to pay for their hauling.

Washington at Valley Forge.¹—Washington and his friends exposed and defeated the designs of Gates and his party, and won the best men in the country to his support. He persuaded General Greene to become the quartermaster-general, and the army was better provided for and affairs improved. The army was also drilled and disciplined and rendered more effective by Baron Steuben, from Prussia.

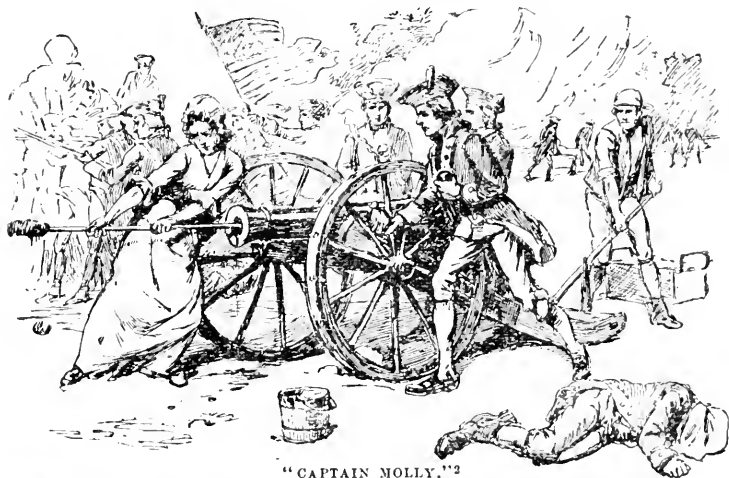
Recognition by France, 1778.—After Burgoyne's defeat, there was some movement in England towards a reconciliation with the colonies, and France, to prevent this, recognized the United States of America as an independent nation on the 6th of February, 1778. A treaty of friendship and alliance was signed in Paris and ratified by Congress.

The British Evacuate Philadelphia.—The fear of being blockaded by the French fleet, forced the British to evacuate Philadelphia. Sir William Howe was replaced by Sir Henry Clinton, who moved the army from the city on June 18th.

Battle of Monmouth Court House, June 28th, 1778.—In anticipation of such a move the New Jersey troops had been sent to defend their homes, and now Morgan was dispatched to their aid with a picked corps. The whole army followed, and General Charles Lee, who commanded the advance, was ordered to attack Clinton. He did not choose to obey Washington, and, after a feeble attack, ordered his men to retreat. Washington came to push the attack and was met by Lee's men falling back. Greatly angered at this, the commander-in-chief rode forward

¹ Mrs. Washington and other ladies came to Valley Forge and shared the privations of their husbands. Washington's headquarters were at one Isaac Potts's. One day Potts heard a man talking very earnestly in the bushes. Creeping up to see who was speaking, he saw General Washington on his knees, and heard him pray earnestly for the success of the American cause. Potts was much impressed, and told his wife that the Lord would surely answer Washington's prayer.

and sternly demanded why they were withdrawn. Lee answered disrespectfully, and Washington reprimanded him for disobeying orders. But there was no time for words.¹ Lord Stirling and General Lafayette and the artillery assisted Washington in checking the retreat. The battle was renewed and continued until nightfall. The British then retreated and the Americans slept on the field. This fight at Monmouth Courthouse was the last sustained battle in the Northern States. Washington now took his army again to White Plains in New York.



Massacre at Wyoming.—In July the New York Indians and Tories under command of Brandt, an Indian chief, carried fire and sword into the peaceful Wyoming Valley in Pennsylvania. Five thousand helpless people were driven from their homes and many, many others tortured and massacred. When a force was sent against them the murderers fled back to New York, where Brandt made a similar raid into Cherry Valley.

¹General Lee was tried by court-martial, was found guilty and relieved from command for a year. He then became so insolent that he was dismissed from the army.

²At the battle of Monmouth Molly Pitcher, who was bringing water to the soldiers, saw her husband shot down and immediately took his place at the gun. The soldiers afterwards called her "Captain Molly," and she was given a sergeant's warrant and half-pay for life by Congress.

Destruction of the Six Nations.—General Sullivan was sent into western New York the next summer (1779) with 3,000 men to punish these outrages. He routed the armies of Indians and Tories and devastated the Indian country so that the power of the Six Nations was completely broken.

Coming of the French Fleet.—Count D'Estaing in July, 1778, brought eighteen French war vessels with 4,000 soldiers on board to assist the Americans. It was decided to attack the British at Rhode Island. The encounter was prevented by a severe storm, which injured both fleets so much that they sailed away for repairs, Lord Howe to New York, and Count D'Estaing to Boston, and subsequently to the West Indies.

British Outrages.—The English naval officers now committed many ravages along the coast of New Jersey, Massachusetts and Connecticut, burning and destroying towns, manufactories and supplies. Special vengeance was inflicted on places which had sheltered American privateers.

Fall of Savannah.—Part of the British force at New York was sent to make an attack on Georgia, where they soon took possession of Savannah. Washington sent General Lincoln to command the Southern department and oppose them, while his own army went into winter quarters in the highlands of New Jersey.

Indian Warfare in the South.—While their brethren along the sea-coast fought with English regulars the frontiersmen in the South were forced to contend for life and freedom with the Indians and Tories who joined the red men.

Cherokee Outbreak, 1776.—In the summer of 1776 the Cherokees waged a sudden and cruel war along the borders of Georgia and the Carolinas as far as the Watauga settlements.

Attack on Watauga.—An Indian squaw warned the Watauga settlers that 700 Cherokee warriors were coming against them, and gave them time to take refuge within their forts. Those whites who did not reach the forts were tortured and slain without mercy. In a battle on the Island Flats of the Holston River the savages were put to flight. Another band of Cherokees, at

the same time, besieged the Watauga fort, where the women and children were successfully defended for three weeks by fifty men under Robertson and Sevier, although there was nothing in the fort to eat but parched corn.

The Cherokees Defeated—Peace.—The frontiersmen now determined to avenge their wrongs and to punish the Indians. The South Carolina and Georgia militia, under Andrew Williamson, together with Rutherford's North Carolinians, attacked and destroyed first the lower Cherokee towns, and then their settlements across the mountains, so successfully that the southern Cherokees were broken up and forced to take refuge among the Creeks. The Virginians from Fincastle county, assisted by men from North Carolina and from Watauga settlement, under Colonel William Christian, prepared to attack the northern or Over-Hill Cherokees, with 2,000 men. The Indian warriors collected on the French Broad, but could not face so formidable an army, and fled in the night. The Virginians pursued them, and destroyed their towns and provisions. The next season the Cherokees made treaties of peace, by which the States gained considerably.

QUESTIONS.—1. What sort of a soldier was General Gates? 2. What conspiracy was formed against General Washington? 3. Describe the sufferings of the army at Valley Forge. 4. What was the state of Congress at this time? 5. What was done to improve the condition of the army? 6. Tell the story of Isaac Potts (note). 7. When did France recognize the independence of the United States? 8. What effect did this have upon the British in Philadelphia? 9. Tell of the battle of Monmouth Courthouse. 10. What became of General Charles Lee (note)? 11. Who committed the massacre at Wyoming, and when? 12. How was the outrage avenged? 13. What assistance now came to the Americans? 14. What ravages were now committed by British sea captains? 15. Tell of the movements of French and English forces and of the fall of Savannah. 16. Tell of the Cherokee outbreak in 1776. 17. Describe the battle on the Holston River and the attack on the Watauga fort. 18. How and by whom were the Cherokees finally defeated and peace made? 19. Find the places as you come to them.

CHAPTER XXVI.

CLARKE'S TAKING OF THE NORTHWEST.

Immigration to Kentucky.—Although the journey thither was difficult, and the danger from Indians great, a continual stream of immigration poured into Kentucky, chiefly from Virginia. These sturdy, self-reliant pioneers desired to provide for their children not only homes in the lofty forests and fertile prairies, but also the blessings of freedom, and a secure, independent government.

Kentucky County Organized, 1776.—In 1776 Gabriel Jones and George Rogers Clarke were sent by the Kentucky settlers to tell the Virginia Convention at Williamsburg that they needed a local government, and to ask that the country west of the mountains might be separated from Fincastle county, and made the county of Kentucky with its own courts and county officers. The convention had adjourned before Jones and Clarke reached Botetourt county. Jones then joined Colonel Christian's expedition against the Cherokees, but Clarke went to see Governor Henry, to get powder for the Kentuckians to defend themselves against the Indians, who were incited by British agents to destroy them. He persuaded Henry to advise the council of Virginia to furnish him with five hundred pounds of powder. They did so by giving Clarke an order on the commander of Fort Pitt to provide him with the powder, to be taken down the Ohio River to Kentucky. In the fall the legislature created the county of Kentucky and gave it a regular government.



CLARKE.

Clarke Plans to Take the Northwest.—Clarke was convinced that the Indian attacks from the north side of the Ohio were abetted, if not instigated, by British agents. He, therefore, considered that if the British forts in the Northwest could

be captured the British influence would be destroyed. When the invasion from Canada was brought to an unsuccessful end by the defeat of Burgoyne, Clarke thought his plan might be practicable. He returned to Virginia and laid the project before Governor Henry, and three other leading men—Thomas Jefferson, George Wythe and George Mason. The idea pleased them much, and the governor gave Clarke authority to raise 350 men for the purpose of capturing the forts.

Clarke's Expedition Down the Ohio, 1778.—By the spring of 1778 Clarke had only collected 150 men for his enterprise. With these and a number of emigrants with their families and worldly goods, he set out down the Ohio River. When they reached the falls of the river, Clarke, for the first time, told his men the object of the expedition. Some of them refused to go farther, but their places were supplied by bold Kentuckians, who eagerly took part in the enterprise. At the mouth of the Tennessee River they met some hunters who had just returned from the forts. These hunters joined the expedition, and greatly assisted it by telling Clarke that the French inhabitants of the country were so much afraid of the backwoodsmen that they would assist the English, unless he took them by surprise.

Capture of Fort Kaskaskia, 1778.—Guided by the hunters, Clarke's force now plunged into the wilderness. By July 4th the neighborhood of Fort Kaskaskia, in Illinois, was reached. A ball was going on in the fort. Entrance to it was gained by means of a captured soldier, who led the Americans through a postern gate, and, in a few moments, fort, garrison and commander, all fell into Clarke's hands without any blood being spilt. The French inhabitants of the town and country made friends with the Americans and took the oath of allegiance to the States as soon as they heard that the French king had become their ally. They even assisted Clarke to capture Cahokia. Father Gibault, a French priest, then went to Vincennes and persuaded the people there to hoist the flag of the Continental government. The Indians, for many leagues round, hearing of the success of the "Long-Knives," came to Kaskaskia, promising friendship and peace.

The British Occupy Vincennes.—The principal British post was at Detroit, and all the others were regulated from it. When Hamilton, the commander at Detroit, heard of Clarke's captures, he determined to reconquer the country. With 500 whites and Indians he repaired to Vincennes and occupied the fort which had no garrison. The French residents submitted to King George as readily as they had done to Congress. Clarke made the desperate resolve to recapture Vincennes. He had only 100 men, and Hamilton never imagined that such a handful would march in midwinter over a country half under water and attack him. He therefore kept in the fort only ninety whites and as many Indians, and let his other troops go home.

Clarke's March to Vincennes, 1779.—When Clarke learned that the garrison was thus reduced, he decided to march at once



CLARKE'S MARCH TO VINCENNES.

on Vincennes. He sent a little vessel up the Wabash with a few small guns and fifty men. With 130 others he began a desperate march of

250 miles, across a wilderness full of swollen streams. The men waded for days through the swamps, where the water was sometimes up to their chins. Their provisions gave out, and they could do no hunting. The bateau did not come, but they kept bravely on. Two canoes, which they found, and some rafts which they built saved many of them from perishing with exhaustion. One of the men kept a diary. In it are the words: "Colonel Clarke encouraged his men, which gave them great spirit. Marched on in the waters. No provisions yet. Lord, help us."

Capture of the Fort.—On the afternoon of February 23rd they came within hearing of the guns at Vincennes. The garrison did not know an enemy was anywhere near until a soldier was shot through one of the port holes. They were completely surprised, and surrendered the fort on the next day, February 24th, after being fired on for twenty-four hours.

Illinois County Created.—The greater part of the prisoners were released on parole, but Hamilton and the other officers were sent to Governor Henry, in Virginia. The country captured from the British by Clarke was at once organized into the county of Illinois, with a government like that of the other Virginia counties, and continued a part of that State until she gave it to the general government. Clarke's conquest of the Northwest, and Virginia's government of it, induced the English to give up the region to the United States at the close of the Revolutionary War.¹

QUESTIONS.—1. What can you tell of the emigration to Kentucky? 2. Who came to Virginia in 1776 to arrange for organizing it into a separate county? 3. Who was governor of Virginia at this time, and what was Clarke's request? 4. What assistance was given him? 5. What was Clarke's plan to conquer the Northwest, and who encouraged him? 6. Tell of his expedition down the Ohio in 1778. 7. Describe the capture of Fort Kaskaskia, and the conduct of the French and Indians. 8. What move was then made by the British under Hamilton, and what was Clarke's resolve? 9. Tell of Clarke's march to Vincennes in 1779. 10. How and when was the fort captured? 11. Into what was the captured country organized? 12. Tell of Clarke's later life (note). 13. Find on the map all places mentioned.

CHAPTER XXVII.

STONY POINT—WAR IN THE SOUTH—ARNOLD'S TREACHERY.

British Raids Along the Coast, 1779.—In the summer of 1779 the British again ravaged the coasts from Connecticut down into the Chesapeake Bay.

¹ Clarke fought after this in Virginia, and again in the west, and was made a brigadier-general. He died in 1818, in Kentucky, with which State he had identified himself.

Stony Point, 1779.—Expecting that another attempt would be made to seize the Hudson River, General Washington built fortifications for its defence at West Point, at Verplanck's Point and at Stony Point. Before the latter fort was completed it was taken by the British, who made it very strong. Much annoyed at this, Washington proposed to General Wayne—"Mad Anthony," as he was called from his daring rashness—to surprise and retake Stony Point in the night. Wayne set out for the congenial enterprise with less than 200 picked men, and reached the fort about nightfall. The dogs in the neighborhood had been killed, lest their barking should alarm the garrison. The men advanced with their bayonets fixed and their guns unloaded, that no accidental shot might awaken the sleepers. A negro who knew the fort guided them in. After a little sharp resistance the Americans scaled the walls and captured the fort at the point of the bayonet, and the garrison surrendered at discretion. Out of the twenty-two men forming the "forlorn hope" which led the assault, seventeen were killed or wounded. The whole American loss was ninety-eight; that of the British 606. Washington had not men enough to hold Stony Point, so the guns and stores were removed and the defences destroyed.

Unsuccessful Siege of Savannah, 1779.—In the fall of this year Count D'Estaing was persuaded to assist with his fleet an attempt of General Lincoln to drive the British from Savannah. The attack was unsuccessful. Both sides lost heavily, D'Estaing was wounded, and Count Pulaski slain. The Americans withdrew to Charleston, and the French sailed away. When Washington heard of this reverse he sent the North Carolina and Virginia troops to defend the south, and put the small army left him into winter quarters at Morristown.

Sufferings of the Soldiers.—The army fared even harder than at Valley Forge. There was no food for the soldiers except what could be taken from the surrounding country, and that was almost exhausted. The Continental money became daily more worthless. Forty dollars would not buy one dol-

lar's worth. Congress would do nothing to relieve the difficulties. The Pennsylvania authorities quarrelled with General Arnold, who commanded in Philadelphia, and everything seemed at cross purposes¹.

Affairs in Philadelphia.—There was reason for the complaints against Arnold, for while the army was starving, there was luxury and feasting in Philadelphia, and the speculators were growing rich. Arnold married Miss Shippen during the winter, and lived very expensively.

Capture of Charleston, 1780.—The main efforts of the British were now directed against the Southern States. In January Sir Henry Clinton sailed for South Carolina and moved against Charleston. The city was held by General Lincoln, with 2,000 Continentals and 1,000 North Carolina militia. The British ships crossed the bar at high tide, and passed Fort Moultrie in spite of its guns. Lincoln was reinforced by 700 Virginians, who had marched 500 miles in thirty days, but Clinton received 2,500 additional troops, and invested the city on all sides. His cavalry also cut Lincoln's communications and broke up the militia posts north of it. Under these circumstances a longer defence of Charleston was impossible, and on May 12th General Lincoln surrendered it. There were 2,000 Continental soldiers, but the British claimed 5,618 prisoners, which included the militia and the citizens.

Trying Time for America.—The American cause had never seemed so hopeless as now. The money troubles grew worse daily. Washington's troops from Connecticut and New Jersey openly threatened to go home unless they were better paid and provided for. Private aid was sent them, and some Philadelphia ladies raised seven or eight thousand dollars for General Washington to lay out for his men. Washington again tried to rouse Congress to do something for the relief of the army, but they were as inefficient as ever, and, without consulting the

¹The principal comfort Washington had during these days of gloom was in the return of Lafayette from a visit to France, especially as the Marquis brought the good news that another French fleet and soldiers, under Count Rochambeau, were coming to help the Americans.

commander-in-chief, sent General Gates to take command of the Southern department. The only gleam of light was the arrival at New York on July 10, 1780, of a fine French fleet with Count Rochambeau and his forces. They were all under Washington's command and added much to his strength. He was still, however, unable to attack New York on account of his own weakness and the arrival of a British fleet.

Disaster at Waxhaws in South Carolina, 1780.—Severe disasters in South Carolina added to the American troubles. A patriot force under Colonel Buford was severely defeated on the banks of the Waxhaws on May 29th. Tarleton and Ferguson, the British cavalry leaders, were cruel, unscrupulous men, who encouraged their troops to savage deeds. The men who surrendered in the fight were cut to pieces by Tarleton's butchers. One hundred and thirteen were killed on the spot, and one hundred and fifty were brutally mangled and mortally wounded. One hundred escaped with their commanders, Buford and Colonel William Washington. The British lost only five killed and fifteen wounded.



HENRY LEE.



MARION.

Sumter, Marion, Pickens, Clarke, "Light Horse Harry" Lee.—Sir Henry Clinton thought he had conquered South Carolina, and issued a proclamation calling on the people to resume their allegiance to King George. The great majority of the population, however, remained true to the American cause. Partisan

bands of soldiers, under Sumter, Marion, Pickens, Clarke, and others kept up an irregular warfare, attacking every detached post or small body of British troops.¹ Carolina was by no means conquered.

¹ Francis Marion, as bold in attack and as swift in movement as Tarleton, knew the country so well that he disappeared as suddenly as he came. Tarleton's troopers called him the "Swamp Fox," because he and his men hid so skillfully in the swamps when hard pressed. Sumter was known as the "Game Cock," from

Treachery of Benedict Arnold.—You have seen how gallant and efficient Benedict Arnold had been in many battles, and how he had become extravagant in Philadelphia, and had been blamed by the Pennsylvania legislature. This made him very angry, and he determined to turn traitor to his country to revenge himself and get money to pay his debts by selling some place of importance to the British. He was greatly esteemed as a soldier, and when he asked to be given command at West Point, on the Hudson River, his request was granted at once. He then offered to surrender the fort to Sir Henry Clinton if he would pay well for it. The correspondence was carried on with Clinton's aide, Major John André. When the details of the plot were to be settled, André came up to the neighborhood of West Point in a British ship, and had an interview with Arnold. The ship did not wait for him, and he had to return to New York by land.

Capture and Execution of André.—On his journey down the river bank, André was stopped by three patriots, Paulding, Williams, and Van Wert. They searched him and found a plan of the fort and the agreement of surrender in his stockings. André tried to bribe his captors to let him go, but Paulding said they would not do it for ten thousand pounds. They gave him up to the military authorities and by General Washington's orders he was tried and hung as a spy. The unfortunate young man begged to be shot, and Sir Henry Clinton tried to procure his release, but the British had hung Captain Nathan Hale of the American army in 1776, and it was thought right that André should be treated in the same way. He met his fate bravely, admired and lamented by both his enemies and his friends. Arnold escaped to the British, who paid him a large sum of money, and made him a general. No one, however, ever re-

the bold openness of his dashing fights. Sumter's men were poorly armed with swords made from saws, and knives fastened to poles for lances. Their bullets were supplied by melting pewter dishes; but their bold spirits made these rude weapons effective to destroy many well-armed enemies. Lieutenant-Colonel Henry Lee, with his famous Legion of Light Horse, also came to help the South Carolina patriots, and the command did gallant service against the British.

spected him again. His evil nature showed itself in ravaging and wronging his native land, and he died in obscurity, dishonored and unregretted.

QUESTIONS.—1. What raids were made by the British in 1779? 2. Tell of the fortifications on the Hudson River, and the capture of Stony Point by General Wayne. 3. Under what circumstances was the unsuccessful siege of Savannah made in 1779? 4. What noted man was killed? 5. What caused great suffering to the army at this time, and where was General Arnold? 6. What complaint was made against him in Philadelphia? 7. Who returned to America in 1780 (note)? 8. Tell of the surrender of Charleston in 1780 to Sir Henry Clinton. 9. Why could not General Lincoln hold the city? 10. Why did the American cause seem so hopeless at this time? 11. How was General Washington treated by Congress, and from what source did he receive encouragement? 12. Tell of the disaster at Waxhaws in South Carolina, and of the British officers, Tarleton and Ferguson. 13. What Southern officers now maintained a guerrilla warfare in South Carolina? 14. Describe their mode of fighting (note). 15. Tell the story of Benedict Arnold's treachery. 16. Who was Major André? 17. How was he captured, and why was he executed? 18. What became of Arnold? 19. Find all the places mentioned.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

KING'S MOUNTAIN, COWPENS, GUILFORD, EUTAW SPRINGS.

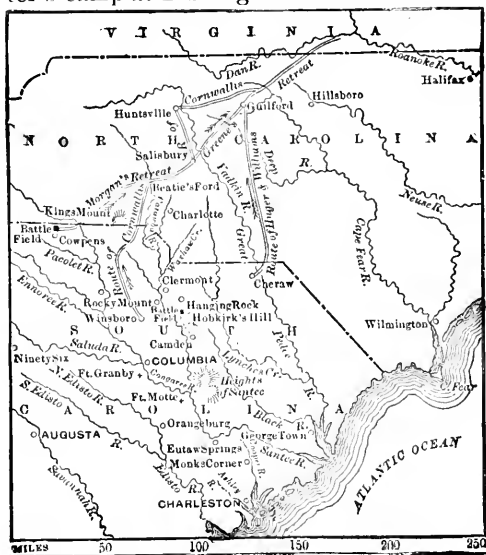
Battle of Camden, 1780.—When Gates reached South Carolina in July he found there 1,400 Maryland and Delaware soldiers, who with the Virginia and North Carolina militia made 3,000 men. Gates soon showed his inability to command. He did not know that Lord Cornwallis, who had been left in command when Clinton returned to New York, had joined Lord Rawdon and had determined to fight. The battle occurred on August 16th, near Camden. The American militia threw down their muskets and fled panic-stricken before the bayonet charge of the British regulars. The officers tried in vain to rally them. Baron DeKalb was mortally wounded and died a martyr to the cause of liberty.

Fishing Creek.—A few days later Tarleton surprised Sumter's camp at Fishing Creek. Sumter escaped half-dressed on a

barebacked horse, together with nearly 400 of his men. Three hundred and fifty were killed and wounded, and a number of prisoners and supplies taken from the British were recaptured.

Gates's Retreat.

Gates did not stop in his retreat from Camden until he reached Hillsborough, in North Carolina, where he collected 1,000 of his



BATTLEFIELDS IN THE CAROLINAS.

scattered forces. Lord Cornwallis moved after him, intending to subjugate North Carolina and Virginia as he thought he had already done South Carolina. Tarleton and his rangers were sent to scour the country west of the main army, while Ferguson, with 1,200 men, went nearer to the mountains to rouse the Tories and subdue the rebels. Two hundred mounted riflemen from Watauga and Holston had come under Isaac Shelby to help their countrymen in western North Carolina. After the defeat at Camden they returned home. Ferguson now sent word to Shelby that he was coming to destroy the settlements and kill their leaders.

Rendezvous at Watauga Sycamore Shoals.—The men of Watauga and Holston did not wait for Ferguson, but determined to fight him before he could reach their valleys. They sent messengers in hot haste praying Colonel Campbell, from Washington county, Virginia, to join them at the Watauga Syc-

more Shoals. Here assembled, on September 25th, 400 Virginians, under Colonel Campbell; 240 from Watauga, under Sevier; 240 from Holston, under Shelby; and 160 North Carolina refugees, under Colonel McDowell. The "pioneer parson," Samuel Doak, blessed them and bade them "go forth with the sword of the Lord and of Gideon." Once over the mountains, numbers of North Carolinians joined them until there were 1,840 men. They were mostly well mounted and were armed with scalping knives, small-bore rifles and tomahawks. Colonel Campbell, who had brought the largest number of men, commanded the whole force.

Advance on Ferguson.—When Ferguson heard of the advance against him he withdrew to King's Mountain where he stationed himself, boasting that "all the rebels in hell" could not drive him from it. The mountaineer warriors became afraid that Ferguson might escape from them, and determined to catch him. At the Cowpens, Colonel Campbell chose 910 of the best men, the best horses and rifles, and made a forced march of fifty miles in eighteen hours, through darkness, mud and rain. Fifty riflemen on foot kept up with the horsemen. Finding where Ferguson was, Campbell surrounded the hill, and ordered an immediate attack. The horses were tied to trees, with the blankets and coats of their riders fastened on the saddles. An order was then given that each man should see that his rifle was well primed, and then go forward and fight until he died.

Battle of King's Mountain, 1780.—The advance of the Americans had been expected, but their attack came suddenly. They sheltered themselves behind the trees and poured their bullets into the British in front, flank and rear. Colonel Ferguson fell pierced with seven balls. British bayonets were stoutly used, but availed nothing and the whole force surrendered. One thousand one hundred and fifty men were killed or captured, and a large supply of arms secured. The victorious patriot army had fought on their own responsibility without orders from Congress or State. After hanging ten captured

Tories as the enemies of the country, they handed over the other prisoners and the spoils to the proper authorities and went quietly home.



BATTLE OF KING'S MOUNTAIN.

Effect of the Victory.—

This remarkable victory proved the turning point of the war in the South. The patriots were everywhere encouraged to new efforts. Sumter, Marion,¹ Lee, and other partisan leaders, became again active, and it required Tarleton's best efforts to resist them.

Tarleton Defeated at Blackstocks.—Tarleton was ordered to leave Marion, and go and destroy Sumter. A fierce fight took place between him and the "Game Cock", at Blackstocks, on November 20th, in which Tarleton was forced to retreat, leaving his wounded behind. The renewal of resistance in South Carolina forced Cornwallis to abandon his march northward and return to the State.

General Greene Takes Command in the South, 1780.—Congress ordered Gates from the field after his defeat at Camden, and requested General Washington to appoint his succes-

¹ It is said that on one occasion a British officer who had come into Marion's camp under a flag of truce, was invited to dine with that general. At dinner time some roasted sweet potatoes were served on a shingle. "General," inquired the astonished Englishman, "is this your usual fare?" "Indeed, it is," answered Marion, "only we have more than usual to-day in honor of your company." When the officer returned to his camp he reported to his superiors that they could never conquer a country defended with such devotion.

sor. Washington, thereupon, placed General Greene in command of the Southern department. This was a wise choice, for Greene was more like the commander-in-chief than any other American general. At Charlotte, North Carolina, the new commander found a disorderly mob of 2,300 ill-fed and ill-clothed men, whom he quickly reorganized into an army, which he took to a more healthy region, where he could better



MARION'S DINNER TO THE BRITISH OFFICERS.

provide for their wants. Establishing his force near Cheraw, in the northeastern part of South Carolina, Greene sent Morgan with 1,000 men to threaten Cornwallis on the other flank. Tarleton was sent after Morgan with 1,100 choice troops. Morgan selected a good fighting ground at "The Cowpens," where his militia must fight or be killed, and awaited his enemy.

Battle of "The Cowpens," 1781.—Morgan's men thus had a good rest, while their pursuers were marching night and day.

When the British appeared Morgan took position on a small hill, where he put the Carolina militia in front, telling them to fire two volleys with good aim when the enemy was close upon them, and then to fall back. He put Howard's Maryland regulars and the Virginia riflemen behind the militia, and a third line of cavalry, out of sight, behind the crest of the hill. Morgan's skirmishers fired and fell back to the militia. These, also, fired well and fell back before the British bayonets. Howard's men at the second line fought well, but were thrown into some confusion, and were directed to fall back behind the cavalry and re-form. When the British saw them disappearing over the hill they rushed forward in disorder, thinking they had won the day. To their astonishment, Colonel Washington's dragoons met them in a tremendous charge, and soon sent them flying, panic-stricken from the field.

Results of the Battle.—In this complete victory, the Americans, with a loss of only seventy-two killed and wounded, killed 110 of their assailants, wounded 200, took 600 prisoners, two cannon, 800 muskets, 100 horses, and all their baggage. And the moral success was still greater. Instead of destroying Morgan, Tarleton's force was almost annihilated, while the victorious army moved on northward in safety. Cornwallis hurried in pursuit and Greene rode rapidly 100 miles across the country to join Morgan.

Greene's Masterly Retreat, 1781.—Cornwallis destroyed all his baggage that he might move more rapidly, but he never came close enough to Greene to attack him. The Yadkin and Dan Rivers were crossed by the Americans in actual sight of the enemy, who could not follow at once for want of boats. Cornwallis did not venture to pursue Greene into Virginia and withdrew to Hillsborough, North Carolina. Greene soon moved to Guilford Courthouse, near Greensboro, in that State. Here more soldiers joined him until he had an army of 4,243 infantry and artillery and 161 cavalry. Only 1,670 were regulars, the rest raw militia. Cornwallis had 2,400, all experienced veterans. The artillery of the armies was nearly equal.

Battle of Guilford Court-House, 1781.—The battle was joined on March 15th. Greene's militia, in the front line, fired at random and fled in terror from the British attack. The second line checked the advance of the enemy. The third line drove them back. At this moment Cornwallis hurled a shower of grape-shot into his flying grenadiers and the pursuing Americans. When his officers exclaimed that he was killing his own men, he replied: "That is true, but it will save us from destruction." To save his men from the murderous artillery fire, Greene drew them back, and on the strength of this Cornwallis claimed the victory. He, however, lost more than 500, while the American loss was small. In this battle the Virginia militia by their splendid conduct wiped out the stain which their misconduct at Camden had put upon them.

Greene Returns to South Carolina.—Cornwallis found his communications so much threatened by Lee and the partisan leaders that he was compelled to move towards Wilmington with his half-starved men. Greene returned to South Carolina to assist the patriot forces who were capturing the British posts one after another. May 23d he laid siege to Fort Ninety-Six, the most important post in upper Carolina, garrisoned by 550 men under Lieutenant-Colonel Cruger, consisting of 350 regulars, and 200 Tory militia from South Carolina under Colonel King. The approaches were made under the direction of Kosciusko, and on June 16th a parallel was completed within thirty yards of the fort; on the 17th trenches and a mine were run to within six feet of the ditch. At this critical moment information was received that Lord Rawdon was approaching with 2,000 men. It became necessary to raise the siege or take the fort by assault. The assault was made the next day and failed. Greene then withdrew his exhausted army to recruit on the hills of the Santee.¹

¹While Greene was resting, a South Carolina girl, eighteen years old, named Emily Geiger, carried a communication to General Sumter across a region full of British and Tories, where no man could have passed safely. With a message and a letter she galloped away. The Tories stopped her, but she swallowed the letter, got safely to Sumter and delivered the message, the result of which was a movement of the Americans which compelled Rawdon to abandon the up-country posts and retreat to Charleston.

Battle of Eutaw Springs, 1781.—This last battle in South Carolina was fought September 8th. Each army was about 2,300 strong. The Americans attacked and swept everything before them; even the militia fought stoutly and persistently. They thought the day was won, when they gained the enemy's camp, and fell to feasting on the good things found there. The English then attacked in their turn with much execution. Greene could not dislodge them from a brick house which sheltered their sharp-shooters, and he withdrew from their camp. The British loss was 633. That of the Americans 535, but many of their officers were killed or wounded. This battle virtually ended the war in the Carolinas, for the terminating of which Greene and his men received the thanks of Congress and the general a gold medal.

QUESTIONS.—1. Who was sent to take command in the South? 2. Tell of the battle of Camden, and of Baron De Kalb's death. 3. What disaster occurred at Fishing Creek? 4. What movements were made by General Gates and Lord Cornwallis? 5. Tell of Tarleton and Ferguson and the message sent Shelby. 6. What was the determination of the men of Watauga? 7. What forces came to their help? 8. Where did they rendezvous, and who was their commander? 9. To what place did Ferguson withdraw? 10. Describe the battle of King's Mountain, and the conduct of the patriots after it was over. 11. What story is told of a British officer's visit to General Marion (note)? 12. Where and by whom was Tarleton defeated, and to what did this force Cornwallis? 13. Who was now placed in command in the South, and what disposition did he make of his forces? 14. Describe the battle of the Cowpens, and tell who commanded on both sides. 15. What were the results of this battle? 16. Tell of General Greene's masterly retreat, and the condition of both armies. 17. Describe the battle of Guilford Courthouse. 18. What movement was now made by General Greene, and what fort did he besiege? 19. Tell of Emily Geiger's ride (note). 20. Under what circumstances was the battle of Eutaw Springs fought, and what effect did it have upon the war?

CHAPTER XXIX.

THE WAR IN VIRGINIA—SURRENDER AT YORKTOWN—CLOSE OF THE
REVOLUTIONARY WAR—JOHN PAUL JONES.

Devastation in Virginia, 1781.—The current of war now set towards Virginia. The traitor Arnold, with 1,600 men, went thither in January, 1781, to inflict as much injury and destruction as possible. In the latter part of March, General Phillips came from New York with 2,000 men to Portsmouth, and took command. He afterwards occupied Petersburg, though it was stoutly defended by 1,000 Virginia militia under Baron Steuben, where he destroyed a large quantity of tobacco, and at Osborne's, on James River, he burned a number of vessels belonging to the Virginia navy. He then advanced on Richmond, and burned 1,200 hogsheads of tobacco at Manchester.

Lafayette in Virginia.—Washington now sent Lafayette to command in Virginia. One thousand two hundred regulars from New England and New Jersey, who were sent with him, were unwilling to go and began to desert. To persuade them, Lafayette bought summer clothing for them in Baltimore at his own expense. He arrived in Richmond one day before Phillips appeared in Manchester, and was joined by Steuben's militia, so that he was able to defend Richmond. Without venturing an attack, Phillips returned to Petersburg, where he died of a fever. Cornwallis arrived there with his troops from Wilmington on May 20th, and took command. He wished to defeat Lafayette, of whom he spoke contemptuously as "a boy," before General Wayne, with 900 Pennsylvanians, could reinforce him.



LAFAYETTE.

Virginia's Part in the War.—Cornwallis had more than 6,000 well armed men, Lafayette scarcely more than half as

many, for there were no arms for more. Virginia had stripped herself in aid of her sister States, and her resources were exhausted. You have seen Morgan and his riflemen at Boston, and from that time Virginia soldiers had fought in every considerable battle at the north. When Georgia and the Carolinas were invaded Virginia moved promptly to their relief. Lee's legion and Campbell's riflemen, fighting continually to keep back the Indians along the western borders, and taking prominent part in the battle of King's Mountain, also attested the patriotism and devotion of the "Ancient Dominion." Besides this, the thousands of prisoners captured at various points in the North were now in Virginia to be fed and guarded by her. From 1776 she had kept from 6,000 to 10,000 soldiers in service, and at this very time had 2,481 men with Greene, besides 5,000 others fighting in the South. Her legislature now made an eloquent appeal to Congress, declaring that the State wanted "men, money, arms, and military stores."

Cornwallis's Raids.—Cornwallis daily increased these necessities. Being unable to force Lafayette into a fight, he now turned his attention to plundering the country. Simcoe went to the Point of Fork, at the junction of the Rivanna and James rivers, and destroyed a large supply of stores there, while Tarleton moved westward to capture the State government and



MONTICELLO, HOME OF JEFFERSON.

legislature, which, to escape the enemy, had removed its place of meeting to Charlottesville.

Tarleton's Expedition.—

Tarleton stole fine Virginia horses for his 250 men, and rode hard through the country, destroying and capturing as he went. The legislators were warned of his coming

and most of them escaped. Governor Jefferson also got away safely from his mountain home at Monticello. In this campaign

of Cornwallis's \$10,000,000 worth of property was destroyed, besides 30,000 slaves carried off. Cornwallis moved eastward to Williamsburg, and thence to Portsmouth.

Washington's Successful Manœuvres.—When Washington learned of the ravaging and destruction in Virginia, he manœuvred in so threatening a manner around New York that Sir Henry Clinton became alarmed and ordered Cornwallis to send him three regiments. He also directed him to occupy and fortify some places on the Chesapeake, where the largest war vessels would be able to protect him.

Cornwallis at Yorktown.—Cornwallis, therefore, established himself at Yorktown, and began to fortify the heights above the river. Intrenchments were also made at Gloucester Point, on the opposite shore, only a mile away.

Powerful French Fleet.—American affairs now began to look brighter. Colonel Laurens, of South Carolina, minister from Congress to Paris, had obtained a large loan of specie from France and Holland, and had persuaded the French king to send another powerful fleet and large land force to America. Washington at once planned to drive the British from the Southern States. He wrote to Lafayette to prevent Cornwallis from retreating to North Carolina, and set off for Virginia with as many men as he could safely take. His movements were so made as to produce the impression that he intended to attack Staten Island, below New York, and General Clinton did not know his real purpose until he had already



SIEGE OF YORKTOWN.

reached the Delaware River. The Northern troops were unwilling to march to relieve Virginia, and Washington borrowed silver money from Mr. Robert Morris and Count Rochambeau to pay and encourage them. When he reached the Chesapeake Bay he learned that the Comte De Grasse was already within the capes with a strong fleet and a large body of French soldiers.

General Nelson's Patriotism.—Mr. Jefferson's term as governor of Virginia expired in June. General Thomas Nelson was elected by the legislature his successor, and proved the very man for the crisis. The legislature gave him almost absolute power, and he had collected 3,200 militia for Lafayette's army, and had procured from the impoverished State provisions enough for the army during the whole campaign. This was done on his personal security, and his great fortune was all spent in supplying the needs of his country, while his family was left in poverty.

Army at Williamsburg.—Lafayette had stationed his army at Williamsburg, which prevented Cornwallis from moving southward. Washington joined him by the middle of September. In a short time 16,000 troops were assembled there—7,000 French, 5,500 Continentals, and 3,500 Virginia militia. Cornwallis found himself in great danger when he learned that De Grasse had driven off the English fleet. He made an unsuccessful effort to get north by way of Gloucester Point, and found that he was entirely cut off from escape.

Siege of Yorktown, 1781.—A regular siege was now laid to Yorktown, and when the American cannon were close enough to fire on the town, General Washington himself put the match to the first gun. Cornwallis's quarters were riddled with balls.¹

Cornwallis Surrenders, October 19, 1781.—The British army was exhausted and without provisions, and on October 19th Lord Cornwallis surrendered his soldiers to General Washington, and what ships and sailors he had to Comte De Grasse.

¹The British were greatly sheltered by Governor Nelson's house, which the American gunners were unwilling to injure. The governor, therefore, promised five guineas to the first man that would strike it. A cannon ball soon was sent crashing through the wall, and you may see the mark of it to-day.

The number of men surrendered was 7,037. Lord Cornwallis was so much mortified at his defeat that he did not appear in person to give up his sword, but sent it instead by General O'Hara. Washington, thereupon, deputed General Lincoln, who had been forced to surrender at Charleston, to receive it.

Rejoicing at the Victory.—This surrender caused universal joy throughout the States. Washington gave great praise to his army, released all soldiers who were under arrest, and had a thanksgiving service held in his camp. Congress also returned thanks to the army, and appointed a thanksgiving to God for His favor to their cause.

Real End of the War.—Cornwallis's surrender proved to be the real end of the Revolution. England was tired of the war, and a treaty of peace between England and the United States was signed at Paris, in February, 1783.

Washington's Farewell to His Army, 1783.—The last of the British left New York late in November, 1783, and the American army was disbanded shortly afterwards. Washington issued a touching farewell, addressed to the soldiers, and took leave in person of the principal officers.¹ Not one of them could speak as they pressed his hand, and many faces were bedewed with tears. On his way to Mt. Vernon, Washington stopped in Annapolis to resign his commission and settle his account with Congress. He would not receive any pay, only his actual expenses, and in them were included many special services done by others for the country, for which he had paid.

United States Navy in the Revolution.—Congress had made some effort to raise a navy, as early as 1775, but it was never strong enough to protect the American shores, and by the close of the war its vessels were all destroyed. Still some good service was done on the sea by capturing British merchant ships, and a few of the smaller armed vessels.

John Paul Jones.—John Paul Jones was the most successful captain in the naval service. After many efforts, he got

¹ Before the officers of the Continental army separated, they instituted the Society of the Cincinnati, which was to be a sort of order of knighthood, confined to officers of the Revolutionary army, and to descend only to their oldest sons.

command of a clumsy ship, poorly armed, which he called *Bonhomme Richard*, in compliment to Dr. Franklin's "Poor Richard." To protect themselves from attack, merchant vessels sailed under the "convoy" of one or more ships of war. Such a convoy was sailing out of the Baltic Sea guarded by two English ships, the *Serapis* and the *Countess of Scarborough*.

Battle Between the Serapis and the Bonhomme Richard.—Jones met the squadron with three small ships besides his own, and a fierce battle ensued. The *Serapis* had forty-four fine guns; the crazy, old *Richard* forty-two worn-out cannon, some of which burst and did great injury to her and her crew. The ships came so close together that they fired into each other's windows. Seeing the *Richard* riddled with shot, the British captain asked Jones if he would surrender. "I have just begun to fight," was the bold reply. Jones then lashed his ship to the *Serapis*, which soon struck her colors. Jones at once transferred his men to her decks, and the *Richard* in a little while sunk into the waves. The *Countess of Scarborough* was also captured, and Jones took both prizes into The Texel, in Holland, the next day. This gallant fight, which was seen from the English coast, made Jones the hero of the time.

Boundaries of the United States.—By the treaty of peace made at Paris the boundaries of the States were Canada on the north, the Mississippi River on the west, and the line of the southern limit of Georgia on the south. Between that parallel and the Gulf of Mexico the country belonged to the Spaniards, who proved troublesome neighbors for a number of years.

QUESTIONS.—1. What infamous general was sent against Virginia in 1781? 2. What injury was done there by General Phillips? 3. Whom did Washington send to command in Virginia, and what British officer succeeded General Phillips? 4. What part had Virginia taken in the war, and what was her condition now? 5. Tell of Cornwallis's raids. 6. Upon what expedition did Tarleton set out, and what noted men barely escaped capture? 7. What damage was done by Cornwallis, and to what point did he move? 8. In what way did Washington in New York help the patriot cause in Virginia? 9. At what place did Cornwallis establish himself? 10. What assistance had John Laurens secured from France?

11. Tell of Washington's move into Virginia. 12. How did General Thomas Nelson show his patriotism? 13. What prevented Cornwallis's escape? 14. Describe the siege of Yorktown and the firing on Governor Nelson's house (note). 15. When and how did Cornwallis surrender? 16. How was the news received throughout the country? 17. What put an end to the Revolution? 18. When and where was the treaty of peace signed? 19. Tell of the disbanding of the army, and of Washington's farewell address and return home. 20. What was the condition of the American navy during the war? 21. Who was John Paul Jones, and what did he do? 22. Tell the story of the battle between his ship and the *Serapis*. 23. What territory now belonged to the United States and what to Spain?

AUTHORITIES.—Bancroft's History of the United States, Vol. IV., V., VI., VII., VIII.; Hildreth's History of the United States, Vol. II., III.; Winsor's Narrative and Critical History of the United States, Vol. V. VI.; Irving's Life of Washington; Marshall's Life of Washington; Campbell's History of Virginia; Williamson's History of North Carolina; Ramsey's History of South Carolina; William Wirt Henry's Life of Patrick Henry; Rowland's Memoirs of George Mason; Roosevelt's Winning of the West; Tyler's Letters and Times of the Tylers; Hugh Blair Grigsby's Virginia Convention of 1776; Jefferson, Madison, Monroe, American Statesmen Series, Lee's Memoirs of the Southern Campaign, Fiske's History of the United States.

SUMMARY FOR REVIEWS AND ESSAYS.

CAUSES OF THE AMERICAN REVOLUTION—THE NEXT WAR.—Colonies strenuous for their rights; England wishes to tax the colonies; first cause of hostility; Two-penny Act; Patrick Henry (note); the parson's cause, 1763; writs of assistance; higher taxes; Stamp Act, 1765; Stamp Act opposed; Congress of colonies, 1765; taxation without representation; repeal of Stamp Act; committees of correspondence; an important tea party.

COLONIES IN 1760-1775.—Condition of the colonies; education; newspapers; social conditions; life among the middle classes; non-importation acts; opposition to slavery; settlements in Tennessee; counties of Botetourt and Fincastle; Daniel Boone in Kentucky, 1769; Kentucky settled, 1761; Watauga settlement, Tennessee, 1769; Robertson and Sevier (note); Conventions in Virginia, 1769 and 1774; first Continental Congress, 1774; the minute men; Indian war in Virginia, 1774; armies for defence; battle of the Great Kanawha; result of the battle; George Rogers Clarke.

OPENING OF THE REVOLUTION, 1775.—Second Virginia Convention; removal of the powder; battle of Lexington, 1775; Israel Putnam and John Stark; country rises everywhere; capture of Ticonderoga; second Continental Congress, 1775; scruples of Congress overcome; the "United Colonies"; Washington commander-in-chief; battle of Bunker Hill, 1775; intrenchment of Breed's Hill; British prepare to attack; repulse of British; Americans obliged to retreat; opinions of the battle; Washington takes command of the army; continental line; troops from Pennsylvania, Maryland, and Virginia; efforts to seize Canada, 1775; Dunmore opposed by the Virginia Assembly; Convention of 1775; Dunmore declares war on Virginia; battle of Great Bridge; the Mecklenburg Declaration, 1775; what South Carolina and Georgia did; acts of Congress.

EVENTS OF 1776.—South Carolina declares herself independent, 1776; North Carolina goes farther; bold stand of Virginia; Virginia Convention of 1776; first colonial flag, 1776; British driven from Boston; Washington's army goes to New York; Congress appoints a committee to prepare a Declaration of Independence; Thomas Jefferson (note); Virginia Bill of Rights and Constitution; Indian warfare in the South, 1776; Cherokee outbreak, 1776; attack on Watauga; the Cherokees defeated—peace; immigration to Kentucky; Kentucky county organized, 1776; defence of Charleston, 1776; attack by the British, 1776; Sergeant Jasper (note); results of the victory; the forces around New York; battle of Long Island; Washington withdraws to Harlem and White Plains; Fort Washington surren-

dered; disobedience of General Charles Lee: Congress removes to Baltimore, 1776; battle of Trenton; Washington's determination (note).

EVENTS OF 1777.—Battle of Princeton, 1777; commissioners to France (note); dwindling of Washington's army; Pulaski, De Kalb, Lafayette (note); Burgoyne advances from Canada; battles of Oriskany and Bennington, 1777; murder of Miss McCrae (note); Schuyler superseded by Gates; battles near Saratoga; Burgoyne surrenders; Howe in the Chesapeake; battles of Brandywine and Germantown, 1777; conspiracy against Washington; sufferings at Valley Forge, 1777; inefficiency of Congress.

EVENTS OF 1778.—Washington at Valley Forge; recognition by France, 1778; the British evacuate Philadelphia; battle of Monmouth Courthouse, June 28th; General Charles Lee dismissed from the army (note); massacre at Wyoming; destruction of the Six Nations; coming of the French fleet; British outrages; fall of Savannah; Clarke's plan to take the Northwest; Clarke's expedition down the Ohio, 1778; capture of Fort Kaskaskia, 1778; the British occupy Vincennes.

EVENTS OF 1779.—Clarke's march to Vincennes, 1779; capture of the fort; Illinois county created; Clarke's later life (note); British raids along the coast; Stony Point; unsuccessful siege of Savannah, 1779; John Paul Jones; battle between the *Serapis* and the *Bonhomme Richard*; affairs in Philadelphia; sufferings of the soldiers.

EVENTS OF 1780.—Return of Lafayette to America (note); capture of Charleston, 1780; trying time for America; disaster at Waxhaws, 1780; Sumter, Marion, Pickens, Clarke, Light Horse Harry Lee; battle of Camden; Fishing Creek, 1780; Gates's retreat; rendezvous at Watauga Sycamore Shoals; advance on Ferguson; battle of King's Mountain, 1780; effect of the victory; dinner with General Marion (note); Tarleton defeated at Blackstocks; General Greene takes command in the South, 1780; treachery of Benedict Arnold, 1780; capture and execution of André.

EVENTS FROM 1781-1783.—Battle of the Cowpens, 1781; results of the battle; Greene's masterly retreat; battle of Guilford Courthouse, 1781; Greene returns to South Carolina; Emily Geiger's ride (note); battle of Eutaw Springs, 1781; devastation in Virginia, 1781; Lafayette in Virginia; Virginia's part in the war; Cornwallis's raids; Tarleton's expedition; Washington's successful manoeuvres; Cornwallis at Yorktown; a powerful French fleet; General Nelson's patriotism, army at Williamsburg; siege of Yorktown, 1781; Cornwallis surrenders October 19, 1781; rejoicing at the victory; the real end of the war; Washington's farewell to his army, 1783; society of the Cincinnati (note); boundaries of the United States.

UNDER THE CONSTITUTION, 1783-1861.

CHAPTER XXX.

CONDITION OF THE THIRTEEN STATES IN 1783—THE FEDERAL CONVENTION OF 1787.

The Country After the Revolution.—The long war for independence drained the resources and crippled the industries of the whole country. Trade had flourished in the colonies, but the British fleets had destroyed so many American vessels that American commerce seemed dead. This was especially hard for the seafaring people of New England. In the Middle States, which were chiefly agricultural, there seemed little energy left. In the Southern States the crops had been destroyed, the cattle eaten, the horses stolen, and thousands of the negroes carried off. These evils were aggravated by the fact that there was no money in the country,

Congress Helpless.—Congress had lost the respect of the people on account of its inefficiency. When peace came, less heed was paid to it than ever. It had no power to enforce laws. The members elected would not attend the meetings; sometimes only seven States were represented. The thirteen members who assembled in 1784 went home in disgust, and for two months there was no national government whatever.

Confederation of 1774.—A common danger in 1774 had united the thirteen colonies in a "friendly league" to strive for their independence. Under it they had given some authority to Congress, but had kept more for themselves. There was very little real friendliness and sympathy between the different sections, and jealousies and animosities were likely to break out at any moment,

Virginia's Generosity.—The Articles of Confederation drawn up in 1777 required the signatures of nine States. Maryland

refused to sign them, unless the great territory north of the Ohio should become the property of the Confederation. Virginia held that region under a threefold right. It lay between the parallels of latitude within which all of the continent had been given her by the king; she had bought it from the Six Nations in 1722; and George Rogers Clarke had captured it from the English in 1779.

Her holding and governing it in 1783 was the ground upon which the Treaty of Paris awarded it to the United States. Her claim to it could not be disputed, but when the oldest of the colonies saw that by keeping the Northwest for her own she might prevent the establishment of an American Confederacy, she proved her unselfish devotion to the cause of freedom, and bestowed this, the largest part of her dominions, upon the general government. The conditions attached to the magnificent gift were that her soldiers should be given bounty land in the ceded territory, and that all the States should sign the Articles of Confederation. Maryland signed in 1781, and Congress accepted the Virginia grant in 1784.

First Tariff, 1784.—The first important question, after peace was made, was how to raise money to pay the debts of the new nation to its soldiers and to foreign countries, and to provide for the daily expenses of the government. For this purpose, Congress proposed what we call a tariff—a tax on certain articles brought in from other countries. Some of the States raised an outcry that this was unlawful taxation and refused to pay the duties imposed by Congress. Virginia, which was the largest consumer of articles named in the impost bill, instructed her representatives to vote for it.

Annapolis Convention, 1786.—Virginia called a convention of the States to regulate trade among themselves. Representatives from the five States—New York, New Jersey, Delaware, Pennsylvania, and Virginia met at Annapolis. They were too few to accomplish anything definite, but they recommended that another convention should meet in Philadelphia to provide “a Federal Government adequate to the necessities of the Union.”

The Federal Convention, 1787.—All of the States except Rhode Island responded to the call for a Federal convention. On the 25th of May fifty-five of the wisest and most experienced men of the different States assembled in Independence Hall, Philadelphia. They ranged from twenty-five to eighty years of age. Nearly all of them had taken prominent part in



JAMES MADISON.

the struggle for Independence. Twenty-nine of them were college-bred. Twenty-six were self-educated. George Washington and Benjamin Franklin, the two most famous among them, had never been to college. Washington was fifty-five, Franklin eighty-one. Washington was acknowledged to be the purest and wisest of men. Franklin had served his country well as a statesman, and

was one of the ablest politicians and most accomplished scholars of his day. Next to these in ability were James Madison¹ and Alexander Hamilton, both young and both with their reputations to make.

The Convention Meets with Closed Doors.—By the 28th of May delegates from eight States had assembled. The convention met, the doors were locked, and the members pledged to secrecy. This pledge was faithfully kept for fifty years. After Mr. Madison's death his journal was published, and the particulars as to the parties and debates in the convention became known to the world.

Differences of Opinion.—Some members advocated three republics, others three presidents for one. Virginia wished to give most power to the larger States. New Jersey insisted that all should be equal in authority. There was hostility of feeling between the Northern States, where there were few negroes, and the Southern States, where they formed a large part of the population. But the strongest opposition was between the Federalists, who wished to bestow great powers upon the general government, and the anti-Federalists or State-rights party,

¹ James Madison did such important work in framing this document and securing its ratification that he has been styled the "Father of the Constitution."

who believed that the most important powers should be retained by the individual States.

First Compromise.—The smaller States naturally opposed the Virginia plan, and there was danger that no seven of the States could agree. This difficulty was settled in July by a compromise brought in by Connecticut. This proposed that there should be two houses of Congress, and that each State should have equal power in the Senate, while members of the House of Representatives should be in proportion to population. Members of the House should be elected by the people, one to every thirty thousand, while the senators were chosen by the legislatures.

Second Compromise.—A hot disagreement immediately arose between the North and South on the question of negro representation. South Carolina determined to leave the convention, if her negroes were not counted among her population. North Carolina and Georgia would, most likely, follow her example, and there would not be States enough left to ratify the action of the convention. In this crisis, Virginia, true to her character as a peace-maker, proposed a second compromise. In a question of taxation in proportion to population, four years before, the North had insisted on counting the negroes as well as the whites. The difficulty was settled at that time by counting five negroes as equal to three white men. Madison reminded the convention of this, and the North was forced to agree to it.

Third Compromise—Continuance of Slave-Trade.—In a third compromise, Virginia would take no part. South Carolina opposed the immediate abolition of the slave-trade. The New England ship-owners made great profits by this traffic, and the New England States voted with South Carolina and Georgia that Congress should be powerless to stop it until 1808, thus continuing it for twenty years longer.

Other Regulations.—The main features of the Constitution were decided by the three compromises, and other regulations followed. The three branches of the National Government the executive—the President; the legislative—Congress; the judi-

ciary—the Supreme Court, and lower federal courts in the States, were settled upon, together with the manner of choosing them, and the powers entrusted to each branch.

Signing of the Constitution, 1787.—On September 17th, the Constitution was signed by George Washington, the President, and then by the delegations from the States, beginning with the East. Provisions were made for adding amendments to it, and the Constitution was ready to go before the people.

Ratification of the Constitution.—The Continental Congress endorsed the action of the convention, and Delaware, Pennsylvania and New Jersey ratified the Constitution within a few weeks. Georgia, Connecticut and Massachusetts did the same early in 1788; Maryland in April; South Carolina in May; New Hampshire and Virginia in June; and New York in July. North Carolina would not sign until late in 1789, and Rhode Island not until the next year.

Fifteen Amendments.—There are fifteen amendments to the original Constitution. Ten of them were made in a few years after its inception, having been proposed by the different States to protect their rights and those of their citizens. Two more were passed early in this century, and three nearly sixty years later. The Constitution has been described as “the most wonderful work ever struck off at a given time by the brain and purpose of man,” and I have, therefore, been careful to give you the foregoing particulars.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was the condition of the country after the Revolution? 2. Why was Congress helpless? 3. What sort of compact was the Confederation of 1774? 4. How did the different sections regard each other? 5. What condition did Maryland make before she would sign the Articles of Confederation of 1777? 6. By what right did Virginia hold the Northwest? 7. How did she show her generosity in 1781, and upon what conditions was the grant made? 8. What was the most important question after peace was made? 9. What steps were taken by Congress to secure a revenue? 10. How was the plan received by the States? 11. Tell of the distracted state of the country. 12. Why was a convention called at Annapolis in 1786, and what did it accomplish? 13. When and where did the Federal Convention meet? 14. Describe the body of men who assembled,

and tell of four distinguished members. 15. How were the meetings of the convention held? 16. What different opinions arose among the members? 17. What was the first compromise? 18. What was the second? 19. Tell of the third compromise. 20. What other regulations followed? 21. When was the Constitution signed, and for what was provision made? 22. In what year did the different States ratify the Constitution, and which was the last to do so? 23. How many amendments are there to the original Constitution? 24. What has James Madison been called, and why (note)?

CHAPTER XXXI.

WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1789-1797.

Beginning of Constitutional Government, 1789.—The Continental Congress ceased to exist in the autumn of 1788, having first decreed that the elections for the new government should be held early the next year, and that the new Congress should meet on the first Wednesday in March.

Northwest Territory.—The expiring Congress had done some work worthy of remembrance. It accepted the Northwest Territory from Virginia, and made judicious laws to govern it. It was enacted that in time the land should be divided into four or five States, each with the same privileges and duties as the original thirteen; that slavery should not be allowed there, but that slaves fleeing from other States should be returned to their owners. Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Wisconsin and part of Michigan, were formed from the Northwest Territory.

Settling the West.—Emigration to the new country began at once, from New England and the Middle States, and the rapid development of the region was astonishing. Settlements west of the mountains also grew and spread, south of the Ohio.

Washington the First President.—When the new Congress counted the electoral votes, it was found that George Washington was unanimously chosen President, and John Adams, of Massachusetts, Vice-President. Washington's journey from Mt. Vernon to New York was like a triumphal progress. The peo-

ple crowded everywhere to welcome him. Bands of music, volleys of artillery, and the shouts of his countrymen hailed his coming. Philadelphia gave him a grand reception. At Trenton a procession of women and girls strewed flowers in his way and sang songs in his praise.

First Inauguration, 1789.—On the 30th of April the first inauguration took place in the city of New York, on a balcony, in sight of a large crowd, which shouted, “Long live George Washington, President of the United States.” After delivering his inaugural address, the President and Congress went to St. Paul’s church, where Bishop Prevost held service for them.

First Federal Congress, 1789.—The first Congress under the Constitution, proceeded to exercise the powers committed to it by that document. It established the three Departments of State, of War, and of the Treasury. The other departments now represented in the President’s Cabinet were created at later periods. The Federal judiciary, the Supreme Court, with John Jay as Chief Justice, and inferior tribunals were created. The salaries of the different Federal officers were regulated, and made so small, under an idea of republican simplicity, that they scarcely paid the necessary expenses of living.

A Second Tariff.—The simplest way to provide means for carrying on the government seemed to be by a tax or “duty” upon goods imported from foreign countries. And here the various interests of different sections of the country produced wide differences of opinion. All were willing for a small duty on everything imported, but the proposition to tax some things at a higher rate called out a strong sectional feeling. New England exchanged her fish in the West Indies for molasses and rum, and very often made a double profit by buying negroes in Africa for the rum and selling them to the South Carolina and Georgia planters. She, therefore, opposed a high duty on molasses and rum. The Middle States wished to protect their “infant industries” by a heavy tax on steel, ironware, and paper from abroad. They also agreed with New England in urging a high tonnage or tax on foreign ships, to encourage

their trading and ship-building. The Southern States, on the other hand, considered both protective duties and high tonnage as contrary to their interests. European goods brought to them by foreign ships in exchange for their staple crops of tobacco, rice, and indigo, were better and cheaper than the same things made in America. Both revenue and tonnage bills were finally passed by an agreement between Hamilton and Jefferson that the Southern members would vote for them on condition that the national capital should be established on the banks of the Potomac.

Hamilton's Financial Policy, 1790.—Washington had appointed Alexander Hamilton Secretary of the Treasury. He proposed, at the second session of Congress, a plan for establishing the public credit, and a strong financial policy. The general government was to assume the debts of the different States and fund them—that is, should issue bonds as payment of the principal, the holders of which should receive interest upon them regularly. The North favored these measures, but the South thought that assuming the State debts was unfair to those States which had already paid much of what they owed. The funding bill also found small favor in the South.



HAMILTON.

Quakers Petition for the Abolition of Slavery.—To add to the dissensions in Congress, the Pennsylvania Quakers sent a petition to Congress to abolish slavery in the States immediately. All the States except Massachusetts still practiced slavery. Several of them had, however, enacted that it should cease at a certain time, and all of them, except South Carolina and Georgia, had prohibited slaves from foreign countries to be brought into their borders. The feeling that one section of the country ought not to interfere with the rights of another was strong. A committee on the abolition petition, composed of six Northern members and one Virginian, brought in a report "that Congress had no authority to interfere in the emancipa-

tion of slaves, or in the treatment of them in any of the States," which was accepted by Congress.¹

St. Clair's Defeat, 1791.—The Indians in the Northwest, incited by the British, and by them supplied with arms and powder, became very hostile, and General St. Clair marched against them with a force of militia and regulars. On November 4th, the Indians surprised and attacked his camp on St. Mary's Creek, and struck such terror into the militia that the bravery of the regulars was unable to prevent an immediate and panic-stricken retreat. The fugitives abandoned everything to the Indians and fled a distance of twenty-nine miles before sunset. Nine hundred men were lost in the encounter, six hundred of whom were killed on the spot.

Re-election of Washington and Adams, 1792.—Washington was again unanimously elected President and Adams had a majority of votes for Vice-President. Both were inaugurated on March 4, 1793.

War with England Threatened, 1793.—France declared war against Great Britain and Holland in April of this year. As the French assistance had aided the Americans to establish their independence there was a strong feeling that now the young republic should stand by France as she had stood by them. But Washington knew that the United States were in no condition to undertake another war, and he issued a proclamation of neutrality and forbade American citizens to take any part in the contest.

Attack on the President.—The friends of France now heaped abuse upon the President for thwarting their desire to take sides with her. They went so far as to accuse him of sympathizing with the English, and of desiring to make himself a king.

Citizen Genet.—Citizen Genet, the French minister, pre-

¹ Between the sessions of Congress, the President visited New England, where he was received with much enthusiasm, and also made a tour through the Southern States, and selected the site for the national capital, named in his honor. When the census was taken in 1790, there were found to be nearly 4,000,000 of people. Virginia contained one-fifth of the number, and Pennsylvania, the next most populous State, one-ninth.

sumed on this opposition to the President to violate the neutrality proclamation by fitting out privateers in American ports, and bringing their prizes into American waters. When he was informed that his proceedings would not be allowed, he actually addressed insulting language to Washington himself. Whereupon the President requested the French government to recall Genet. The French republic then dismissed the American minister, Gouverneur Morris.

American Ships Stopped by the British.—As neutral vessels were allowed to trade in French ports, American ships did a profitable business in carrying supplies thither. British cruisers were ordered to stop all such vessels, and also to search any ships for Englishmen who might be found on them. These outrages upon American vessels came very near bringing on a war.

Jay's Treaty, 1794.—Washington averted the danger by laying an embargo—that is, prohibiting any vessel to sail from an American port for thirty days—and sending Chief-Justice Jay to England to negotiate for the protection of American rights. Jay succeeded in making a treaty which, though not entirely satisfactory, was better than plunging into war. The President signed the treaty and the Senate ratified it. The country was very indignant over it, abused Washington roundly, and burnt Jay in effigy.

Indian War, 1794.—General Wayne, who had succeeded General St. Clair in the Northwest, found himself forced to active operations against the hostile Indians. He finally routed them near the Maumee River and induced them to make peace.

Whiskey Insurrection, 1794.—A direct tax had been laid upon spirituous liquors. Whiskey distillers abounded in the Pennsylvania mountains, who banded together to resist the collection of this tax. Washington's proclamation failed to induce obedience to the laws, and he called out a large militia force, the command of which was given to General Henry Lee—"Light Horse Harry." The approach of this formidable force awed the rebellious whiskey men into submission to the laws.

Washington's Farewell to the People, 1796.—Washington declined to be elected a third time. His Farewell Address to the people of the United States was received with great devotion. At the end of his second term, March 4, 1797, he retired to private life at Mount Vernon, where he died on December 14, 1799, beloved and honored by his countrymen and admired by the civilized world.

Vermont and Kentucky, 1791 and 1792.—Vermont was admitted to the Union in 1791. She had called herself a State for several years, and now, by the consent of New York and New Hampshire, each of which claimed part of her territory, she was acknowledged to be independent. Kentucky, with the consent of Virginia, became a State on June 1, 1792.

QUESTIONS.—1. What decrees did the Continental Congress make? 2. In 1788, just before it expired, what regulations were made as to the Northwest Territory? 3. What States were formed from that Territory? 4. Tell of emigration to that region. 5. When did the government under the new Constitution begin? 6. Name the first President and Vice-President. 7. Describe Washington's journey to New York. 8. Give the particulars of his inauguration. 9. What work was done by the first Federal Congress? 10. What seemed the easiest way to raise a revenue? 11. How did the New England, Middle and Southern States differ about a protective tariff? 12. Upon what condition were the revenue and tonnage bills passed? 13. What was Hamilton's financial policy? 14. What petition was brought into Congress by the Pennsylvania Quakers? 15. Where did slavery exist in the United States at this time? 16. What report did Congress accept on this Abolition petition? 17. How many inhabitants had the United States in 1790 (note)? 18. Which were then the two most populous States (note)? 19. What tours did Washington make between the sessions of Congress (note)? 20. When and where was General St. Clair sent against the Indians, and with what result? 21. Tell of the second election for President and Vice-President. 22. Why was there danger of war with England in 1793? 23. What stand did Washington take? 24. Of what did the friends of France accuse him? 25. Tell of citizen Genet, and of the action of the President. 26. What injustice did England commit upon American vessels? 27. How was the danger of war with England averted? 28. Who finally routed the Indians in the Northwest, and made peace? 29. What was the Whiskey Insurrection, and how was it put down? 30. Tell of Washington's Farewell Address, and of the closing years of his life. 31. When did Vermont and Kentucky become States?

CHAPTER XXXII.

JOHN ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION—PROGRESS OF THE COUNTRY.

Administration of John Adams, 1797–1801.—John Adams, of Massachusetts, was elected second President of the United States and Thomas Jefferson Vice-President. Any one coming after Washington would have been at a disadvantage, and Adams was by no means as wise as his predecessor.



JOHN ADAMS.

Threatened Difficulty with France.—The principal trouble was with France, which took great offence at American neutrality, and assumed a threatening attitude towards the United States. But Napoleon Bonaparte soon became the French leader, and made a treaty with them.

Alien and Sedition Laws.—When the quarrel was hottest Congress passed an “alien law,” which authorized the President to send out of the country any foreigner who was acting against the government; and a “sedition law,” which forbade publishing anything abusive of the government officers. Both acts were pronounced unconstitutional by Virginia and Kentucky, and their passage made President Adams very unpopular.



JOHN MARSHALL.

Chief-Justice Marshall.—In 1800, just before his term of office expired, Mr. Adams appointed John Marshall, of Virginia, to the office of chief-justice, which he filled with great wisdom for thirty-five years.

Progress of the Country—Tennessee Becomes a State, 1796.—Let us now look at the progress of the country since the beginning of the Revolution. You have seen Vermont become a State in 1791, and Kentucky in 1792. Tennessee was admitted in 1796, and in 1800 the Northwest Territory was divided into the territories of Ohio and Indiana.

Increase of Population.—The increase of the number of States was caused by the increase of population. The 3,000,000 people in 1774 had grown to more than 5,000,000 by 1800. In the new States of Kentucky and Tennessee the number of settlers trebled in ten years' time, and this immigration was mainly from Virginia and North Carolina. Very few foreigners came into the country during this period, and the increase of population was wholly American.

Material Development.—The commerce of the country and the development of its resources kept pace with the increase of population. For nearly forty years coal had been mined for fuel near Richmond, Virginia, from the hills around Pittsburg, and at Tiverton, New Jersey. A company now began to mine and sell the anthracite coal of the Lehigh Valley, in Pennsylvania. Good communication with the western country was important, and State legislatures and Congress began to consider the necessity for making good roads. This was easy in the rocky, hill country, but very difficult in the lowlands, where no stone was to be found. For a long time the best road in the States was the Lancaster turnpike from Philadelphia.

Whitney's Cotton-Gin.—Before the year 1800, 2,060 American patents were issued. One of these, the cotton-gin invented by Eli Whitney,¹ exerted an immense influence upon the industries and destinies of the nation. The invention was received with great favor, and cotton became the staple crop, bringing immense wealth to the Southern States. Cotton factories sprang up along the swift rivers of New England. Slave labor to cultivate the white fibres became of great importance to them. The outcry against the sin of slavery died down, and northern emigrants to the South did not scruple to become slave-owners.

Seat of Government Removed to Washington, 1800.—In the summer of this year Washington became the seat of gov-

¹ Eli Whitney, from Connecticut, was living in Georgia in the family of General Nathaniel Greene. The labor of getting the fibre of the cotton free from the seed was great, and Mrs. Greene one day suggested to young Whitney that he might invent a machine to simplify the work. Acting on this, Whitney invented his first cotton-gin, which cleaned out the seed from 300 pounds of cotton in a day, during which time a negro woman could only "pick" one pound.

ernment. The city was a straggling collection of indifferent buildings, with the half-finished capitol at one end and the President's House at the other.

Education and Literature.—There had been great advance in education and literature. There were now twenty-three colleges—nine in the Southern States, six in the Middle States, six in New England and two in Kentucky. The thirty-seven newspapers of 1776 had increased to 200, published from Maine to Georgia. Kentucky, Tennessee and the village of Cincinnati had rude printing presses and newspapers.

Growth of the Churches.—The religious freedom guaranteed by the Constitution and the laws of the different States awoke the churches to new life. The various forms of Protestantism asserted themselves with vigor, and Sunday-schools became numerous. This is specially remarkable, because French opinions and the infidel writings of Tom Paine, which strove to undermine Christianity, had become quite fashionable among many who professed to be very much enlightened.

QUESTIONS.—1. Who were the second President and Vice-President of the United States, and how long did they continue in office? 2. How did Mr. Adams compare with Washington? 3. Why did France assume a threatening attitude, and how was the trouble averted? 4. What were the Alien and Sedition laws? 5. What States pronounced them unconstitutional? 6. How long was John Marshall Chief Justice of the United States? 7. When did Tennessee become a State? 8. What two Territories were created in the Northwest in 1800? 9. Tell of the increase of population. 10. How did material development keep pace with this increase? 11. What subject now engaged the attention of Congress and the State Legislatures? 12. What is the cotton-gin, and who invented it? 13. What effect did it have upon the country? 14. When did Washington become the seat of government, and what sort of a place was it? 15. What advance had been made in education and in newspapers? 16. What awoke the churches to new life, and why was this especially remarkable?

CHAPTER XXXIII.

JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1801-1809.

Jefferson Becomes President, 1801.—When the electoral vote was counted in December, 1800, there was a tie between Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia, and Aaron Burr, of New York. The House of Representatives decided to make Jefferson President, and Burr Vice-President, and they were inaugurated in Washington on March 4, 1801. Jefferson was a sincere Democrat; he believed that the people should govern themselves, but that while the will of the majority should prevail, the minority should never be tyrannized over. This principle he laid down in his first inaugural address.

Purchase of Louisiana, 1803.—To secure possession of the Mississippi River, Mr. Jefferson, in 1803, purchased from France, for \$15,000,000, a part of the territory of Louisiana which had been ceded to her by Spain.¹ It doubled the extent of the United States, and furnished them with water communication from the Lakes to the Gulf of Mexico.

Opposition of New England to Louisiana Purchase.—New England opposed the purchase of Louisiana, because she thought it would give more power to the South than to the North. Hostility to the President and his measures went so far that some of the leaders seriously advised that New England should secede from the Union and set up a separate republic.

War With Tripoli, 1803.—The piratical States on the coast of Africa levied tribute in money on all vessels entering the Mediterranean Sea. The United States had thus paid tribute to Algiers. The Bashaw of Tripoli now demanded a similar payment. Mr. Jefferson had never approved of the policy. Instead of paying Tripoli, he declared war upon her, and sent

¹ It comprised the States of Louisiana, Mississippi, and Alabama as far east as Mobile, and the country west of the Mississippi from its mouth to Canada, and westward to the Rocky Mountains.

Commodore Preble with four ships of war to overawe the Barbary States.¹ In 1806 Tripoli made a treaty promising to let American ships alone.

Explorations of Lewis and Clarke, 1804.—In 1804 Mr. Jefferson, with the consent of Congress, sent a small party, led by two of his Albemarle neighbors, Meriwether Lewis and William Clarke, a younger brother of George Rogers Clarke, to explore the unknown regions of the West. Under instructions drawn up by Jefferson himself, they pushed their way up the Missouri, and through the many mountains of the Northwest until they reached the Pacific slope. They followed the rivers, which bear their name, until the two became the Columbia River, down which they went to the Pacific Ocean. Exploring this vast region for two years and four months, they made their way back to the village of St. Louis, in September, 1806. Captain Gray, of Massachusetts, had sailed his ship into the Columbia in 1792, so that a double discovery gave the Oregon territory to the United States.



DECATUR.

Duel Between Hamilton and Burr.—Notwithstanding his unpopularity in New England, Mr. Jefferson was re-elected in 1804, George Clinton being chosen Vice-President.²

Commercial Troubles.—During Jefferson's second term, war was raging in Europe; England, France and Spain made

¹ In chasing a pirate vessel into the harbor of Tripoli, the frigate *Philadelphia*, commanded by Captain Bainbridge, ran aground. The pirates captured her and made slaves of the captain and crew, 300 men. Lieutenant Stephen Decatur, with seventy-six picked men, sailed a small schooner into the harbor at night, set fire to the *Philadelphia*, destroyed her completely, and got back to his ship without losing a man.

² Aaron Burr attributed his non-election to Alexander Hamilton's influence, picked a quarrel with him, and challenged him to fight a duel. Hamilton was opposed to duelling, but had not moral courage to decline the customary mode of settling disputes. Burr was a fine shot, and inflicted a mortal wound upon Hamilton, who fired his pistol in the air. He fell at the age of forty-seven, a victim to an evil custom, and a false idea of honor. Killing his antagonist did not make Burr any more contented. Before long, it was believed he was forming a conspiracy to set up a new government in the Southwest, and make himself king or dictator of it. He was arrested and tried for treason in Richmond, Virginia, but there was little evidence of guilt found against him.

laws injurious to American commerce. The President followed Washington's policy of neutrality. This did not protect American vessels. The British were especially offensive in boarding them and carrying off their sailors under pretense that they were English. The British frigate *Leopard*, with fifty guns, in 1807, attacked the American man-of-war, *Chesapeake*, with thirty-eight guns, near the coast, and took four sailors from her. For this outrage, Mr. Jefferson ordered all British ships to leave American ports, and forbade American ships to do so. New England, angry that her trade should be restricted, again made loud threats of disunion, and evaded the law. The embargo was repealed in 1809.

Establishment of the University of Virginia.—Jefferson would not listen to any proposition for a third term of office, but retired to private life, at his home at Monticello, where he spent the remainder of his days. By his efforts and influence the University of Virginia was established and chartered in 1819, with himself as first rector.

Ohio Becomes a State, 1802.—On April 30, 1802, Ohio was admitted as the seventeenth State of the American Republic, and in February, 1809, the Indiana Territory was divided, the part west of the Wabash forming the territory of Illinois.

Fulton's Steamboat, 1807.—In 1807 Robert Fulton put a steamboat upon the Hudson River, the first of many, which, in a few years, increased the facilities for trade and travel on all the large rivers of the United States, and which are now found in all parts of the world.¹

QUESTIONS.—1. Who were elected President and Vice-President in 1800? 2. What principle did the President lay down in his inaugural address? 2. What great purchase did Mr. Jefferson make in 1803? 4. What regions did Louisiana then contain? 5. What advantages did the country gain by

¹ Twenty years before this time, in 1787, John Fitch, of Connecticut, and James Rumsey, of Shepherdstown, in Virginia, had each conceived the idea that boats could be propelled by steam. Fitch put a steamboat on the Delaware in August, 1787, where it was seen and admired by members of the Federal Convention. Rumsey's boat made a trial trip on the Potomac River, at Shepherdstown, in December of the same year. These two men deserve credit as the original projectors of the steamboat.

its purchase? 6. Tell of the opposition of New England to the Louisiana purchase? 7. What brought on war with Tripoli? 8. What is the story of the Philadelphia and Lieutenant Decatur (note)? 9. Describe the explorations of Lewis and Clarke. 10. Who had sailed into the Columbia River in 1792? 11. Who were elected President and Vice-President in 1804? 12. Tell of the duel between Hamilton and Aaron Burr (note). 13. What is the story of Burr's conspiracy (note)? 14. What commercial troubles now arose? 15. What outrage did the British perpetrate upon the man-of-war *Chesapeake*? 16. What were Mr. Jefferson's orders in consequence, and how did New England receive them? 17. How was land obtained from the Indians? 18. What became of Mr. Jefferson after his second term of office? 19. How was he connected with the University of Virginia? 20. When did Ohio become a State? 21. When was the Indiana Territory divided, and into what? 22. Who made the first successful steamboat? Tell of Fitch and Rumsey (note). 23. Find the places on the map.

CHAPTER XXXIV.

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION—WAR OF 1812.

Madison's Administration, 1809–1817.—Like Washington and Jefferson, James Madison, of Virginia, was twice elected, and was President from 1809 to 1817. The commercial troubles of the country continued during the first years of his administration, and war with England became more and more threatening.

Battle of Tippecanoe, 1811.—The country along the Wabash was greatly alarmed by an Indian uprising under two Shawnee chiefs, Tecumseh and his brother Elkswatawa, the Prophet; and Governor William Henry Harrison with 1,000 men advanced against the Prophet's town at



TECUMSEH.

Tippecanoe on November 8th. In Tecumseh's absence, the Prophet asked for a conference and truce, which were granted him. The Indians broke the truce and attacked Harrison's camp in the night, hoping to surprise and overcome him, but

the whites drove the Indians off with their bayonets. They were victorious, and burned the Prophet's town, which the Indians had deserted.

War Against England, 1812.—When Congress met, a large majority of the members were eager to declare war against England. New England opposed it earnestly. Preparations were, however, made for it. The army was increased. The President was empowered to receive 50,000 volunteers, and to call out the militia. Vessels of the navy were to be fitted out, and merchant ships allowed to arm themselves. To allow time for these warlike measures, an embargo was laid, on April 4th, and on June 8th war was formally declared.

Engagements on Sea and Land.—The land operations of the year were everywhere unsuccessful. General Hull, at Detroit, surrendered the whole Michigan Territory to Tecumseh and the British general, Brock, without firing a gun or even stipulating that his garrison should be treated with the honors of war. At sea the American vessels achieved brilliant successes. The United States ship *Constitution* captured the British frigate *Guerrière* off the Gulf of St. Lawrence, after a fight of two hours. This made a great sensation, as no British frigate had ever surrendered before. Two other British ships, the *Frolic* and the *Macedonian*, were taken at sea; and the *Constitution*, "Old Ironsides," destroyed another frigate, the *Java*, off the coast of Brazil. Three hundred prizes were also taken by the privateers. England was accustomed to rule at sea, and was astonished to find her vessels and seamen overpowered by the Americans. Congress made appropriations to increase the navy and build larger ships. Small war-vessels were also rapidly constructed on the Lakes.

Battles of 1813.—I can only tell you of the principal events of this year. Winchester's detachment of 1,000 men, of Harrison's army, was surprised at Raisin River, in January, and forced to surrender to a body of British and Indians. The British general, Proctor, permitted the Indians to murder many of them. Captain James Lawrence in command of the *Chesapeake* ac-

cepted a challenge from Captain Broke of the British frigate *Shannon* to a fight between their ships. In the contest, Lawrence was mortally wounded, and though with his dying breath he exclaimed, "Don't give up the ship," the *Chesapeake* was captured and taken to Halifax as a prize. This blow was counterbalanced by a brilliant victory on Lake Erie. With great difficulty, a fleet of small vessels had been built, by Captain Oliver H. Perry, at the town of Erie. At last it was ready, and Perry offered battle to the British squadron on September 10th, ten miles north of Put-in-Bay. His flagship, the *Lawrence*, being riddled with shot, Perry went in a little boat to the *Niagara*, where he hoisted his pennant, closed in with the enemy and won the victory in eight minutes. He announced his success to General Harrison on the back of an old letter. "We have met the enemy, and they are ours—two ships, two brigs, one schooner and one sloop."

Battle of the Thames.—This victory made it practicable for Harrison to advance. Volunteers from Ohio and 3,600 mounted Kentuckians, under Governor Shelby, had joined him, and he pressed forward with the watchword, "Remember the River Raisin." Perry's fleet and the captured ships carried the Americans across to Canada, where, on October 6th, he overcame the British and their Indian allies, strongly posted on the River Thames. This victory broke the Indian power, restored Michigan to the United States, and gave General Harrison a high reputation. Tecumseh was killed in the fight, report said, by Colonel Johnson, of Kentucky.



HARRISON.

Fort Mimms, Alabama, 1813.—The Creeks and Seminoles had been stirred up by Tecumseh. They were encouraged to rise by the omens of a comet and an earthquake, and assumed a threatening attitude. The alarmed settlers fled for protection to Fort Mimms, a stockade fort on the upper Alabama River. The Creeks attacked them on August 30th, set the fort on fire, and butchered or roasted 400 of the hapless whites.

Horse-Shoe Bend, 1813.—An army for defence was hastily gathered from the neighboring States, with which General Andrew Jackson defeated the Creeks decisively at Horse-Shoe Bend. Their half-breed leader, Weathersford, was captured, and their power broken.

Chippewa and Lundy's Lane, 1814.—In July the Americans, under command of Generals Jacob Brown and Winfield Scott, defeated the British at Chippewa and Lundy's Lane, near Niagara, but without any lasting advantage.

British Attacks on the Coast, 1814.—The British had declared a blockade of the American coast, and now began to attack and burn defenceless places. There were no American vessels large enough to prevent their going where they pleased. Admiral Cockburn entered the Chesapeake, landed 5,000 men, under General Ross, and marched on Washington, meeting only a feeble resistance on the way.

Burning of Washington, 1815.—President Madison and the cabinet left the city. General Ross proceeded to destroy whatever was valuable. All government buildings, except the Patent Office, were burned, and many private residences.

McDonough's Victory, 1814.—Twelve thousand British advanced from Canada, under General Prevost, at the same time with the attack on the coast. Plattsburg, on Lake Champlain, was held by McDonough with fourteen ships. Captain Downie brought sixteen British ships, with larger guns, against them on September 11th. As the enemy approached him, Mc-



ANDREW JACKSON.

Donough knelt on the deck of his ship and prayed that God would grant him victory. After a severe fight the British fleet surrendered, whereupon the English general abandoned an attack on land, and withdrew, leaving his disabled men, his guns and stores.

General Jackson Fortifies New Orleans.

The strongest effort of the enemy was made in the South. General Andrew Jackson, being placed in command at New Orleans, called on the neighboring States to send

him all the militia they could raise and arm. He then proceeded to throw up breastworks of cotton bales and swamp mud, behind which he posted his 7,000 militia.

Battle of New Orleans, 1815.—Sir Edward Packenham brought 12,000 British veterans against New Orleans, and made an attack on Jackson on both sides of the river in the early morning of January 8th. Jackson's army was composed almost entirely of militia and volunteers, but all of them were expert marksmen; 2,500 Kentuckians had come only a day or two be-



BATTLE OF NEW ORLEANS.

fore. On the west side of the river, the attack was made successfully. On the east side, the Americans reserved their fire until Packenham's advance was within two hundred yards, and then poured a storm of bullets into it, while Jackson's nine cannon cut them down with grape-shot and canister. One after another of the British generals was killed, Packenham among them. Two thousand British soldiers had fallen, and Lambert ordered a retreat. Jackson's loss was only seventy-five, but he was not strong enough to pursue the invaders. This victory

made him the idol of the people. News of it and of a treaty of peace with England, which had been signed at Ghent, December 24, 1814, were received at Washington at almost the same time. In this war the young republic showed herself able to hold her own, and the courage and patriotism of her sons was fully proved.

New England, 1815.—The whole country was weary of war, and New England even talked of making a separate peace for herself.¹

The Barbary States Chastised, 1815.—War always causes debt. A National Bank was established to defray it, and another tariff to protect national industries. The navy became a pet of the nation, and its usefulness was proved by Commodore Decatur against the arrogant Barbary States. Sailing through the Straits of Gibraltar in June, he captured two Algerine frigates and forced Algiers, Tripoli, and Tunis to sign treaties of peace, give up their American captives, and cease meddling with American ships.

Louisiana and Indiana Become States.—Louisiana was admitted into the Union in 1812, and Indiana in 1816.

QUESTIONS.—1. During what years was James Madison President? 2. What was the condition of the country during most of that time? 3. Who were the leaders in the Indian war of 1811? 4. Describe the battle of Tippecanoe. 5. What preparations were made for war with England, and when was it declared? 6. What part of the country opposed the war? 7. What was the difference of success on the land and on the sea? 8. What occurred at Raisin River? 9. Describe the fight between the *Chesapeake* and the *Shannon*. 10. Describe the great victory on Lake Erie which counterbalanced this disaster. 11. What can you tell of the battle of the Thames, and the death of Tecumseh? 12. What took place at Fort Mims, in Alabama, in 1813? 13. How was this butchery avenged? 14. Tell of the fights at Chippewa and Lundy's Lane. 15. How did the British behave along the coast? 16. Describe the burning of Washington

¹A convention of ultra-Federalists from the New England States met at Hartford on December 15th to form some plan of opposition to the national government. The proceedings of the convention excited the distrust and alarm of their fellow-citizens, and the Democratic papers denounced it violently. It passed arrogant resolutions, which produced no results except to disgrace its members and destroy the Federalist party.

in 1814. 17. Tell of McDonough's victory at Plattsburg. 18. What city in the South was now fortified, and by what Southern general? 19. Describe the battle of New Orleans. 20. What were the results of this war? 21. When did the Hartford convention meet, and for what purpose? 22. What effect was produced by it upon the country? 23. How were the Barbary States punished by Commodore Decatur? 24. When did Louisiana and Indiana become States? 25. Look on the map for all the places mentioned.

CHAPTER XXXV.

MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION, 1817-1825—JOHN QUINCY ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION.

James Monroe, President, 1817.—The fifth President of the United States was another Virginian, who, like those who preceded him, was twice elected and filled the office for eight years.¹ Monroe cannot be called a great man, but he took counsel with Jefferson and Madison and made a judicious and successful President.

"Era of Good Feeling."—No new party had arisen to take the place of the old Federalist party, and such harmony prevailed throughout the nation that the first years of the administration were called the "era of good feeling."



JAMES MONROE.

Pirates and Indians in the South.—Nests of pirates sheltered themselves among the islands and bays of Florida and Texas, held by the Spaniards, where they were attacked and broken up. The Seminole Indians in Florida also became hostile, and committed outrages and murders in Alabama and Georgia. General Andrew Jackson was directed to raise troops in Tennessee and the nearest States to suppress the Seminoles. With 1,000 whites and a brigade of friendly Indians he drove

¹Old President Adams was very indignant, and said, "My son will never have a chance until the last Virginian is laid in the graveyard."

the invaders into the swamps of Florida. Jackson believed that the Spaniards had incited the Seminoles to their savage deeds. He therefore seized the Spanish posts at Fort St. Marks and Pensacola, and ordered General Gaines to capture St. Augustine. This order was, however, countermanded at Washington, and the captured posts were restored to Spain.

Jackson's Popularity.—In undoing what he had done, the government had to be careful not to offend General Jackson, who was a passionate, sensitive man. By this time he had become extremely popular; the epithets of "Hero of New Orleans" and "Savior of the South" were applied to him, and people made almost as much fuss over him as they had formerly done over General Washington.

Florida Ceded to the United States, 1819.—Mr. Jefferson had tried to purchase Florida, when he bought Louisiana, but Spain had refused to sell it. Now she agreed to give it up, if the United States would abandon their claim to Texas, and would pay \$5,000,000 to certain persons who claimed that sum as a debt from Spain. Florida was made a territory with General Andrew Jackson as the first governor.

Admission of Mississippi, 1817; Illinois, 1818; Alabama, 1819.—In the seven years from the beginning of the war of 1812, five new States were added to the Union. Louisiana, in 1812; Indiana, 1816; Mississippi, 1817; Illinois, 1818; Alabama, 1819. Immigration from Europe began, and in the South and Northwest the population increased rapidly.



HENRY CLAY.

"The American System."—Easy communication with the remote parts of the country became most important. Many people thought that the national government should make roads and canals in those sections through which no rivers ran which were large enough to float steamboats. Others believed that this was beyond the province of the government, and that each State must regulate roads and canals within its borders.

Clay was the leading advocate of the first idea, and one fine road—"The National Road"—was made from Washington to Wheeling. Clay also favored a duty on foreign goods high enough to force the Americans to buy articles manufactured at home. The two principles of "internal improvements" and "a protective tariff" were combined into the "American System," and gave rise to new political parties.

Sectional Hostility, 1820.—Missouri applied to be admitted into the Union in 1820, and an exhibition of strong sectional hostility was the immediate result. The increase of Southern States and Southern votes in Congress was most unwelcome to New England, but any outburst of ill-feeling had been prevented by the way in which the States had, up to this time, come into the Union in pairs, one from the North, another from the South; Vermont and Kentucky, Tennessee and Ohio, Louisiana and Indiana, Mississippi and Illinois. The last State admitted had been Alabama from the South, and before another one from the North was ready Missouri claimed admittance, and violent opposition, at once, arose.

Agitation of the Slavery Question.—Congress had declared in 1793 that it had no power to interfere with slavery. When the cotton-gin made negro labor important to furnish cotton for the New England factories, opposition to slavery practically ceased. Self-interest silenced scruples, and New England ships contrived to bring Africans to the South in spite of the abolition of the slave-trade. Now the question was again opened in the North as a strong ground on which to oppose the admission of more Southern States.

Southern Views of Slavery.—Many Southern people would gladly have abolished slavery, after the Revolution, if they had known what to do with the negroes. The freed slaves in Hayti had proved so idle and vicious that the Southern States would not try a like experiment. Southern views on the subject had also changed. It was acknowledged that slavery had its evils, but these were believed to be less than the ills which would result from any sudden abolition of it. Above all things the South-

ern States held that they only had a right to deal with slavery in their own borders, and that the non-slaveholding States had no right to interfere with them, and to force them into anything against their own will and their own interests.

Question of Missouri.—The Louisiana territory had become part of the United States with the same legal rights guaranteed to its inhabitants as were possessed by citizens of the other States. Slavery was one of the existing rights, and the people of Missouri had no idea that any difficulty would be made about it. The northern half of Missouri was in the latitude of the southern part of the Northwest territory, in which slavery had been prohibited. Its southern half, however, lay on a line with the slave-holding States of Virginia and Kentucky. To prevent an increase of Southern power, Northern congressmen now declared that Missouri should not come in as a slave State, and that slavery should never be allowed to exist west of the Mississippi. Some of the Northern States opposed this restriction, which they acknowledged to be a contradiction to the Constitution, a clear violation of the rights of the people of the Louisiana territory when ceded by Spain, and beyond the power of Congress. Abolition societies in the North urged the congressmen from their sections to disregard law and justice, and to trample on the rights of the South.

Missouri and Maine, 1820.—Congress adjourned without any decision of the question. When it re-assembled, Missouri and Maine each applied to come into the Union. This restored the balance of the States, and the Senate voted to admit both, the first with slavery, the second without. The House again refused to admit Missouri unless slavery was prohibited.

Missouri Compromise—Maine Admitted, 1820—Missouri, 1821.—A peaceable solution of the difficulty seemed impossible, but, at last, the "Missouri Compromise" was agreed to, which allowed Missouri to come into the Union with slavery, on condition that it should never again be tolerated in any region north of $36^{\circ} 30'$, the southern boundary of the new State. Even after this, Missouri was forced to alter her consti-

tution, and was not admitted to the Union until 1821, although Maine became a State the year before.

Monroe Doctrine.—The Spanish States in Mexico and South America, following the example of the United States, had asserted their right to govern themselves. The people of the United States felt much sympathy with them, and Congress and the President recognized them as independent in 1822. In the next year, Mr. Monroe, in his message to Congress, gave utterance to the "Monroe Doctrine," that America had made herself free and independent, and was not to be governed by any European power; and that any attempt to establish a monarchy on the Western Continent would be regarded by the United States as dangerous to their own safety.

Steamers on the Lakes and the Ocean.—Strife in Congress did not hinder the increasing prosperity of the country. Long trains of emigrant wagons were moving across mountains and prairies, bearing many settlers to new homes in the west. Steamboats plied on all the rivers. The "*Walk-in-the-Water*" was launched on Lake Erie in 1818, and the next year the first ocean steamer, the *Savannah*, sailed from Georgia to England.¹

John Quincy Adams, President, 1825.—At the next election there were four candidates for the presidency—William H.



JOHN QUINCY ADAMS.

Crawford, John Quincy Adams, Andrew Jackson, and Henry Clay—but neither one had votes enough to elect him. Jackson had the largest number, and Clay the smallest. Clay's friends, therefore, combined with Adams's and made him President. Adams was not the choice of the people, and became more and more unpopular.²

Removal of the Cherokees, 1826.—There was serious trouble threatened at

¹In 1824 the Marquis de Lafayette was brought in a government vessel to the United States as a guest of the nation. The people welcomed him with affection and respect. Congress presented him with \$200,000 and a tract of land in Florida, and sent him home after more than a year in the ship *Brandywine*.

²Adams supported the American system. He approved a protective tariff bill, which was so objectionable to those who thought duties for revenue alone constitutional, that it was called the "bill of abominations."

this time between the State of Georgia and the general government. The Creek Indians had made a treaty with the United States, giving up large tracts of land in Georgia. The Senate had ratified the treaty, but the President declared it to be of no force, and proceeded to make a new one. Governor Troup, of Georgia, declared the first treaty valid. He had the land ceded by it surveyed, and intimated that he would resist Federal interference. In the end the old treaty prevailed, the Indians yielded, and were moved west to a "reservation" across the Mississippi. They never became civilized, but only increased in idleness, drunkenness and other vices. To remove them seemed the kindest thing for both races.

Death of Jefferson and the Elder Adams, 1826.—On the 4th of July, 1826, the two ex-Presidents, Thomas Jefferson and John Adams passed away. Jefferson died about noon, at the age of eighty-three; Adams a few hours later, aged ninety-three. Ex-President Monroe also died on July 4th, five years later.

QUESTIONS.—1. Who was elected the fifth President in 1817? 2. What did old President Adams say on the occasion (note)? 3. What name was given to the first years of this administration? 4. What troubles arose along the southern borders of the republic? 5. Who was sent to quiet them? 6. Tell of Jackson's popularity. 7. Under what circumstances was Florida ceded to the United States? 8. Describe the growth and prosperity of the country. 9. What five States were added to the Union between 1812 and 1819? 10. What was meant by internal improvement and a protective tariff? 11. To what did these two principles give rise? 12. What aroused great sectional hostility in 1820? 13. How had an outburst of ill-feeling been prevented up to this time? 14. What had been the attitude of New England towards slavery? 15. Was slavery guaranteed by the Constitution? 16. Give the Southern views of slavery. 17. How did the question of Missouri affect slavery? 18. What effort was made to prevent an increase of Southern power? 19. How did some of the Northern States regard this? 20. Upon what terms did the Senate agree that Maine and Missouri should become States? 21. What was the Missouri Compromise? 22. At what dates were Maine and Missouri admitted to the Union? 23. What is meant by the Monroe Doctrine? 24. What were the first lake and ocean steamers? 25. Tell of General Lafayette's visit to America in 1824 and 1825 (note). 26. Who was elected President in 1825? 27. What trouble arose between Georgia and the general government in 1826? 28. What two noted men died on the 4th of July, 1826?

CHAPTER XXXVI.

ANDREW JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION.

Andrew Jackson, the Seventh President, 1829–1837.—Jackson was elected by a large majority, and Calhoun, of South Carolina, was again chosen Vice-President. General Jackson was an ardent Democrat. He believed in the rights of the people and was proud of being their choice. He also thought that he did the best thing for the nation when he followed the principles of his party and carried out its intentions. He was an honest, fearless man, but he was very arbitrary, and disliked those who opposed him, and had little scruple in exercising the power of his position as President.¹



JOHN C. CALHOUN.

Jackson Opposes the "American System."—Jackson did not favor carrying on internal improvements by the government, nor protecting American industries by high import duties. He therefore vetoed bills for the first, and advised Congress to lessen the tariff, which was so obnoxious to the agricultural interests of the Southern States.

Opening of Railroads, 1831.—The opening of railroads and the introduction of steam-carriages, at this time, greatly increased the prosperity of the country. The cars were at first drawn by horses, but, in 1830, a steam-locomotive was used on a short road running from Charleston, South Carolina. The Baltimore and Ohio road next adopted steam-engines. Other Northern

¹The maxim that "To the victors belong the spoils," had found favor in New York politics, and was adopted as a rule during Jackson's administration. Every office-holder who was opposed to the Democrats was at once removed, and his place given to some politician or citizen who had worked or voted for Democratic success. This policy prevailed at Washington for many years. Party "Conventions," originated under its influence, and political machinery became strong and complete.

roads took them up, and now they rush over all parts of the continent.

Nullification Threatened by South Carolina, 1830.—New England had several times threatened to leave the Union when she was opposed to things done by the government. South Carolina now made a similar threat, on rather different grounds. Mr. Calhoun, the leading statesman in the South, held that if Congress should at any time pass a law contrary to the Constitution, each State had the right to prevent that law being executed within her territory.



R. Y. HAYNE.

The question of "Nullification" threatened to rend the Union. The great orators of the time, Calhoun,¹ Clay, Webster, Hayne and others, argued long and ably in the Senate. The speeches made by Mr. Hayne in defence of State rights as reserved under the Constitution, and of Daniel Webster, who declared that such independent rights were impossible, are powerful specimens of oratory.

Ordinance of Nullification, 1832.—The antagonism to the tariff, and the determination to stand up for her rights grew constantly stronger in South Carolina, and, when a more oppressive tariff was passed, in 1832, the people of the State met in convention and passed a "Nullification Ordinance." This ordinance declared the two late tariffs unconstitutional; that they should be considered "null and void" within the State; and that if the Federal government took any steps to collect the duties or coerce the State, she would consider her connection with the United States severed by such action, and would set up an independent government for herself.



DANIEL WEBSTER.

Tariff Compromise.—General Jackson believed in the re-

¹Calhoun, while Vice-President, had no voice in Congress, but Robert Y. Hayne, advocated his views very powerfully in the Senate.

served rights of the States, and opposed the tariff; but, as President of all the States, on this question he took the side of the government, and exerted the power of his office to the utmost. On December 10th he issued a proclamation against the nullifiers. Congress gave him authority, in a "Force Bill," to enforce the tariff by means of the army and navy, and there was great anxiety throughout the country as to the result. Fortunately, better counsels prevailed. By the influence of Henry Clay, the tariff was lessened. South Carolina moderated her opposition, and there was no reason for the President to use arms against her.

Jackson and the United States Bank.—The President objected to the United States Bank as well as to the tariff, and in his message, in 1832, advised that the government support should be withdrawn from it. Congress differed with him, but he brooked opposition no better from Congress than from South Carolina. Carrying out his personal views, he had the government money taken from the bank and distributed among other banks. The Senate and the political leaders of the country—Clay, Calhoun, Webster, and Adams—took sides against him, but he carried his point, and was sustained by the people.

Continued Agitation of the Slavery Question.—The question of slavery in the different States was thought to be finally settled by the passage of the Missouri Compromise. The Abolition societies and the Quakers were resolved that it should not be settled, and continued to agitate it through newspapers,¹ documents, and petitions to Congress. By continually repeating their ideas, the Abolitionists gradually gained adherents. They continued to pour petitions against slavery into Congress, through the hands of ex-President John Quincy Adams.²

¹The most influential of these papers was "The Liberator," published by William Lloyd Garrison, which clamored for "immediate emancipation." Garrison was a fearless fanatic. He was honest enough to see that the Constitution was not opposed to slavery, and he termed it, on that account, "an agreement with death and a covenant with hell."

²The representatives of the South were most earnest to protect their section from the attacks of the Abolitionists. Insurrections of the negroes had sometimes been stirred up, and in one, in Virginia, led by Nat Turner, in 1832, sixty people had been murdered.

Black Hawk War, 1832.—The anxiety caused by the slavery agitation was increased by Indian war in the Northwest, and by the appearing of Asiatic cholera. The Winnebagoes, and Sacs and Foxes practiced such cruelty on the settlers in Illinois that it became necessary to repress them. Black Hawk, their leader, was a crafty, bold warrior, but at last General Atkinson succeeded in overcoming him in the battle of Bad Axe in Illinois.

Black Hawk was made prisoner, and his followers were removed west of the Mississippi.¹



OSCEOLA.

Florida War, 1835.—The year 1835 witnessed the beginning of a second Seminole war in Florida. Osceola, the Seminole chief, made threats of vengeance for wrongs done to him, and was put in irons and kept a prisoner for some days. Enraged at this treatment,

he withdrew into the Everglades to form a plan for revenge. A force of 110 United States soldiers, under Major Dade, was surrounded by Osceola and his followers, on December 28th, and all massacred except one man. For two years the war raged with varying success. Osceola went, in 1837, to hold a conference with General Jessup. Although the Indian chief was protected by a flag of truce, Jessup seized him and sent him to Fort Moultrie, in Charleston, where he died a prisoner. In 1838 Colonel Zachary Taylor severely defeated the Seminoles, and they were afterwards removed to the western reservation.



THE HERMITAGE, HOME OF ANDREW JACKSON.

¹ General Scott sent two young lieutenants of the regular army, Jefferson Davis and Robert Anderson, to administer the oath of allegiance to the companies which volunteered for the war. Abraham Lincoln, then the tall awkward captain of an Illinois company, was sworn in by Jefferson Davis.

Jackson's Farewell.—At the close of his eight years of office, Jackson issued a "Farewell Address" to the people, full of patriotism and devotion to constitutional liberty. He had changed his views and his policy more than once, and had offended some of his best friends, but he was sincere and honest in his intentions, and firm and able in carrying them out. He died on June 8, 1845.

Arkansas, 1836—Michigan, 1837.—Late in 1836 Arkansas was admitted to the Union, and Michigan early in 1837.

QUESTIONS.—1. Who was President between the years 1829 and 1837? 2. Describe his character. 3. What political maxim was adopted as a rule during Jackson's administration (note)? 4. What was General Jackson's action towards the American System? 5. When and where were steam-locomotives first used? 6. What did South Carolina threaten to do in 1830? 7. What is the doctrine of nullification? 8. Who was its great advocate? 9. Who was its principal opponent? 10. What ordinance was passed by South Carolina in 1832? 11. What steps did the President immediately take? 12. How was war prevented? 13. How did the President feel and act towards the United States Bank? 14. How was the agitation of the slavery question kept up? 15. What did William Lloyd Garrison call the Constitution (note)? 16. What insurrection occurred in Virginia in 1832 (note)? 17. Tell of the Black Hawk War. 18. What three noted men took part in it (note)? 19. Mention other noteworthy events between 1832 and 1835. 20. Tell the story of the Florida War in 1835. 21. Who was the Seminole chief, and what became of him and his tribe? 22. Tell of Jackson's "Farewell Address." 23. When did he die? 24. When were Arkansas and Michigan admitted to the Union?

CHAPTER XXXVII.

VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION—TYLER'S ADMINISTRATION.

Van Buren, the Eighth President, 1837.—General Jackson's popularity ensured the election of his favorite, Martin Van Buren, of New York.

Financial Crash of 1837.—A financial storm swept over the country shortly after the beginning of the new administration.

The failures in business amounted to hundreds of millions of dollars. Many banks failed, others suspended specie payment. The



MARTIN VAN BUREN.

year before there was a surplus of \$37,000,000 in the National Treasury, but now an extra session of Congress had to be called to see how the necessary expenses of the government could be paid. Congress authorized the issue of \$10,000,000 treasury notes to meet the emergency.

State Rights Resolutions in Congress, 1838.—Mr. Adams continued to present

numbers of abolition petitions to Congress. In January, 1838, Mr. Calhoun brought into the Senate six resolutions which strongly asserted the rights reserved by the different States in framing the Constitution, and the duty of the general government to prevent one portion of the Union from using the Constitution as an instrument to interfere with the domestic institutions of another portion; slavery was one of the rights, and was recognized as such in apportioning representation among the States, and all attacks upon it were violations of most solemn obligations; that Congress could not abolish slavery in the District of Columbia without breaking faith with Virginia and Maryland, nor in the territories, without infringing on the rights of the inhabitants. The Senate adopted the resolutions by a very large majority.

Abberton's Resolutions, 1838.—At the meeting of Congress in December, there were such abusive attacks upon the South by the Abolitionists that all the Southern members were about to withdraw from the House. To quiet the agitation, as seemed to have been done by the Senate, Mr. Abberton, of New Hampshire, introduced resolutions something like those of Mr. Calhoun. These resolutions, offered by a Northern man, stated that, under the Constitution, Congress had nothing to do with slavery in the States; that petitions to abolish it in the District and the Territories were intended to destroy it in the Southern States; that Congress could not agree to them without vio-

lating the Constitution, and that hereafter every such petition should be at once laid on the table. The first proposition had only six votes against it, and all the others were passed by a two-thirds majority, so that it was hoped that the slavery agitation was finally settled.

Ocean Steamships, 1838.—Steam-vessels now began to ply regularly between England and America. Dr. Lardner, a distinguished philosopher, wrote an article to prove that such transportation was impossible, which was brought to America in one of the steamers, which proved him mistaken.¹

General Harrison Elected President, 1840.—When the election for President was held in this year, the Democrats voted for Van Buren for a second term. The Whigs chose William Henry Harrison,² who had won distinction by his defeat of Tecumseh, and afterwards in Canada, in 1812. John Tyler, of Virginia, was the Vice-President. The result was 230 votes for Harrison against sixty for Van Buren.

Harrison's Death, 1841.—General Harrison was inaugurated, in a driving storm, on March 4, 1841. He took cold, and died of pneumonia on April 4th, having been President just one month. Before he became too ill he called an extra session of Congress to meet on the last day of May.

John Tyler, President, 1841.—The Vice-President at once took the oath of office and became the tenth President of the United States. Mr. Tyler was not in sympathy with the Whig party. He was a strong State-rights man, and considered a national bank unconstitutional, but he was put on the Whig ticket as the most available Southern man for the position.

Mr. Tyler's Vetoes.—When the extra session of Congress met it was soon seen to be at variance with the new President.

¹The government sent out an exploring expedition, this year, under Captain Charles Wilkes, which did much to advance the natural sciences. For nearly four years the ships cruised in waters hitherto unexplored, and discovered the Antarctic Continent.

²"Tippecanoe" was a pet name given to General Harrison, and the campaign cry of the Whigs was "Tippecanoe and Tyler too." They also adopted a log cabin and a cider barrel as emblems, because their candidate had lived in a log-house, and liked to drink hard cider. Buttons, scarf-pins, and cane-heads were seen everywhere, fashioned like a cabin or a barrel.

It passed two bills—one to establish the “Fiscal Bank of the United States,” and another the “Fiscal Corporation.” Mr.



JOHN TYLER.

Tyler vetoed both as contrary to the Constitution, and thereby gave great offence to the Whig party. The whole Cabinet, except Mr. Webster, the Secretary of State, at once resigned, and the party divided into the friends and enemies of the President. In 1842 Mr. Tyler also vetoed two successive tariff bills, but at last signed a third.

Dorr's Rebellion, 1842.—The State of Rhode Island was still governed by the charter granted it by Charles II., which restricted the right of suffrage to a small number of the population. Thomas Dorr, a lawyer of Providence, desiring to extend the suffrage, organized a party in favor of such extension, and set up a new government, with Dorr at its head. The legal governor called on the President to send him troops to put down the usurper. The legislature, in the meantime, called a convention, by which a new constitution was adopted enlarging the suffrage. The people ratified it, and put an end to “Dorr's Rebellion.” Dorr was tried for treason, and sentenced to life imprisonment, but was afterwards pardoned and restored to his civil rights.¹

Magnetic Telegraph—Treaty with China, 1844.—This year witnessed the successful completion of Morse's telegraph. It was put in operation between Washington and Baltimore, and the first message sent was: “What hath God wrought!” Professor Morse had worked at his invention for years amidst poverty and discouragement, but his perseverance and skill were at last recognized by an appropriation from Congress, and were

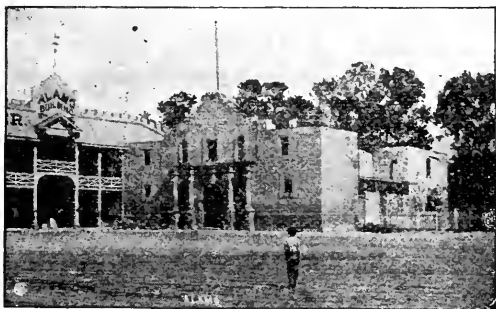
¹ In February, 1844, the war-vessel *Princeton* anchored in the Potomac below Washington. The President, with the Cabinet and other persons from Washington, were entertained on the ship on the 28th of the month. One of the large guns of the vessel the *Peacemaker* was fired in honor of the guests. At the second discharge the gun burst, killing Mr. Upshur, the Secretary of State; Mr. Gilmer, the Secretary of the Navy, and several other persons.

rewarded with success. Diplomatic relations were at this time established with China, where civilized nations had been considered as "outside barbarians."

Oregon Question.—You remember that Oregon had been discovered by Captain Gray in 1792, and had been partially explored by Lewis and Clarke in Jefferson's time. The first white settlement in the region was made at Astoria, by the American Fur Company in 1810. Great Britain had been allowed to occupy the country jointly with the United States, and gradually came to look upon it as hers. This question occasioned much agitation at this time.

Texas Settled—The Alamo, 1836.—The annexation of Texas to the United States was the most important event in Mr. Tyler's time.

You remember that La Salle made a settlement there in 1686. Texas afterwards passed into possession of Spain, and was considered a part of Mexico. The Spanish authorities gave a



THE ALAMO, RESTORED.

large grant of land, in 1820 and 1822, to Moses Austin, from Connecticut, and his son, who carried a number of colonists to the region around the city of Austin. By 1833, there were 20,000 settlers from the United States who threw off the oppressive Mexican rule and set up a republic of their own. In 1835, 172 men in the fortress of the Alamo, in San Antonio, were besieged by 4,000 Mexicans under Santa Anna. After eleven days the Alamo was carried by storm, and every person in it, except a woman, a child, and a servant, was cut to pieces.

Massacre at Goliad, 1836.—A few weeks later, Santa Anna caused to be slaughtered at Goliad 300 prisoners who had surrendered to a large Mexican force. General Sam Houston,

from Virginia, was the commander of the Texan army. The defeats at the Alamo and Goliad had disheartened Houston's men, and his falling back across the Colorado, the Brazos, and the San Jacinto filled them with alarm. In dread of Mexican cruelty, the population of the country also moved on to keep the army between them and Santa Anna.



HOUSTON.

Battle of San Jacinto, 1836.—Having drawn the Mexicans far enough from their base, Houston, with 800 men, gave battle on the field of San Jacinto, on April 12th, to double that number. With shouts of "Remember the Alamo! Remember Goliad!" the Texans rushed on their enemies, whom they utterly routed, killing and capturing almost all. Santa Anna, President of Mexico, was among the prisoners. This battle put an end to the struggle, and Texan independence was accomplished. The republic of Texas was recognized by the United States in 1837, and by England and France two years later. Houston was made its first President.

Annexation of Texas, 1845.—As early as 1837, Texas applied to be annexed to the United States, but Mr. Van Buren opposed it. In 1844, it became the main issue in the presidential election. Congress voted for its annexation, and Mr. Tyler signed the bill just before the end of his term of office. The bill declared that four States might be formed out of the great country, those north of $36^{\circ} 30'$ to be free States, those south of that line either free or slave-holding as their people should decide. This was certainly just, but the North strongly opposed the annexation, fearing that it would give more power to the South in Congress and increase the votes against the protective tariff.

Florida Admitted to the Union, 1845.—Florida became a State during the last days of Tyler's administration.

QUESTIONS.—1. Who was elected President in 1836? 2. Give an account of the financial crash in 1837. 3. What resolutions did Mr. Calhoun bring

into Congress in 1838? 4. How were they received? 5. What were Abberton's resolutions, and why were they introduced? 6. Were they passed? 7. What was Dr. Lardner's opinion of steamships? 8. Tell of General William Henry Harrison's election to the presidency in 1840. 9. Describe his inauguration and death. 10. Who succeeded him, and what were his views? 11. What bills did he veto? 12. How did this divide the Cabinet and the Whig party? 13. Tell the story of Dorr's rebellion. 14. What dreadful catastrophe occurred on the *Princeton* in 1844 (note)? 15. What can you tell of Professor Morse, and the first telegram? 16. What was the Oregon question? 17. Tell of the settlement of Texas. 18. When did the Texans set up a republic of their own? 19. Describe the siege of the Alamo. 20. What occurred at Goliad in 1836? 21. Tell of the battle of San Jacinto, and its results. 22. Who was the first President of Texas? 23. When did Texas apply to be annexed to the United States? 24. When was she admitted? 25. What declaration was made in the bill which admitted her? 26. Why was the North opposed to the annexation of Texas? 27. When did Florida become a State? 28. Find on the map all the places mentioned.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

POLK'S ADMINISTRATION—MEXICAN WAR.

"Army of Occupation."—James K. Polk, of Tennessee, was inaugurated on March 4, 1845. On December 29, 1844, Texas



JAMES K. POLK.

was formally admitted into the Union. The country between the Rio Grande and Nueces Rivers, was claimed by both Mexico and Texas. It was plain that there would be a struggle for the possession of it, and Mr. Polk sent General Zachary Taylor, with 5,000 soldiers to occupy and defend it.

Beginning of the Mexican War, 1846. General Taylor built Fort Brown on the Rio Grande, opposite Matamoras. The Mexicans considered this as a beginning of hostilities, and, on April 26th, they attacked a small American force on the east side of the Rio Grande, and killed or captured the whole sixty-three. This was the first bloodshed of the war, and it aroused great

indignation all over the United States. Congress declared that "war existed by the act of Mexico," put \$10,000,000 at the President's disposal, and authorized the enrollment of 50,000 volunteers. Three hundred thousand men at once offered themselves. Two-thirds of the soldiers mustered into service were from the Southern States. The Mexican soldiers were well drilled and fairly brave, but their officers were indifferent.

Battles of Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma, 1846.—On May 8th General Taylor, with 3,000 men escorting a long provision train, encountered 6,000 Mexicans on the plain of Palo Alto. In the desperate fight of five hours, the American artillery was especially serviceable in driving the enemy from the field. The next day Taylor gained another victory at Resaca de la Palma, in which the whole Mexican army was routed and driven across the Rio Grande.

Three Armies Against Mexico.—The United States Government now decided to make three separate attacks upon Mexico. Taylor was to advance by Matamoras; General Kearney was to march upon California, and General Wool to seize the northern provinces. General Taylor captured Monterey, in August, with 6,500 men, and occupied Saltillo, Victoria and Tampico, one after the other.

Fremont's Capture of California, 1846.—General Kearney, after establishing a new government in New Mexico, set out for California in November. But California had already been taken possession of by the American settlers there under Colonel John C. Fremont. Fremont, by the direction of the government, had, in various expeditions, explored the whole Rocky Mountain region and the country westward to the Pacific coast. Amid great dangers and difficulties he had traced the course of the rivers, had found out the passes through the great mountain ranges, and had taken note of the peculiarities of the vast country through which he journeyed. Fremont was in California when hostilities began with Mexico, and at once organized the Americans there into a government, of which he was the head. Commodore Stockton, with an American squad-

ron, appeared about this time off the coast with orders from Washington to capture California. By the aid of Fremont this was quickly done, and the territory passed into the hands of the United States with very small opposition.

General Scott Sent to Vera Cruz.—Northern and northwestern Mexico were also occupied by General Worth and Colonel Doniphan, and General Scott was put in command of a large army, with orders to land at Vera Cruz and march upon the City of Mexico. A good part of this army was taken from that of General Taylor.



GENERAL SCOTT.

Battle of Buena Vista, 1847.—General Santa Anna, by the connivance of the Washington authorities, had made his way back to Mexico from his exile in Cuba. Learning of the reduction of Taylor's army, Santa Anna collected 20,000 Mexicans and marched against the Americans at the mountain pass of Buena Vista. To his demand for immediate surrender, he received the reply, "General Taylor never surrenders." He, therefore, attacked fiercely on February 23d, and for a time the issue seemed doubtful. At the critical moment a regiment from Kentucky and one from Mississippi, under Colonel Jefferson Davis, were put into action, and by their accurate rifle-firing forced the Mexicans back. The American artillery, under Sherman and Bragg, also did tremendous execution. General Taylor's pithy order, "Give them a little more grape, Captain Bragg," was obeyed with such spirit that the Mexicans fell back before the destructive firing, and abandoned their position during the night. General Taylor lost more than 700, the Mexicans 2,000.

Surrender of Vera Cruz, 1847.—General Scott, March 10, 1847, landed 12,000 men before Vera Cruz, and, when the town refused to surrender, proceeded to bombard it. The destruction accomplished in two days compelled both the town and the Castle of San Juan D'Ulloa to surrender. Four hundred cannon and 4,000 men were captured, and Scott prepared to advance upon the City of Mexico.

Cerro Gordo.—Santa Anna was strongly posted at the pass of Cerro Gordo, in the Cordilleras, fifteen miles west of Vera Cruz, where he could not be attacked in front. Under the direction of Scott's engineers, Lee, McClellan, Beauregard and others, a road was made around the steep mountain side, by which part of the Americans passed to a point from which Santa Anna said he did not think a goat could have attacked him. On April 18th the Mexicans were driven from the pass with great loss, and the Americans pressed forward to Jalapa and Puebla. From the latter place Scott advanced against the capital with 11,000 men.

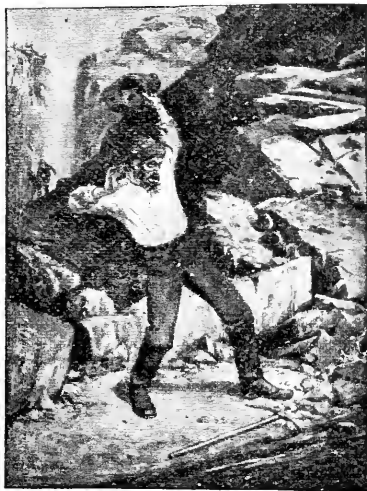
March on Mexico.—To avoid the strong defences of the direct road, General Scott took a route which carried him to the south and west of the city. Fierce fighting carried the strong positions of Contreras and Cherubusco. The Fortress of Chapultepec, just outside the Belen Gate, next barred the way into the city of Mexico. An outpost, Molinos del Rey—the King's Mills—was carried at the point of the bayonet. On the 13th of September, the works on the heights were stormed. The assaulting columns rushed up the slopes, planted their ladders, scaled the walls, and carried the castle with hand-to-hand fighting. Many soldiers, of whom you must hear much, won their first laurels in this Mexican campaign. Among others, U. S. Grant was breveted captain for taking a cannon into a church tower and using it with effect.

Mexico Captured, 1847.—From Chapultepec, the Americans pressed on, forced the Belen Gate and entered the city, a South Carolina regiment with the Palmetto flag being the first to do so. By nightfall of the 13th, the whole city was in the hands of the Americans, and this taking of the capital was really the end of the war.

Peace, 1848.—In a treaty of peace, signed on February 2, 1848, all the territory claimed by Texas, with New Mexico, Arizona and California were guaranteed to the United States. For which Mexico was to receive \$15,000,000, and also an indemnity of \$1,500,000, claimed by American citizens.

Gold Discovered in California, 1848.—The discovery of vast quantities of gold in California increased immensely the value of the territory acquired by the Mexican war. In eighteen months, 100,000 men went from the United States alone to the "gold diggings."

Vigilance Committees.—Crime and anarchy threatened to destroy all law and order until vigilance committees began to protect the weak and punish the guilty. Gradually a better state of things arose, and society became more settled. Farming, fruit-growing and sheep-raising took the place of universal gold-digging.



DISCOVERY OF GOLD.

Iowa, 1846 — Wisconsin,

1848.—The two new States of Iowa and Wisconsin were admitted to the Union during Polk's administration.

QUESTIONS.—1. Who was elected President in 1844? 2. Why did he send an army to Texas? 3. Tell how the Mexican war began in 1846. 4. Describe the battles of Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma. 5. How many armies were now sent against Mexico? 6. What place was captured, and what cities occupied by General Taylor? 7. Who had already captured California? 8. Tell of Colonel Fremont's explorations, and how he took possession of California. 9. Where was General Scott sent? 10. How did General Santa Anna get back home from his exile in Cuba? 11. Describe the battle of Buena Vista in 1847. 12. What regiments finally drove the Mexicans back, and what artillery officers were distinguished in the fight? 13. Tell of the capture at Vera Cruz. 14. Describe the fight at Cerro Gordo, and its results. 15. Upon what city did General Scott then advance? 16. What battles were fought on the route to Mexico? 17. What fortress was stormed just outside of the city? 18. Describe the capture of the city of Mexico. 19. What effect did this have on the Mexican war? 20. Upon what conditions was peace made in 1848? 21. What was discovered in California in the same year? 22. What were the results upon the people of the United

States? 23. How were law and order re-established, and a better state of things brought about? 24. In what years did Iowa and Wisconsin become States? 25. Have you found all the places on the map?

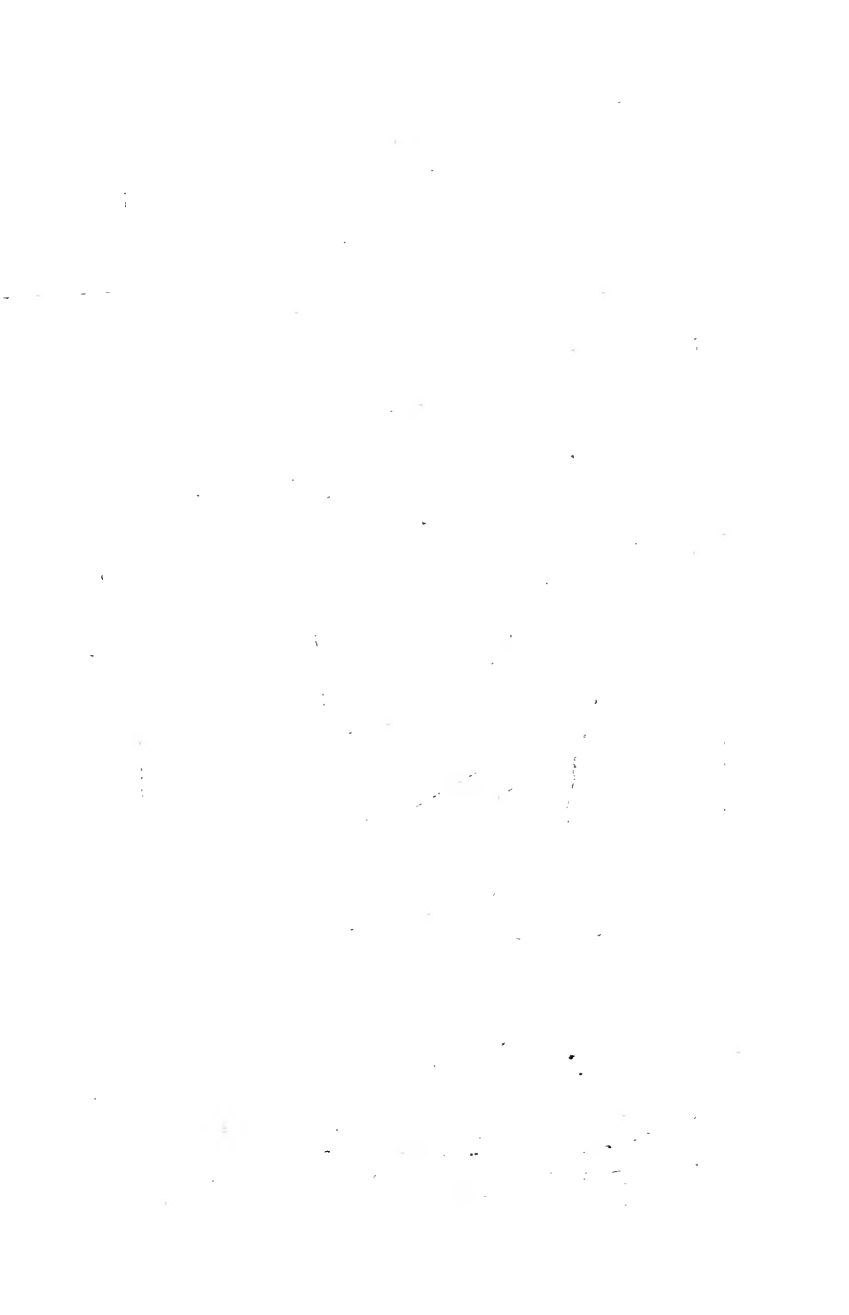
CHAPTER XXXIX.

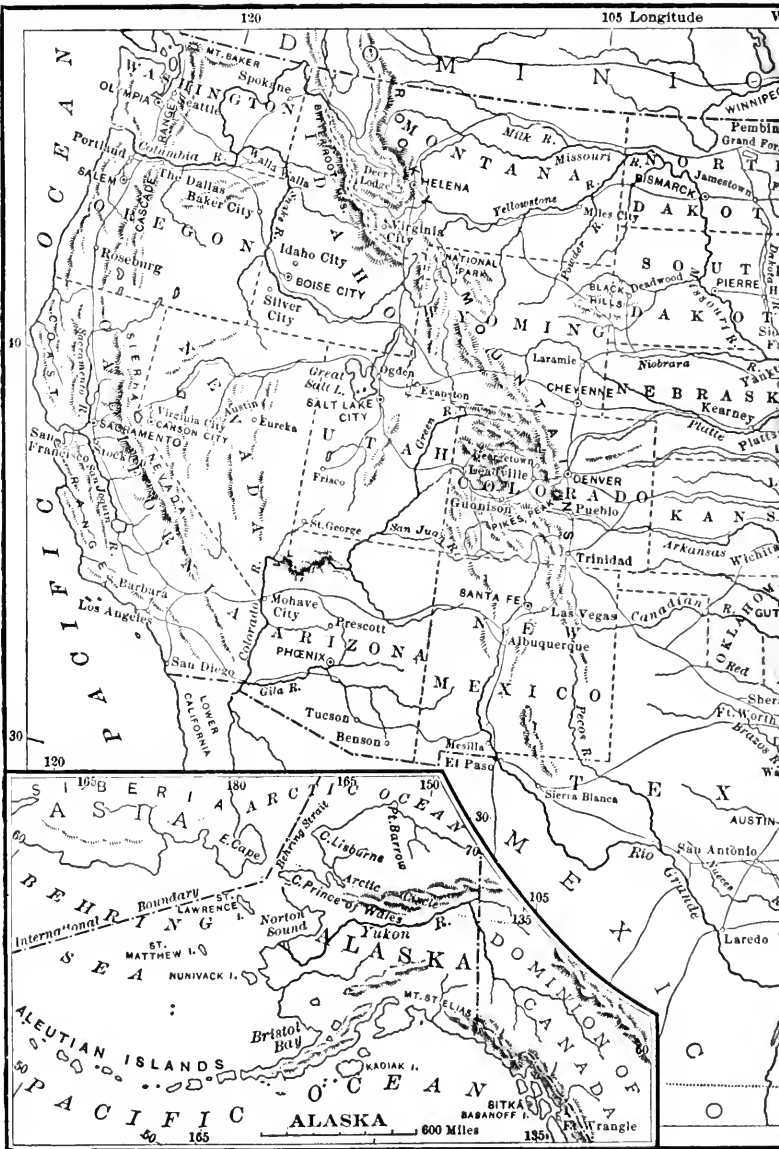
PROGRESS OF THE COUNTRY—TAYLOR-FILLMORE ADMINISTRATION.

Progress of the Country—Population and Industries.—The population of the United States increased from 5,000,000 in 1800, to over 23,000,000 in 1850, who were mainly occupied in developing the agricultural and mineral resources of the land, or in trade and manufacturing. Iron and steel were produced in large quantities. Factories in New England wove millions of yards of cotton and woollen goods. Coal for smelting iron, running steam-engines, and warming houses, was extensively mined in Virginia, Pennsylvania, and Maryland. Reapers and other agricultural machinery, lessened the labor of farming, and made it possible to cultivate more land; while sewing-machines changed in part the means and methods of women's work, if they did not diminish it.

Schools and Churches.—Mental progress was equally noticeable. Public schools were flourishing, and more than 200 colleges had been established. Two thousand five hundred newspapers carried information to all parts of the country. Churches and religious bodies had also grown and extended their influence in all directions. All this growth and development was largely due to the rapid increase of wealth by the gold of California.

Moral Unrest.—Hundreds of thousands of Europeans had been attracted to the United States, and their coming greatly changed the character and opinions of the population, especially in the North and West. A restless desire to upset the old order of things was shown in the springing up of new religious sects, and fantastic societies, and in strange proposals to alter the







customs of the people, and sometimes to get rid of all law and order.

The Slavery Question.—By continued efforts the Abolitionists, led by William Lloyd Garrison and the Quakers, had manufactured a large amount of sentiment at the North. The Methodist and Baptist churches, followed a little later by the Presbyterians, divided on the slavery question into Northern and Southern churches, which were very hostile to each other. The Northern pulpits taught that slavery was contrary to the Word of God, and impossible for Christian people. When such statements were disproved, and it was shown that the “man-servant and maid-servant” of the fourth and tenth commandments were bought slaves, the Abolitionists fell back on the “higher law,” and declared that they had purer and better teaching than that of the Bible. The Southern people, on the other hand, comforted themselves with the knowledge that their “peculiar institution” was not directly condemned in Holy Writ, and even came to consider slavery as a positive good.

Difficulty of Freeing the Slaves.—We must wonder at the blinded perceptions of both sections of the country—that the noble men and pure women of the South did not see more clearly the evils of their system, and that the North did not understand that its conduct towards the slave-holding section was unjust and overbearing. This persistent and unwarranted interference no doubt prevented the Southern States from taking steps to rid themselves of slavery. Virginia very nearly did so in 1832. But now their indignation was aroused, and they thought their self-respect obliged them to maintain a constitutional right so unlawfully assailed. This determination was strengthened by the difficulty of disposing of the negroes, even if set free, which made their owners more resolute to maintain their right under the Constitution to extend their domestic institutions in the southern part, at least, of all the new territory.

Wilmot Proviso.—The North was determined that no such right should be acknowledged. The “Wilmot Proviso,” which forbade the admission of slavery into any of the new territory,

was passed by the House of Representatives and rejected by the Senate. The Proviso would shut up the Southern people to the States they already occupied, while under it the Northern States, where the population was enlarged and changed by foreign immigration, would fill up the new country, regulate the new States formed there, and get the government into their own hands.

The South and the Territories.—The Southern States would not consent to this. They knew that they had the right to an equal share in the property of the republic. They had suffered and sacrificed greatly to establish it. Their sons had fought for freedom on every battle-field of the Revolution. Virginia had captured the Northwest from England and had given it to the nation to ensure the ratification of the Constitution. Southern valor had driven out the Indians, had broken the English power at New Orleans, and had furnished two-thirds of the soldiers who had conquered Mexico, and won much of the country now in dispute. They knew, also, that the Constitution guaranteed equal rights to all the States and their citizens, and that Congress had repeatedly denied having any power to interfere with them. They could not see, therefore, any justice in this latest effort to shut them out from a share in the vast and wealthy region lately acquired. This determination to take possession of the entire West gave rise to the "Free-Soil" party.



ZACHARY TAYLOR.

General Zachary Taylor, President. General Taylor's successes in Mexico gave him great popularity, and he was elected President by the Whig party, and inaugurated on March 4, 1849; Millard Fillmore, of New York, being Vice-President.

California's Irregular Constitution. 1849.—Before Congress met in December, the people of California had organized a government and formed a constitution which excluded slavery, and they now applied to come into the Union as a State. This

was a most irregular proceeding, as Congress had never establish any territorial government there.

Strife in Congress.—Such was the difference of feeling among the members of Congress that no speaker was chosen for three weeks, and then Howell Cobb, of Georgia, was elected by a simple plurality vote. Stormy and protracted debates then occupied both Houses for many months. The three great statesmen—Calhoun, Clay and Webster, although their own views were widely different, made mighty efforts in the Senate to allay the strife and to introduce a spirit of peace and harmony.

“Omnibus Bill.”—Mr. Clay, who has been called “The Great Pacificator,” with a desire to quiet the agitation in the country, brought in a bill which was called the “Omnibus Bill,” because it covered so many measures. It proposed to admit California; to organize territories in Utah and New Mexico without any slavery restriction; to compel the free States to restore fugitive slaves to their owners, and to suppress buying and selling slaves in the District of Columbia. The bill satisfied few of the Congressmen. The North opposed slavery in the new territories, and also the surrender of fugitive slaves, and was eager to abolish slavery in the District. The South objected to the admission of California under an illegal constitution, and thought slavery could not be legally restricted south of $36^{\circ} 30'$. She insisted that Southern people had the right to carry slaves into the new territories, and that the settlers in those territories should decide for or against slavery when they were admitted as States.

Debate Between Calhoun and Webster.—Mr. Clay defended his bill eloquently. Mr. Calhoun's feeble health did not permit him to speak, but he prepared an address in which he urged his countrymen to consider what they were doing. He showed the concessions made by the South to preserve the Union, and declared that she could not sanction the present destructive encroachment on her rights; and he warned the North that the Union would inevitably perish if such hostile injustice was persisted in. This speech was read by Mr. Mason, of Vir-

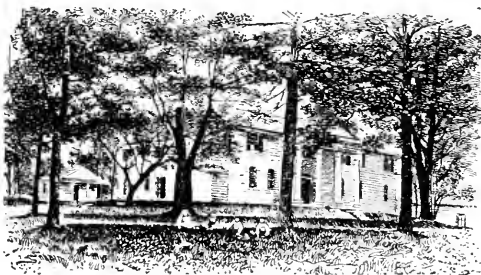
ginia, and was received with breathless attention. Mr. Webster replied to Mr. Calhoun in an eloquent speech. He deprecated the efforts of the Abolition societies, and acknowledged that the slave-owners were upright, honest, Christian people. He opposed the Wilmot Proviso on one hand, and any extension of slavery on the other, and said that the only just ground of complaint the South had against the North was that fugitive slaves were sheltered and not returned to their masters. He did not touch on the claim made by the Southern people that they had a right to carry their slaves like any other property into the new territories without danger of molestation. One of his utterances that "peaceable secession" was impossible was as prophetic as Calhoun's declaration that persistence in Northern aggression must endanger the Union.

Deaths of Calhoun and Taylor.—Mr. Calhoun died on March 31st, 1850, shortly after the great debate in Congress. President Taylor died of fever, on July 9, and was succeeded by the Vice-President, Millard Fillmore.

The "Irrepressible Conflict."—What was termed by Mr. Seward the "irrepressible conflict" between the North and South had begun, which was only to be settled by a terrible war. One by one the provisions of the "Omnibus Bill" were passed. California was admitted as a State in August, and there was no Southern State to come in to balance her vote. There had been none since Texas, while new States in the Northwest were admitted every few years.¹

¹ This was the great era of foreign immigration. The first great impetus given it was in 1847, when the starving Irish came in crowds seeking food and comfort. Between 1847 and 1854, 2,500,000 Europeans settled in the United States. Many farmers from the older States, especially from New England, tempted by the low price of government land in the Northwest—\$25 for one hundred acres—had left their barren, exhausted farms and moved to the more fertile regions of the new States and Territories. Norwegians, Swedes, and Germans followed in their tracks. The Irish generally took the places of those who had left the Atlantic slopes and gone west. The most worthless and vicious immigrants swelled the ranks of idleness and vice in the large cities. There were no public lands to give away in the South, and few foreigners were attracted thither. They were ignorant of American history and opinions, and had no sympathy with either, and, therefore, the Southerners, who loved their own States passionately, shrank from inviting into their midst the uncongenial newcomers from over the sea. These settlers, foreign in thought and feeling, widened the divergence of opinions and interest between the two sections of the republic.

Deaths of Clay and Webster, 1852.—Mr. Clay's patriotic life ended in its seventy-sixth year, in June, 1852. Mr. Webster survived him until October 26th. Thus the "great trio," Calhoun, Clay, and Webster, passed away within two years. Their names are identified with all that was great and important in the national



FORT HILL, HOME OF CALHOUN.

life of their period. All were true patriots and great orators who exercised strong influence in the National councils.

Perry's Expedition to Japan, 1852.—An expedition to Japan, under command of Captain M. C. Perry, led to the opening of two of their ports to American ships. A treaty of peace and commerce was made with them which is still in operation.

QUESTIONS.—1. Tell of the increase in population since 1800. 2. What great industries had sprung up? 3. Tell of the growth of schools and churches. 4. To what was all this growth and development largely due? 5. What effect did European immigration have in the North and West at this time? 6. How did this change show itself? 7. What were the different views of the moral right of slavery? 8. What was one practical difficulty in freeing the slaves? 9. What constitutional right did the South claim? 10. What was the Wilmot Proviso? 11. What was the practical result of this proviso? 12. Why could the South claim equal rights in the territories? 13. When was Oregon organized into a territory? 14. What was the Free-Soil party? 15. Who were elected President and Vice-President in 1848? 16. Tell of California's irregular Constitution. 17. What gave rise to trouble in Congress? 18. Who were the three great leaders, and what efforts did they make? 19. What were the provisions of the Omnibus bill? 20. Why did it satisfy neither section of the country? 21. Tell of Mr. Calhoun's great speech. 22. Of Mr. Webster's eloquent reply. 23. What two prominent men died in 1850? 24. Who then became President? 25. What was the irrepressible conflict? 26. When did California become a State? 27. Tell of foreign immigration (note). 28. Who were the first emigrants to the Northwest (note)? 29. Where did the Europeans

generally settle (note)? 30. Why was there little emigration to the South (note)? 31. What two great statesmen died in 1852? 32. Tell the results of Captain Perry's expedition to Japan.

CHAPTER XL.

PIERCE'S ADMINISTRATION.

Franklin Pierce, the Fourteenth President, 1853.—Franklin Pierce, of New Hampshire, the Democratic candidate, was elected President by a very large majority over General Winfield Scott, the Whig candidate. He was a Democrat of the Jefferson type, and endorsed the "Fugitive Slave Law," which formed part of the "platform" of each of the contending parties. He earnestly wished to end the distractions of the country, and put both Northern and Southern men into the Cabinet.

Routes to California.—The journeys to the Pacific slope were long, tedious, and full of danger, and it was important to find means for quicker intercourse. Various surveys were made to find a practicable route for a railroad across the continent. While waiting for such a road, a railway was built across the Isthmus of Panama, which shortened the journey by several months, and decreased the expense of it.

Personal Liberty Laws.—It was soon seen that the hope of peace in the country was not to be realized. The clause of the "Omnibus Bill," known as the "Fugitive Slave Law," was odious to the Abolitionists, who continued to work against it in the different States. Influenced by their teaching, many States passed "Personal Liberty Laws," wholly contradicting the laws of Congress, and thus nullified the Constitution, as South Carolina had, before this, attempted to do. In Pennsylvania and Ohio there was a regular plan to assist slaves to escape, known as the "Underground Railroad," which violated the Constitution as much as nullification could.

Kansas-Nebraska, Bill, 1854.—The Kansas-Nebraska bill

occasioned an agitation more violent than any which preceded it. The bill gave permission to the settlers in the territory to decide the question of slavery for themselves. Douglas, of Illinois, who advocated it, took the ground that under the legislation of 1850 the restriction of slavery to the south of $36^{\circ} 30'$ was done away with. This idea awoke a tempest of anger and abuse at the North. All sorts of demonstrations were made against the bill, and the papers and orators of the day declared that any dissension or destruction would be preferable to its passage. In spite of all opposition the bill was passed by a majority of thirteen in the House of Representatives, and by a nearly two-thirds vote in the Senate. This was at a time when the Southern States were largely outnumbered in both Houses.

Riot in Boston—"Kansas Bibles."—The Northern people, however, would not obey distasteful laws, even when passed by their own representatives. A United States marshal was shot in Boston for arresting a fugitive slave, and government troops were necessary to protect officers in executing the laws. As the question of slavery in Kansas was to be decided by its inhabitants, societies in the East hurried emigrants thither to resist its introduction. There were collections in the churches to buy rifles—"Kansas Bibles"—and ammunition for the fight which was decided upon. Slave-holding citizens of Missouri also moved into Kansas and established several towns. Every man went heavily armed, and a civil war soon broke out.

Reign of Terror in Kansas, 1855.—The members of the thirty-fourth Congress held such different opinions that it was only at the end of two months that N. P. Banks was elected speaker. Kansas, meanwhile, was the scene of a reign of terror. Anti-slavery and pro-slavery conventions elected delegates to Congress, and each claimed to be the lawful government. Although a committee sent by Congress to investigate the question declared that none of the elections were legal, Congress and the President recognized the pro-slavery government.

John Brown at Ossawatimie, 1856.—There was no more fanatical Abolitionist in Kansas than John Brown, who had

gone from Connecticut to push the slavery quarrel to the bloodiest extreme. Rather than tolerate slavery, he would rend the Union asunder. He fought fiercely against the Missourians and at Ossawatimie led a night attack on his pro-slavery neighbors, in which a number were killed.

Know-Nothing Party.—A new political organization arose at this time, which called itself the American Party, but which gained the title of "Know-Nothing" from the secret oaths and watchwords by which its members were admitted. Its especial principle was opposition to foreigners and Roman Catholics, neither of whom should be allowed to hold any government office. For awhile it acquired some power at the North. In the South, the movement was contrary to the genius of the people and met little encouragement.

Republican Party.—The Free-Soil or Anti-Slavery Party now adopted the name of Republican Party. This title made



MATTHEW F. MAURY.

it very popular with the foreigners, who believed it to be the opponent of tyranny and the advocate of freedom.

Some Achievements of Science.—Silliman, Agassiz, Draper, and others in this period greatly advanced the sciences of geology, chemistry, astronomy, and natural history, and made valuable additions to human knowledge, and Matthew F. Maury,¹ mapped out the winds and currents of the ocean. Chloroform and ether had been brought into use for the relief of pain and the improvement of surgery.

¹ Matthew F. Maury, a naval officer, a native of Virginia, was, perhaps, the greatest benefactor of the time. Maury received, in his youth, only the limited education of an "old-field" school, but he became a diligent student of astronomy, navigation, and whatever could improve him in his profession. The sailing-charts used were very inaccurate, and the knowledge of the winds and ocean-currents was small, and Maury conceived the idea of making reliable charts of both the winds and currents. Studying carefully the reports in the great collection of log-books preserved by the Naval Department, he drew and published his first chart—the best route to Rio Janeiro, in South America. This was such a success that Congress authorized Maury to employ all American captains to take daily notes in books furnished them, of the winds, the currents in the sea, and all the phe-

QUESTIONS.—1. Who was elected President in 1852, and what were his political views? 2. Tell of the routes to California. 3. What were personal liberty laws, and why were they passed? 4. What was the underground railroad? 5. What was the Kansas-Nebraska bill, and how was it received by the country? 6. What did Congress do about it? 7. Describe the excitement in Boston and elsewhere. 8. What was done by the Missourians? 9. Describe the reign of terror in Kansas. 10. What part did John Brown take in this? 11. What was the Know-Nothing party? 12. What was the Republican party? 13. Mention some of the achievements of science at this time. 14. Tell of Matthew F. Maury and his great work. (Note).

CHAPTER XLI.

BUCHANAN'S ADMINISTRATION.

Buchanan Becomes President.—James Buchanan, of Pennsylvania, was elected by the Democrats, and became the fifteenth

nomena of land and water, and send them to him at Washington. They were also to enclose the names and places of their several ships in bottles, which were to be thrown into the sea. When such bottles were picked up on shore, the currents which bore them there could be ascertained. Maury, assisted by a corps of young officers, collected the information thus obtained, and prepared maps of the winds and currents by which ships could sail all over the world. These improved sailing directions were adopted by the maritime nations, and were estimated to save between \$40,000,000 and \$60,000,000 every year, besides thousands of lives. United States officers are not permitted to receive presents from foreign governments, but the crowned heads of Europe and scientific societies heaped upon the "Geographer of the Seas" orders of knighthood, medals, and testimonials. In 1853, a Scientific Congress met at Brussels, in response to Maury's suggestion, and the leading nations of Europe agreed to assist in the investigations he had begun. Maury also urged that similar observations should be carried out on land as well as at sea, and our great system of "weather reports" has grown from these suggestions. Maury's investigations also made possible the submarine telegraphs which now encircle the globe. He had come to believe that there was a plateau under the ocean between Newfoundland and Ireland. Congress sent vessels over the route, which ascertained the depth of the water, but not the character of its bed. John Mercer Brooke, of Virginia, however, invented a "deep-sea sounding apparatus," which brought up specimens of the materials lying at the bottom of the ocean. Shells so small and delicate that currents or moving creatures would destroy them were found all along the plateau, and showed that a telegraphic cable could lie there in safety. In 1858, the first submarine message passed between Europe and America. Cyrus Field, to whose energy and perseverance success was finally due, at a banquet in New York, gave the history of it in the words: "Maury furnished the brains, England gave the money, and I did the work." The United States has never acknowledged or rewarded Maury's important work and the benefits done by it to her commerce and scientific reputation.

President on March 4, 1857. In his inaugural address Mr. Buchanan approved the principles of the Kansas-Nebraska Bill as being entirely constitutional. Difficulties with the Mormons in Utah, and the increasing contention between the North and South made his administration one of anxiety and turmoil.

The Mormons.—Joseph Smith founded the strange, half-heathen sect of the Mormons, in 1830. Smith professed to have received a revelation from Heaven, and to have dug out of the ground gold plates with the “Book of Mormon” engraved on them. The new prophet attracted followers who called themselves “Latter Day Saints.”

The Land of the Honey Bee.—Smith, in 1843, pretended that a message from Heaven told the Mormon men to marry as many wives as they pleased, because women had no souls until they were married. This doctrine disgusted the people in Illinois, to which State they had been driven from Ohio and Missouri, and they also drove them out of their State. Smith was shot in a riot, and Brigham Young became the Mormon leader. He took his followers, some 20,000, across the Mississippi, and finally settled in Utah near the Great Salt Lake. This region then belonged to Mexico. The climate is good, and there are fertile valleys among the sandy deserts. The Mormons became very flourishing in their new home, which they called “Deseret,” “The Land of the Honey Bee.”

Difficulty with the Mormons, 1857.—When the Territory of Utah was organized in 1857, Brigham Young was made the first governor. The principles and habits of the Mormons were different from those of the other American citizens. Polygamy, especially, was contrary to the laws of the land. Many difficulties, therefore, arose between the Mormon authorities and the United States officers, and Brigham Young was so active in driving the latter from Utah, that President Buchanan removed him and sent Colonel Albert Sidney Johnston, with 1,700 soldiers, to compel obedience to the national authority. The little army endured many hardships, and accomplished its object so well that Young came near moving further west with his peo-

ple. Unfortunately, commissioners from Washington, instead of insisting on absolute submission from the Mormons, made terms of peace which were only observed until the troops were removed, and Brigham Young remained the chief authority among the Mormons, no matter who was the governor. Some of the evils of Mormonism have been checked by United States laws.

Dred Scott Decision, 1856.—The question whether it was constitutional to carry slaves into the territories never came before the Supreme Court—the highest legal authority under the Constitution—until 1856. A negro called Dred Scott and his family had been carried by their master into a region north of $36^{\circ} 30'$ —free under the Missouri Compromise—and had then been taken back to Missouri as slaves. Scott then claimed to be free, because he had been carried to a free territory. The Missouri courts sustained his claim, but the Supreme Court reversed their decree and pronounced the Missouri Compromise contrary to the Constitution; that the territories were the common property of all the States, and that the government was bound to protect slave-property there, as much as houses and lands. This decision excited great anger among the friends of abolition, and was received with furious denunciation. The Southern people, on the other hand, were highly pleased to find their claim to a constitutional right in the territories confirmed by the Supreme Court. The decision widened the breach between the two sections, and the strife between them became constantly more violent.

Struggle Over Kansas.—The thirty-fifth Congress organized in December, with Orr, of South Carolina, as Speaker. The struggle in Congress, as to whether Kansas should be admitted as a slave-holding State continued, and was not settled for several years; but it had caused a split in the Democratic party, which was very disastrous.

Notable Events of 1859.—In this year Oregon became a State; Washington Irving, who wrote the first American books that won a reputation in Europe, died; the South was the vic-

tim of the most violent denunciation ever yet made against her, and, for the first time, armed force was used against the peace and lives of her citizens.¹

John Brown's Raid, 1859.—Violent words were soon followed by violent deeds. The fanatic, John Brown, whose bloody deeds in Kansas have been mentioned, had an idea that with a little encouragement the negroes would gladly rise and massacre their masters, and he laid a plan to help them to do it. A number of Abolitionists at the North, instead of trying to hinder Brown's wicked scheme, furnished him with money to buy arms for the negroes. There was a large United States armory at Harper's Ferry, in Virginia, and Brown chose that for his point of attack. He lived for a time in a cabin on a mountain in Maryland, not far from Harper's Ferry, and busied himself in collecting rifles and pistols by the hundred, ammunition, clothing, and 1,500 pikes, made in Ohio, to distribute to the slaves who should rise at his call. He had with him three sons and thirteen other white men from the Northern States and from Canada, and five Northern negroes. On Sunday night,

¹ A story called "Uncle Tom's Cabin," written by Mrs. Harriet Beecher Stowe, of Connecticut, was one of the powerful causes for this display of evil passions. Mrs. Stowe was a violent Abolitionist. She had never studied slavery as it really was, but she picked up isolated cases of wickedness and vice from a few news papers, and wrote a harrowing tale founded on them, from which it appeared that cruelty and crime were the rules of life for all the slave-owners in the South. The book furnished the Abolitionists with a reason for their intolerance, and seemed to make it their sacred duty to oppose the Constitution and laws, as well as the decrees of the Supreme Court. Passion and prejudice grew rampant, and scoffed at allegiance to the government. "Uncle Tom" was republished in England, was translated into foreign languages, and its false pictures of Southern life were spread everywhere by abolition energy and fanaticism. The book aroused a righteous indignation at the South, and strenuous denial of its statements; but its malicious slanders had won the ear of the civilized world, which refused to listen to any account of things as they really were. To add to the agitation, Hinton Helper, of North Carolina, published and circulated hundreds of thousands of copies of a manifesto which threatened Southern slave-holders with the fiercest punishment. They were to be proscribed and despoiled. Not one of them would be allowed to hold office. They were to be tolerated neither by society nor the church. They were to be forced to free their slaves, and to give each negro sixty dollars, and if they dared defend themselves against such treatment were to be killed. This vindictive manifesto was endorsed by the Speaker of the House of Representatives, and by sixty-four leading Republicans in Congress, which showed what measures the South must expect from that party.

October 16th, Brown and his twenty-one men took possession of the armory at Harper's Ferry, and also captured the watchman on the great railroad bridge. Some of the party then went to the plantations in the neighborhood, seized and carried off the owners, the slaves, horses, carriages and wagons. Very soon they had made sixty prisoners. The negroes, however, did not join the invaders, as they had expected, and this disappointment angered them so that they began murdering helpless people. They first shot a negro employed on the railroad who refused to join them, and then killed the mayor of the town and several citizens of the neighborhood.

Brown Captured and Hung.—On hearing of the outrage, men from the surrounding country attacked Brown and his party. Some of them escaped to the mountains, the rest barricaded themselves and their prisoners inside a strong engine-house and fired at their assailants without being exposed themselves. The volunteers were afraid to make a forcible attack on the engine-house, lest they might injure the prisoners, who were their friends and neighbors. By nightfall Colonel Robert E. Lee arrived from Washington, bringing with him 100 United States troops. Brown was summoned to surrender, but refused to do so unless he and his men were permitted to carry their prisoners safely to Pennsylvania. Colonel Lee then ordered an assault upon the building, which was soon taken with the loss of one soldier killed and several wounded. Brown and his men fought like tigers. The old man and one son were wounded, another son was slain; two men escaped, but were captured in Pennsylvania and sent back to Virginia; and five were captured in the engine-house and given up to the Virginia authorities. These were imprisoned in the county jail at Charlestown, and were afterwards given fair trials, in which they were defended by able lawyers. They were, however, proved absolutely guilty of treason, murder and inciting slaves to insurrection, and were justly hung; Brown on December 2nd, and the others on the 16th. The old man continued fierce and vindictive to the last.

Northern Sympathy for John Brown.—Instead of this

outrage exciting condemnation in all the States, the Abolition party at the North expressed the greatest sympathy and admiration for Brown. They clamored that the fanatic who had tried to carry murder and outrage into thousands of homes should be pardoned. They made so many threats of rescue that hundreds of Virginia volunteers were brought to guard the jail and gallows. When the execution took place, funeral guns were fired and bells tolled, in the Northern cities, in honor of the murderer. Services were held in churches, in which Brown was extolled as a martyr. Some even went so far as to liken him to the Savior dying for his people, and Governor Wise, of Virginia, to Pontius Pilate, because he caused the laws to be vindicated.

QUESTIONS.—1. Who became President in 1857? 2. What did he say of the Kansas-Nebraska Bill in his inaugural address? 3. Why was his administration one of anxiety and turmoil? 4. Who were the Mormons? 5. Why did they wander from place to place, and where did they finally settle? 6. What difficulties arose between the government and the Mormons? 7. What celebrated case came up before the Supreme Court in 1856? 8. How was it decided, and how was the decision received by the country? 9. How did this decision affect the claims of the Southern people? 10. What struggle continued in Congress over Kansas? 11. What four notable events of 1859 are mentioned? 12. Tell of "Uncle Tom's Cabin" and the effects produced by it (note). 13. With what did Hinton Helper's manifesto threaten the South (note)? 14. Tell of John Brown's raid and its bloody consequences. 15. Tell of his capture and execution. 16. What was the feeling of the Abolitionists at the North towards him? 17. Find all the places on the map,

AUTHORITIES.—Hildreth's History of the United States, Vol. III., IV., V., VI.; Schouler's History of the United States, Vol. I., II., III., IV., V.; McMaster's History of the American People, Vol. I., II., III.; Von Holst's Constitutional History of the United States, Vol. VI., VII.; Rhode's History of the United States, Vol. II.; Johnston's Constitution and History of the United States; Ridpath's Popular History of the United States; Winsor's Narrative and Critical History of the United States, Vol. VII.; Irving's Life of Washington; Rives's Life of Madison; Madison Papers; Jefferson, Madison, Monroe, Adams, American Statesmen Series; William Wirt Henry's Life of Patrick Henry; Rowland's Memoirs of George Mason; Letters and Times of the Tylers; Clay, Calhoun, Webster, American Statesmen Series; Parton's Life of Andrew Jackson; Annals of Congress; Congressional Records; Benton's Thirty Years in the Senate; Memoir of Matthew F. Maury, by his Daughter, Diana Corbin; S. S. Cox's Three Decades of Constitutional Legislation; Labor's Cyclopedia of Political Science; Woodrow Wilson's Division and Reunion; Memoir of Albert Sidney Johnston, by his Son; Appleton's Encyclopedia; Stephen's War Between the States; Memoir of Jefferson Davis, by his Wife; Encyclopedia of American Biography; Wilcox's History of the Mexican War.

SUMMARY FOR REVIEWS AND ESSAYS.

COUNTRY UNDER THE CONFEDERATION.—The country after the Revolution; Congress helpless; Confederation of 1774; Virginia's right to the Northwest; generosity of Virginia; first tariff; distracted state of the country; Annapolis Convention, 1786.

MAKING THE CONSTITUTION.—The Federal Convention, 1787; members of the convention; meeting of the convention with closed doors; differences of opinion; first compromise; second compromise; third compromise—continuance of slave-trade; other regulations; signing of the Constitution, 1787; ratification of the Constitution; fifteen amendments; the Father of the Constitution (note).

WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1789-1797.—Beginning of constitutional government, 1789; work of the Continental Congress; Northwest territory to be free from slavery; settling the West; Washington first President; his journey to New York; first inauguration, 1789; first Federal Congress; providing a revenue; protective tariff; revenue and tonnage bills passed; Hamilton's financial policy, 1790; petition of the Quakers to abolish slavery; first census of the United States, 1790 (note); Washington's tours (note); St. Clair's defeat, 1791; re-election of Washington and Adams, 1792; war with England threatened, 1793; sympathy with France; Citizen Genet; American ships stopped by the British; Jay's treaty, 1794; Indian war, 1794; Whiskey insurrection, 1794; Washington's farewell to the people, 1796; his death, 1799; Vermont and Kentucky admitted to the Union, 1791 and 1792.

ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION, 1797-1801—PROGRESS OF THE COUNTRY.—Election of John Adams; administration of John Adams; threatened difficulty with France; Alien and Sedition laws; Chief-Justice Marshall; progress of the country—Tennessee becomes a State, 1796; increase of population; material development; Whitney's cotton-gin; seat of government removed to Washington, 1800; education and literature; growth of the churches.

JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1801-1809.—Jefferson becomes President, 1801; his belief in democracy; purchase of Louisiana, 1803; opposition of New England to Louisiana purchase; war with Tripoli, 1803; Decatur and the *Philadelphia* (note); explorations of Lewis and Clarke, 1804; duel between Hamilton and Burr (note); Burr's conspiracy, 1805-1807 (note); commercial troubles; establishment of the University of Virginia; Ohio becomes a State, 1802; Fulton's steamboat, 1809—Fitch and Rumsey (note).

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1809-1817.—Madison's administration; battle of Tippecanoe, 1811; war against England, 1812; engagements on sea and land; Raisin River, 1813; the *Chesapeake* captured; battle of Lake Erie; battle of the Thames; Fort Mimms, Alabama, 1813; Horseshoe Bend, 1813; Chippewa and Lundy's Lane, 1814; British attacks on the coast 1814; burning of Washington, 1814; McDonough's victory, 1814; General Jackson fortifies New Orleans; battle of New Orleans, 1815; Hartford Convention, 1815; the Barbary States chastised, 1815; Louisiana and Indiana become States.

MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION, 1817-1825.—James Monroe President, 1817; "era of good feeling"; pirates and Indians in the South; Jackson's popularity; Florida ceded to the United States, 1819; growth and prosperity; admission of Mississippi, 1817—Illinois, 1818—Alabama, 1819; the American system; sectional hostility, 1820; agitation of the slavery question; Southern views of slavery; question of Missouri; Missouri and Maine, 1820; Missouri Compromise—Maine admitted, 1820—Missouri, 1821; Monroe Doctrine; steamers on the Lakes and the Ocean; Lafayette's visit, 1824 (note).

JOHN QUINCY ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION, 1824-1829.—Election of John Quincy Adams; removal of the Cherokees, 1826; death of Jefferson and the elder Adams, 1826; Bill of Abominations (note).

ANDREW JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1829-1837.—Election and character of the seventh President; party conventions; Jackson opposes the American system; opening of railroads, 1830; nullification threatened by South Carolina, 1830; nullification debate; ordinance of nullification, 1832; tariff compromise; Jackson and the United States Bank; continued agitation of the slavery question; Nat Turner's insurrection; Black Hawk war, 1832; Florida war, 1835; Jackson's farewell; Arkansas admitted to the Union, 1836; Michigan, 1837.

VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION, 1837-1841.—Van Buren the eighth President, 1837; financial crash of 1837; State rights resolutions in Congress, 1838; Abberton's resolutions, 1838; ocean steamships, 1838; Wilkes's expedition, 1838 (note); General Harrison elected President, 1840; Harrison's death, 1841; Tyler's administration, 1841-1845; John Tyler, President, 1841; Mr. Tyler's vetoes; Dorr's rebellion, 1842; the Princeton catastrophe, 1844 (note); magnetic telegraph; Treaty with China, 1844; Texas settled; The Alamo, 1836; massacre at Goliad, 1836; battle of San Jacinto; annexation of Texas, 1845; Florida admitted to the Union, 1845.

POLK'S ADMINISTRATION, 1845-1849.—Army of occupation; beginning of the Mexican War, 1846; battles of Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma, 1846; three armies against Mexico; Fremont's capture of California, 1846; General Scott sent to Vera Cruz; battle of Buena Vista, 1847; surrender of Vera Cruz, 1847; Cerro Gordo; march on Mexico; Mexico captured, 1847; peace, 1848; gold discovered in California, 1848; Vigilance Committees; Iowa admitted to the Union, 1846; Wisconsin, 1848.

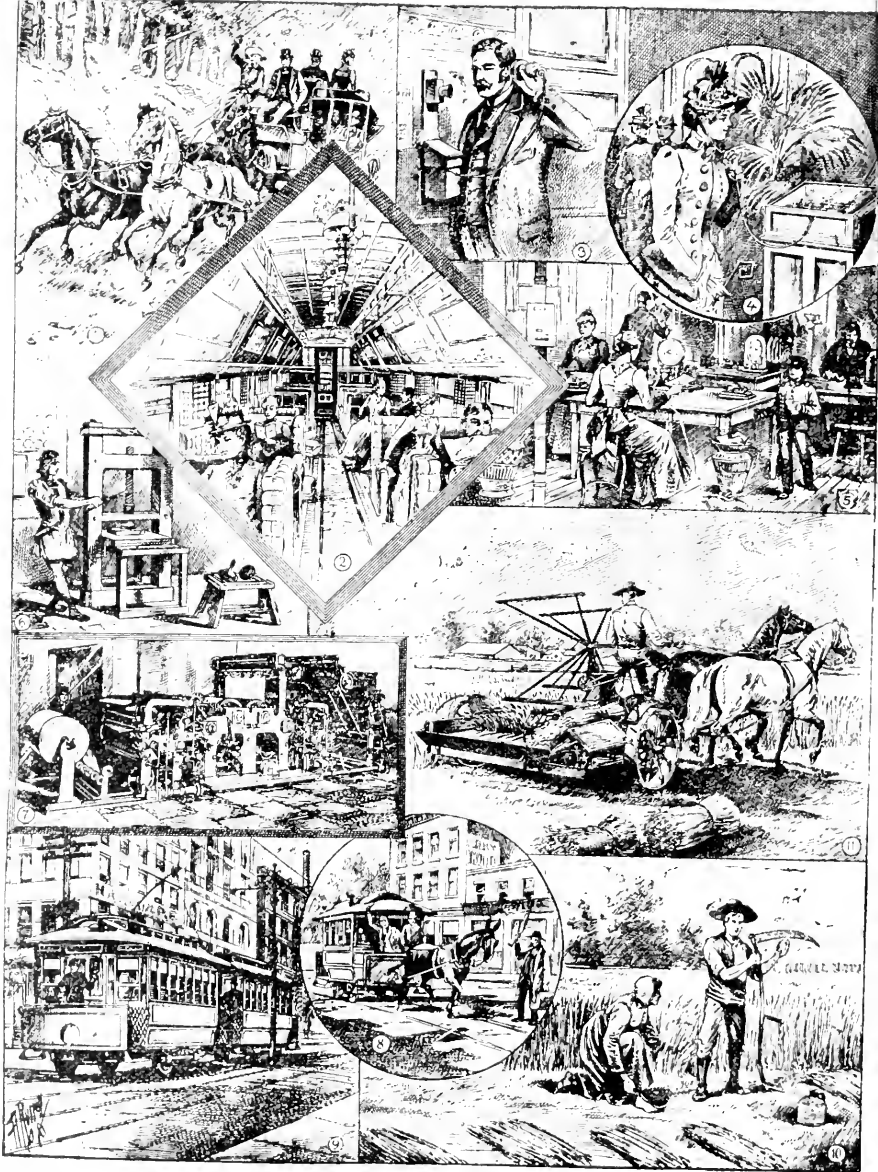
TAYLOR'S ADMINISTRATION, 1849-1850.—Progress of the country ; population and industries ; schools and churches ; the slavery question ; difficulty of freeing the slaves ; Wilmot Proviso ; the South and the territories ; General Zachary Taylor, President, 1849 ; California's irregular constitution, 1849 ; strife in Congress ; Omnibus Bill ; debate between Calhoun and Webster ; deaths of Calhoun and Taylor.

FILLMORE'S ADMINISTRATION, 1850-1853.—The " Irrepressible Conflict " ; foreign immigration (note) ; where these immigrants went (note) ; deaths of Clay and Webster ; 1852 ; Perry's expedition to Japan, 1852.

PIERCE'S ADMINISTRATION, 1853-1857.—Franklin Pierce, the fourteenth President, 1853 ; routes to California ; personal liberty laws ; Kansas-Nebraska Bill, 1854 ; riot in Boston—" Kansas Bibles " ; reign of terror in Kansas, 1855 ; John Brown at Ossawatimie, 1856 ; Know-Nothing party ; Republican party ; some achievements of science ; Matthew F. Maury and his work (note) ; Brussels Congress, 1853 ; weather reports ; Maury and the submarine telegraph.

BUCHANAN'S ADMINISTRATION, 1857-1861.—Buchanan becomes President, 1857 ; the Mormons ; The Land of the Honey Bee ; difficulty with the Mormons, 1857 ; Dred Scott Decision, 1856 ; struggle over Kansas ; notable events of 1859 ; " Uncle Tom's Cabin " (note) ; Helper's Manifesto (note) ; John Brown's raid, 1859 ; Brown captured and hung ; Northern sympathy for John Brown.

THE SLAVERY QUESTION UNDER THE CONSTITUTION.—Negro representation—second compromise ; third compromise—continuation of the African slave-trade ; slavery prohibited in the Northwest Territory ; Quakers petition for the abolition of slavery ; Whitney's cotton-gin ; extinction of African slave-trade ; sectional hostility ; agitation of the slavery question ; Southern views of slavery ; question of Missouri ; Missouri and Maine ; Missouri Compromise ; continued agitation of the slavery question ; Nat. Turner's insurrection ; State-rights resolutions in Congress ; Abberton's resolutions ; annexation of Texas ; the slavery question ; difficulty of freeing the slaves ; Wilmot Proviso ; the South and the territories ; Omnibus Bill ; debate between Calhoun and Webster ; Irrepressible conflict ; Franklin Pierce, the fourteenth President ; Personal Liberty Laws ; Kansas-Nebraska Bill ; riot in Boston—" Kansas Bibles," 1854 ; reign of terror in Kansas, 1855 ; John Brown at Ossawatimie, 1856 ; Dred Scott decision, 1856 ; struggle over Kansas ; notable events of 1859 ; " Uncle Tom's Cabin " ; Helper's manifesto ; John Brown's raid, 1859 ; Brown captured and hung ; Northern sympathy for John Brown.



NEW INVENTIONS CONTRASTED WITH THE OLD.

1.—Old stage coach. 2. Interior of a drawing-room car. 3. The telephone. 4. The phonograph. 5. The telegraph. 6. The first printing press. 7. Hoe perfecting press. 8. Bob-tail mule car. 9. Electric street car. 10. Harvesting with scythe and sickle. 11. Combined reaper and binder.

CIVIL WAR AND RECONSTRUCTION, 1861-1895.

CHAPTER XLII.

FORMATION OF SOUTHERN CONFEDERACY.

Effects of John Brown's Raid.—The whole South was alarmed by the secrecy with which John Brown's operations had been carried out. Volunteer companies of soldiers were organized throughout the Southern States to defend their homes from similar outrage. Congress set on foot an inquiry into the case. The Northern members who were conservative strongly condemned Brown's course, but many of their colleagues sympathized with him, though they might not approve his methods.

Davis's Resolutions, 1860.—Mr. Jefferson Davis, of Mississippi, introduced into the Senate a series of resolutions expressing the views of the South. They stated that the Constitution had been ratified by each State as an independent sovereignty; that it recognized slavery as an important element of power in the South; that all the States and their citizens had equal rights in the Territories, which the Congress was bound to protect; that the people of each Territory had the right to decide whether it should become a free or slave-holding State, and that the constitutional provision and repeated laws for restoring fugitive slaves to their masters should be rigidly observed. These resolutions passed the Senate by a large majority.

Election of 1860.—The Democratic Convention met in Charleston, South Carolina. Had it been all of one mind it might have ensured peace in the land for four more years. But, unhappily, the Northern and Southern members differed so widely on the slavery question, that the convention divided into two separate bodies. The Northern Democrats nominated

Stephen A. Douglas, of Illinois, and the Southern Democrats John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky; while the American party nominated John Bell, of Tennessee. These three candidates so divided the anti-Republicans that the Republican nominee, Abraham Lincoln, of Illinois, received the majority of votes in



ABRAHAM LINCOLN.

the Electoral College, although the popular majority against him was nearly a million. Not a single State south of the Ohio River voted for him, so that he was elected by sixteen States only, all of them belonging to the northern half of the Union. General Washington, in his "Farewell Address," had warned the country of the evils which sectional legislation would bring

upon it. Now, for the first time, a sectional President was elected by a sectional party, and the results proved how true was Washington's foresight.

Abraham Lincoln, 1860.—Abraham Lincoln was of obscure parentage, of an uncouth appearance and awkward manners. His early education was very limited, but as he grew older he improved himself by studying a few good books—the Bible, Shakespeare, and geometry especially. The first two taught him to use good English, and from the latter he learned to reason logically. He had a good mind, a strong character, and sincere convictions. With a keen sense of humor and a fearless disposition, he became a good speaker, with an inexhaustible store of anecdotes and illustrations; and was in every way fitted to be a successful leader of his party. He held strongly the ultra-Republican doctrines, that the South had no right to carry slavery into the territories, and that there must be a tariff which would protect American manufacturers. His opposition to slavery, and his strange belief that the Union was older than the States which united, or the Constitution which they made, carried him from the Whig party—his first political choice—into the Republican ranks. His political ambition was great. He had already been a representative from Illinois, and had aspired to the Senate. Two years before this he had said that as a “house divided against itself,” the Union could not stand, but must become all free or all slave-holding.

Secession a Necessity.—The threats and denunciations against them in Congress and throughout the North, and the open and boastful violations of the Constitution in that section, convinced the Southern States that they could no longer hope to retain their rights and their independence within the Union. They had no desire for war, and no purpose of trespassing on the rights and liberties of the other States; but they felt it their duty to vindicate their own, and they determined to reclaim the powers they had yielded to the Federal Government when they acceded to the Constitution, and to exercise their right to withdraw from the Union, a right not “trumped up” for the occa-

sion, but which had been asserted from the very origin of the government, and which on more than one occasion the statesmen of New England had threatened to exercise.

Secession of South Carolina, 1860.—South Carolina was the first to take the momentous step. Her convention met, as soon as the election of Mr. Lincoln was certain, and passed, on December 20th, an "Ordinance of Secession" which separated the State from the Union and took back all the powers she had entrusted to the Federal Government in 1788. The Gulf States promptly followed her. Mississippi seceded on the 9th, Florida on the 10th, Alabama on the 11th, Georgia on the 19th, and Louisiana on the 26th of January, 1861, and Texas a few days later on February 1st. These seven States thus left the Union before Mr. Lincoln's inauguration, giving as their reason that by his election the Northern States declared their purpose to continue their violations of the Constitution, and to prevent the South from exercising the rights reserved to them in that document.

Mr. Buchanan's Views.—Before secession was an accomplished fact the thirty-sixth Congress met. In his annual message Mr. Buchanan spoke of the alarming condition of affairs. He thought that no State had the right to leave the Union; but that if she did, the Federal Government had no power to coerce her, and he urged Congress to make concessions which might reconcile the hostile sections.

Crittenden Resolutions.—As a step towards reconciliation, Mr. Crittenden, of Kentucky, proposed to amend the Constitution by engrafting into it the provisions of the Missouri Compromise, which the Supreme Court had declared contrary to its original provisions. Under this amendment the country north of $36^{\circ} 30'$ should be absolutely free; south of that line, slaves could be taken into the territories, and the people decide whether they would retain slavery on becoming States. Slave property was to be protected, and the value of a fugitive slave paid in money, if he were not returned to his owner. The Southern members and the Northern conservatives were satisfied with

this proposition, but none of Mr. Lincoln's supporters would agree to it.

Different Opinions at the North.—There were many Northern people who believed in the right of secession and the unlawfulness of coercion. Leading newspapers and politicians avowed that if a State chose to withdraw from the Union, there must be no attempt to force her to remain in it. They said that "compromise or peaceable separation" would avert strife and prevent coercion. But the anti-Southern men took opposite ground. They favored the most extreme measures. Some said that "a little blood-letting" would make the Union stronger; others professed to believe that the South neither wished nor dared to maintain an independent course. Whether intending war or not, their leaders relentlessly pushed the South to the wall.

The Southern Leaders.—The secession of the Southern States was not the act of only the "fire-eaters," as the extreme secessionists were called in derision. It was done under the guidance of the wisest and gravest of the Southern citizens—men who loved the Union only less than their States, and who would gladly have remained in it if the freedom and honor of those States could thus have been preserved. They had sought in vain to obtain simple justice from the stronger half of the republic, and now saw no hope for their independence but in severing their connection with the Union. The farewell speeches of the congressmen from the seceded States, when they took leave of their associates to follow their States, show how solemnly they felt and how deeply they appreciated the importance of the step they were taking.

Southern Confederacy Organized, 1861.

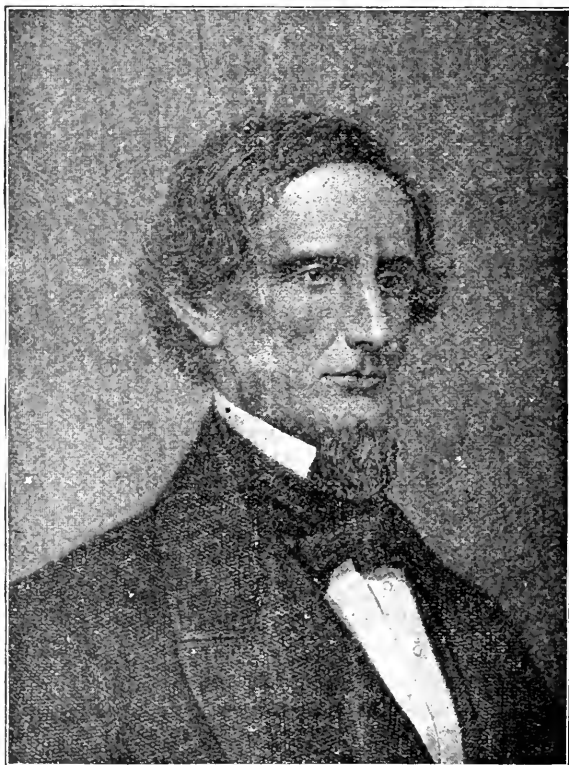
Delegates from the seceded States met at Montgomery, Alabama, on February 4th. A provisional constitution for the "Confederate States" was drawn up, and Jefferson Davis, of Mississippi, was elected President, and Alexander H. Stephens, of Georgia, Vice-



A. H. STEPHENS.

President of the new Confederacy. To show the Southern desire for peace, commissioners were sent at once to Washington to ask for peaceable relations with the United States, and a peaceable settlement, founded on justice, of the questions which must arise between the severed sections of the original republic.

Jefferson Davis.—Jefferson Davis was born in Kentucky, in 1808, and was about two years older than Abraham Lincoln.



JEFFERSON DAVIS

He was a graduate of West Point, and served for several years in the army. In 1832, when Black Hawk surrendered, Lieutenant Davis conveyed him and his warriors to St. Louis. Davis left the army in 1835, and became a cotton-planter in Mississippi.

He was in Congress when the Mexican war broke out, but was made colonel of a Mississippi regiment which did gallant service, especially at Buena Vista, where he was badly wounded. For years he was in the United States Senate, and, during Mr. Pierce's administration, was Secretary of War. The Honorable Caleb Cushing, of Massachusetts, characterized him as "eloquent among the most eloquent in debate, wise among the wisest in counsel, and brave among the bravest on the battlefield." He was a conservative man, and, though a strong State-rights man, he had striven earnestly to maintain those rights in the Union; but he believed that the election of a sectional President, now compelled the Southern States to secede. His farewell to the United States Senate moved his opponents to tears. The position of President of the Southern Confederacy was one of exceeding difficulty. He was too loyal to constitutional liberty to exercise arbitrary power, as Mr. Lincoln did with great success; and he proved himself an earnest, unselfish, devoted patriot, against whose character and motives no serious charge could be brought. His afterlife was one prolonged martyrdom to the cause he had espoused.

Peace Congress, 1861.—Virginia, which had sacrificed so much to secure the Union, was most anxious to preserve it. To that end, her Legislature, early in 1861, called a "Peace Congress" to assemble in Washington, sending to it five of her soundest statesmen, one of whom was the venerable Ex-President Tyler. Twenty-three States took part in this Congress, and some of them hoped to effect a satisfactory compromise. All their propositions were, however, rejected by Congress, and it proved impossible to bring about an amicable settlement of the differences between the disagreeing sections.

The Forts in the South.—The forts within the seceded States had been built on ground granted by them to the United States, for their own defence. They considered that, when they withdrew from the Union, this property reverted to them, and they took possession of all of it except the defences at Charleston and the forts on the Florida coast; and these they made overtures to obtain from the Federal Government without strife.

Fort Sumter Garrisoned by the United States.—South Carolina thought she was assured by President Buchanan that if she did not interfere with the garrison in Charleston Harbor, he would not reinforce it. Major Anderson was, however, ordered by the President to remove the garrison from Fort Moultrie into the stronger works at Fort Sumter, and to destroy Moultrie as far as possible. Troops and supplies were also sent to Anderson, but the steamer, *Star of the West*, which carried them was fired on and turned back. General Cass, Secretary of State, had resigned because Anderson was not reinforced, and now General Floyd, Secretary of War, resigned because such an attempt was made.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was the effect upon the country of John Brown's raid? 2. What resolutions introduced by Mr. Davis were passed by the Senate in 1860? 3. Tell of the candidates and the election for President in 1860. 4. Give a sketch of Abraham Lincoln's life. 5. What were his political views? 6. Why had secession become a necessity? 7. Which State seceded first, and when? 8. How many and which States followed her example? 9. What reasons did they give for acting so promptly? 10. What were Mr. Buchanan's views on this subject? 11. What resolutions were introduced in Congress by Mr. Crittenden, of Kentucky? 12. What opposite opinions were held even at the North? 13. What sort of men were the Southern leaders? 14. Tell of the formation of the Southern Confederacy in 1861. 15. Who were elected its President and Vice-President? 16. How did the new government show its desire for peace? 17. Give a sketch of the life of Jefferson Davis. 18. What efforts were made by Virginia to secure peace? 19. How many States joined in the Peace Congress, and how did it result? 20. What was done with the forts in the South? 21. Tell of Major Anderson and Fort Sumter. 22. Find on the map all the places mentioned.

CHAPTER XLIII.

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION, 1861.

Lincoln's Inaugural Address, 1861.—Mr. Lincoln came secretly to Washington to escape a rumored danger of assassination, and was guarded to his inauguration by United States

soldiers. In the inaugural address, the new President declared that "no State can lawfully get out of the Union;" that "the Union of the States is perpetual," and that he should "take care that all the laws of the Union should be faithfully executed in all the States." His utterances were so threatening that the Virginia Convention in session in Richmond sent a delegation to ask what he meant by them. Mr. Lincoln replied that the military posts in the seceded States still belonged to the Federal Government, and that he should do his best to repossess them. This was a distinct statement that he would attempt coercion, at least to a limited extent.

Renewed Efforts for Peaceable Relations.—The Southern commissioners renewed their application for recognition of the Southern Confederacy, and a peaceable settlement of their differences. What to do with the Southern forts was the first pressing question. Mr. Douglas, of Illinois, who was opposed to secession, took the ground that to recapture and hold them would make it necessary to subjugate the States in which they were situated, and he, therefore, advised that the United States troops should be withdrawn from all except Key West and the Dry Tortugas. The Southern Confederacy certainly did exist, and though they regretted it, he and his party wished to establish peaceable relations with it. General Scott also advised that the forts should be evacuated, and Major Anderson asked that his garrison should be withdrawn from Sumter.

Plan to Reinforce Sumter, 1861.—These counsels for peace did not prevail. Mr. Lincoln had formed his Cabinet of men who were extreme in their views toward the South. Mr. Seward, Secretary of State, put off the commissioners with evasive answers, but assurance was given to Justice Campbell, of the Supreme Court, first, that Sumter would be evacuated; then, that "faith as to Sumter would be fully kept"; then, that he must "wait and see." While this was going on, it was learned at Charleston that an expedition was coming from New York with men and provisions for Sumter. The governor of South Carolina was notified by the government at Washington, that

“an attempt would be made to supply Sumter with provisions, peaceably if they could, forcibly if they must”; and that if there was no resistance to this, the garrison would not be rein-



P. G. T. BEAUREGARD.

forced “without further notice.” As armed vessels carrying troops were already on the way, such “notice” was no doubt to be given when they reached the harbor. A storm which delayed these ships gave time for the Confederate authorities to demand the surrender of Fort Sumter. On the night of April 11th, General Beauregard, commanding at

Charleston, summoned Major Anderson to surrender it. He refused, but said he would evacuate the fort in a few days, unless he received “instructions from his government” or “additional supplies.” In reply to a subsequent message, he refused to indicate any time at which the fort would be evacuated.

Bombardment of Sumter an Act of Self-Defence.—The relief fleet was only kept out of the harbor by adverse gales. There was not a moment to lose, and Beauregard’s batteries opened on Sumter in the early morning of April 12th. After being bombarded for thirty-three hours, the garrison surrendered. The fort was battered to pieces and set on fire by the fierce cannonading, but the only persons hurt were one man killed and others wounded by the bursting of a gun. The South has been charged with “beginning the war,” because she fired on Sumter. But the real beginning of it was when, in violation of assurances solemnly given, armed Federal vessels and troops were sent by the Federal Government to Charleston. Sumter was attacked in pure self-defence.

Why the Struggle for Southern Independence was Necessary.—Before we begin the story of the struggle for Southern independence we will look again at the causes which made it necessary. It is usually charged that the South undertook it to preserve slavery, and to bring on the African slave-trade again. This is wholly false. From the first there had been differences

of opinion as to which was the source of power, the States or the Union. The interests of the North and the South had always been opposed to each other. The high tariffs for the protection and encouragement of Northern manufactures were so injurious to the agricultural interests of the South that she steadily contended against them. In addition to these diversities the Northern leaders had almost always favored "centralization," or giving the largest powers to the National Government; while the Southerners generally held that the Constitution recognized absolute inherent rights which belonged to the sovereign and independent States, and that the government was bound to protect them. The large influx of foreign population, which had neither State attachments nor State pride, increased the Northern preference for a strong central government. In the Southern States the party which always held Mr. Jefferson's strong State-rights opinions never hesitated to defend them.

Slavery Recognized by the Constitution.—The Constitution was founded on certain recognized rights of the States. Slavery was one of these which it was bound to protect. At the time of its adoption, in 1787, almost all the States still held slaves. Their disappearance from New England and the Northern States had been a matter of interest and not of principle, because negro labor did not pay there, as it did in the South. Slavery was considered inexpedient and injurious, but the opinion that it was a moral wrong did not prevail before the days of Garrison and his followers, who pronounced it to be "the sum of all iniquity." With commendable candor they acknowledged that the Constitution favored it, and was, therefore, "a covenant with death and a league with hell," which must be abandoned. By degrees crafty politicians engrafted the Abolitionist doctrine of the "sin of slavery" into their platforms, to increase the opposition to the South which jealousy of her civilization and prosperity rendered still more intense.

Views of the Southern People.—All the outcry against slavery had made the Southern people study the subject, and they reached the conclusion that it was not contrary to the law

of God. They believed that the evils connected with it were less than those of any other system of labor. Hundreds of thousands of African savages had been Christianized under its influence, and many persons considered it the greatest missionary agent the world had ever known. The kindest relations existed between the slaves and their owners. A cruel and neglectful master or mistress was rarely ever found. The sense of responsibility pressed heavily on the slave-owners, and they generally did the best they could for the physical and religious welfare of their people. The bondage in which the negroes were held was not thought a wrong to them, because they were better off than any other menial class in the world. This is not an apology or defence of slavery; it is telling you how the noble-minded people of the South regarded it in 1861.

Mr. Lincoln's Views.—Mr. Lincoln was, in the beginning, unwilling to have the question of slavery considered one of the principal causes of the war, and admitted that the right to hold slaves was guaranteed by the Constitution. Later on he acted on the ground that emancipation had become “a military necessity.”

Slavery Under the Confederacy.—The Constitution of the Confederate States expressly forbade the African slave-trade to be re-opened; and while it gave slave-holders a right to carry their slaves into any territory belonging to the Confederacy, it also provided that the territories might become either free or slave-holding States, according to the will of their inhabitants.

War not to Preserve Slavery.—You see, then, that the Southern States did not secede from the Union to preserve or extend slavery. But they did it because they had vainly striven to maintain the rights guaranteed to them under the Constitution. The determination of the Northern States that the South should not have equal rights in the territories was in no way shaken by the decision of the Supreme Court against them. They persisted in their purpose to control the government only in accordance with their own will. When Mr. Lincoln was elected by a party founded on hostility to the Southern States, the crisis came, and they took their affairs into their own hands

and left the Union. In view of the facts, their enemies are constrained to acknowledge that the Constitution sanctioned the rights they claimed, but opposition to these rights they justify by an appeal to what they call the "Higher Law."

QUESTIONS.—1. Tell of Mr. Lincoln's coming to Washington, and of his inaugural address. 2. What did he say about the Southern forts? 3. What did Mr. Douglas wish to be done to secure peace? 4. What was done at Washington about Fort Sumter? 5. Who was the Federal commander there? 6. Who was the Federal commander at Charleston, and what demand did he make upon Major Anderson? 7. What was Anderson's reply? 8. Tell of the bombardment of Fort Sumter. 9. Did the South begin the war? 10. What causes made this struggle necessary? 11. What two parties had always existed in the country? 12. Why did slavery cease at the North? 13. What did the Abolitionists call the Constitution for allowing slavery? 14. What were the views of the Southern people on the subject? 15. What opinions did Mr. Lincoln hold? 16. What did the Confederate Constitution say of slavery? 17. Did the South fight to preserve slavery?

CHAPTER XLIV.

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION CONTINUED, 1861—BEGINNING OF THE WAR FOR STATE RIGHTS.

Seventy-five Thousand Men Called for, 1861.—On April 15th, the day after the surrender of Sumter, President Lincoln called for 75,000 men from the different States, "to suppress combinations in the seceded States too powerful for the law to contend with." The "war governors" of the Northern States eagerly obeyed the call for troops to coerce their "erring sisters." The governors of the Southern States still remaining in the Union, replied at once to Mr. Lincoln that their States would not furnish a soldier for any such purpose.

Other States Secede.—Most of the members of the Virginia Convention loved the Union, and had up to this time refused to vote on the question of secession. Now they were obliged to choose

between leaving the Union and fighting against their Southern neighbors. They quickly decided never to do the latter, and on the night of April 17th, passed an Ordinance of Secession by a large majority. Those who voted against it were mostly from the western part of the State, where many Northern men had settled who held the opinions of Ohio and Pennsylvania. North Carolina, Tennessee and Arkansas followed Virginia's example, and, in a short time, all four States joined the Southern Confederacy. There were four other slave-holding States which never seceded, Delaware, Maryland, Kentucky and Missouri. Delaware sympathized with the North, the other three tried to remain neutral, but were brought under Federal control by force. Many soldiers were furnished by them to the Southern army, and bloody battles were fought on their soil. The Maryland Legislature was imprisoned by the United States military authorities to prevent their taking the State out of the Union. Missouri was kept from seceding by strong Federal measures.

The Contest Unequal from the First.—Both sides were unprepared for the war, but the North had immense advantages



GEN. S. COOPER.

over the South. It possessed 20,000,000 people, a regular army, an organized navy, arsenals, manufactories of arms and powder-mills, and soon engaged the sympathy of the world by its specious outcry against slavery and rebellion. The South, with only 9,000,000 of people, 6,000,000 whites and 3,000,000 negroes, was without an army or navy, and had almost no means of making arms or powder. After "the John Brown raid" the Southern States had been given their share of the arms in the national arsenals, but the guns were old-fashioned and indifferent, and nothing like enough to supply an army.

Confederate Soldiers.—In the ability of her officers and the devotion of her people, the Confederacy was fully equal to her opponents. Most of the Southern officers in the army and navy at once obeyed the call of their native States, to which

they felt they owed the highest allegiance. Most prominent among them were General Samuel Cooper, the adjutant-general of the Federal army; Robert E. Lee, Joseph E. Johnston, and Albert Sidney Johnston. Lee was made commander-in-chief of the Virginia forces; Joseph E. Johnston was put in command at Harper's Ferry, and to Albert Sidney Johnston was entrusted the chief military authority in the West. The "contagion of a generous patriotism" filled the hearts of the people from the Potomac to the Rio Grande, and soldiers of every rank and age pressed forward to defend their country. Women of every degree shared the enthusiasm, and courageously, though sadly, sent their loved ones to the army.



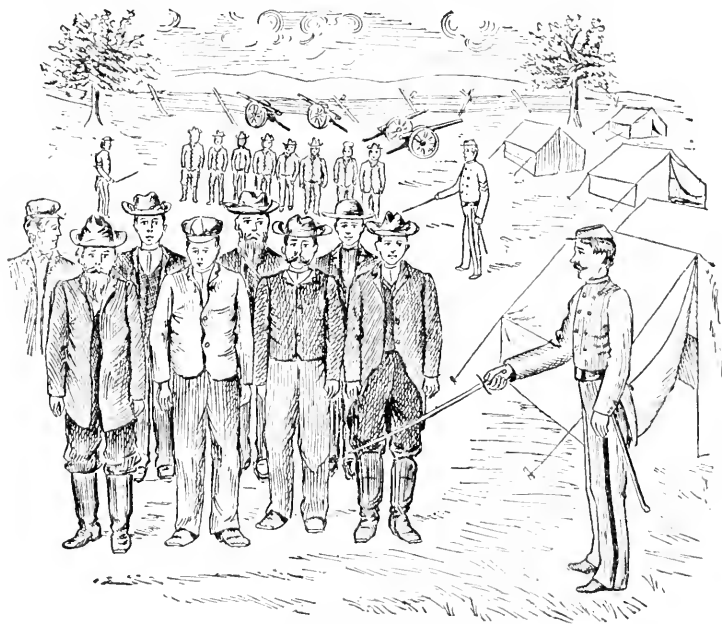
LEAVING HOME.

Seizure of Harper's Ferry and the Gosport Navy-Yard.—Virginia promptly took possession of the armory at Harper's Ferry and the Gosport navy-yard at Norfolk. Great quantities of arms and materials were destroyed at both places by the United States officers, but much that was valuable fell into the hands of the Virginians. Governor Letcher, of Virginia, forbade the seizing of Fortress Monroe so long as Virginia was still in the Union. By the time she seceded, that post had been made too strong for capture.

First Blood Shed, 1861.—Indignant citizens of Baltimore, on the 19th of April, endeavored to prevent the passage through their city of troops from Massachusetts and Pennsylvania, who

were hurrying to go against the South. An unarmed crowd could do little damage, but the soldiers fired into it and killed several persons. On account of such determined opposition no more soldiers were sent through Baltimore; but the city was punished by the arrest and imprisonment of her civil officers, and was put under military government.

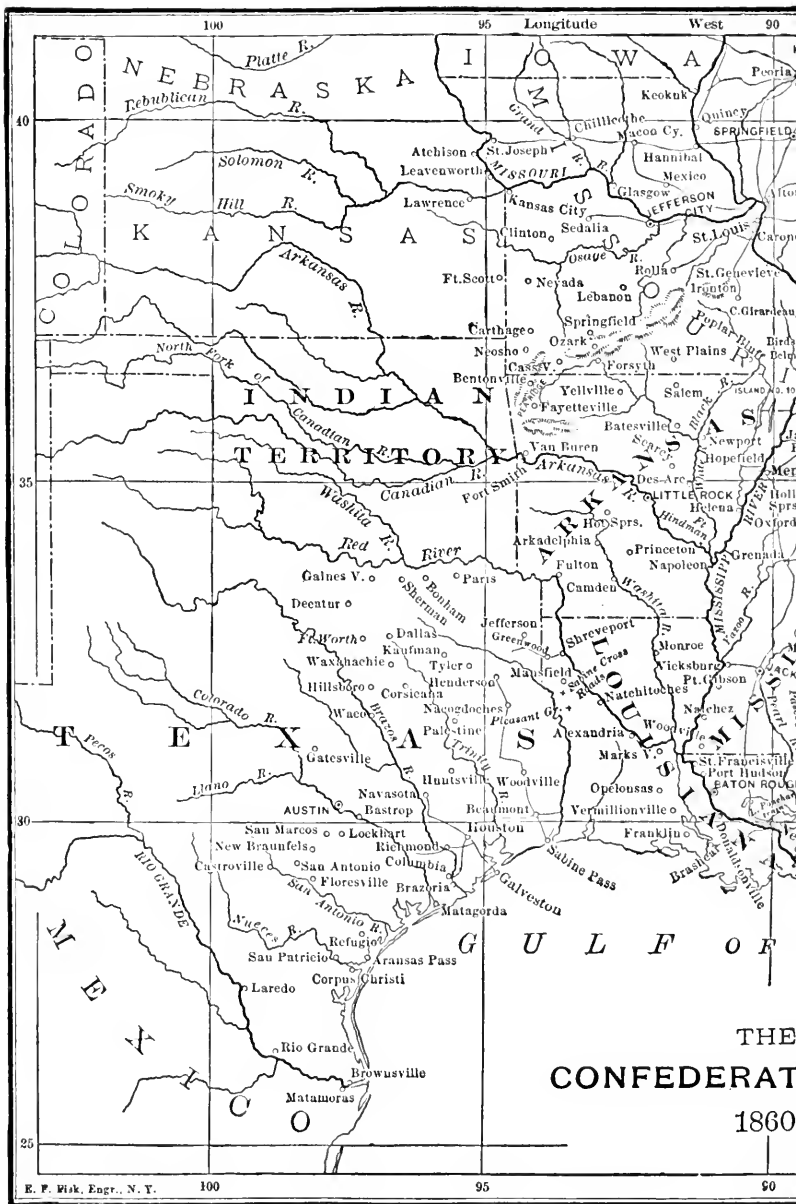
Preparations for War.—Both North and South were now making ready for the fray. It was certain that Virginia, lying close to Washington, would be the battle-ground, and as soon as she allied herself with the Confederacy Southern troops were



CAMP OF INSTRUCTION.

sent with all speed to Harper's Ferry. The machinery in the armory there had not been seriously injured, and was removed at once to Richmond and to Fayetteville, North Carolina, and was set to work making guns.

Difficulty of Equipping the Armies.—Notwithstanding its manufactories of all sorts, and its free access to the markets of





the world, the Federal government found it no easy matter to equip its large army in a short time. In the South the difficulties seemed almost insurmountable. Arms, powder, ammunition, and equipments of all sorts were absolutely wanting.

Mr. Lincoln's Proclamations.—Besides calling for the 75,000 men, Mr. Lincoln within a few weeks issued other proclamations. April 27th he declared a blockade of the Southern ports by United States war-vessels; he also directed that the Federal regular army should be increased to 64,748 soldiers, and the navy to 18,000 seamen; suspended the writ of *habeas corpus* in certain places; and directed that Southern privateersmen should be punished as pirates. All these orders were contrary to the Constitution, but Mr. Lincoln did not hesitate to use the power in his hands to effect his purposes, and left it to Congress to ratify his acts.

Blockade.—His promptness was of great value to the North. The blockade prevented European vessels from undertaking the dangerous service of bringing into Southern ports the supplies so greatly needed, and taking back Southern cotton in exchange. Suspending the writ of *habeas corpus* put every man at the mercy of his enemies, as it left no redress for unlawful imprisonments, and many a man never knew the charge on which he was arrested. England refused to consent to the punishment of privateersmen as pirates, and it was given up.



RECEPTION BY PRESIDENT AND MRS. DAVIS.

Removal of Confederate Capital to Richmond, 1861.—

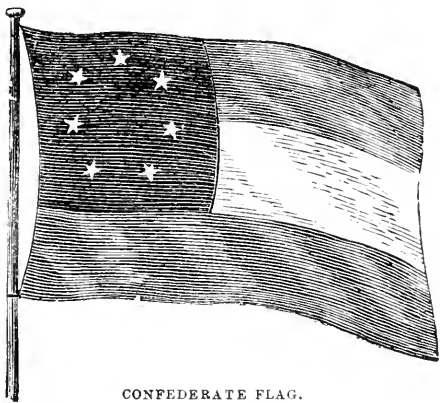
In the month of May, the government of the Confederacy removed from Montgomery, Alabama, to Richmond, Virginia, which was the capital of the new republic until the end of the war. Troops from all over the South were brought to Virginia, as soon as they could be equipped. By the 1st of July 300,000 soldiers were enrolled in the North, the larger part of whom were to be brought against Virginia.

Greatness of the Coming Conflict Not Realized.—Although there was so much enthusiasm and gathering of soldiers, there was little realization of the greatness of the struggle. The North did not believe that the South would fight, or be able to hold its own; while the South thought that the many friends of constitutional liberty in the North would somehow moderate the hostility of their neighbors. She thought her cotton so necessary for the world that its value would neutralize the blockade and induce France and England to recognize her independence. One proof of the universal misunderstanding is the fact that Northern volunteers generally enlisted for only three months, or a hundred days; while Southern soldiers did so for six months, or “until the close of the war,” which in some instances was thought to mean a shorter period, though in others the words were meant to express a determination to fight to the end.

Enterprise at the South.—The Southerners made great efforts to supply their military needs. Cannon factories were set up at Richmond, at New Orleans, and Nashville. Sulphur stored in New Orleans for the sugar refineries was used in making powder. Nitre, for the same purpose, was obtained from cellars and caves, and from carefully prepared nitre-beds. A large powder-mill was established at Augusta, Georgia, and smaller ones elsewhere. Wagon shops and harness-makers were employed to equip the artillery, and women’s “Aid Societies” made tents and clothing for the soldiers. All did what they could to assist in the defence of the South.

Immensity of the Struggle.—Within the limits of this short

history no detailed account can be given of this momentous strife. I shall attempt to present you with a general view of it, and to tell you of the most important battles. There were so many weak points in the long extent of Confederate frontier, and the forces brought against her were so enormous that the story of the whole struggle is almost incredible. There were desperate battles in many places; hardships,



CONFEDERATE FLAG.

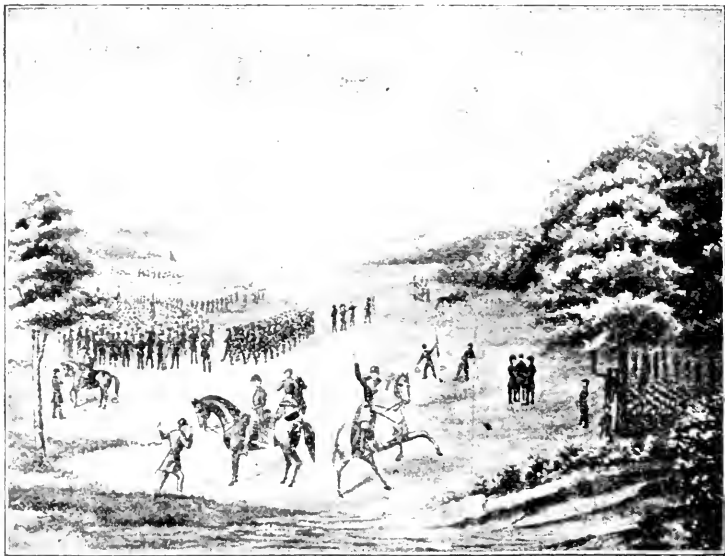
privation, and sorrow were the portion of the whole South, but Virginia, from the first, had to bear the brunt of the war to a greater extent than any other equal section of the country. The bloodiest battles were fought on her soil, and destruction and devastation swept over her fair fields continuously.

QUESTIONS.—1. What did Mr. Lincoln do the day after the fall of Fort Sumter? 2. How was he answered? 3. Which four States next seceded? 4. Which four slave-holding States did not secede? 5. What from the first made the contest between the sections unequal? 6. In what respect were they equal? 7. Who were some of the leading Southern generals? 8. What spirit animated the people of the Confederacy? 9. What United States posts were taken by Virginia? 10. Why did she not seize Fortress Monroe? 11. When and where was the first blood shed? 12. What was done with the machinery from Harper's Ferry? 13. What difficulties were experienced on both sides in equipping the armies? 14. What other proclamations were issued by Mr. Lincoln? 15. Why were they of great service to the North? 16. To what place was the Confederate capital removed? 17. Tell of the massing of troops in Virginia. 18. How was it shown on both sides that the greatness and duration of the struggle were not realized? 19. Tell of the efforts to supply the need at the South? 20. Does this history profess to give a full account of the Civil War? 21. Where were the bloodiest battles fought?

CHAPTER XLV.

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION, CONTINUED—1861.

Armies Against Virginia.—Virginia was threatened by four armies; one from Washington; one on the upper Potomac, under General Patterson; one near Fortress Monroe, under General Butler; and a fourth, under General McClellan, in the north-western part of the State—about 100,000 men in all. To meet these, there were about 65,000 Southern soldiers; 15,000 at Harper's Ferry; 20,000 at Manassas Junction; 8,000 near York-



BATTLE OF BIG BETHEL.

town; about the same number in Western Virginia, and the rest about Norfolk and on the lower Potomac.

First Blood Shed in Virginia.—On May 24th, Federal troops crossed from Washington into Virginia. Colonel Elsworth, of the New York Fire Zouaves, was shot by Mr. Jackson,

of Alexandria, for tearing down a Confederate flag from the top of his house. Jackson was killed in the next moment by Elsworth's men.

Big Bethel.—The first battle in Virginia occurred on June 10th, near Big Bethel Church, not very far from Hampton, between 3,000 of Butler's men and 1,200 of Magruder's force. The Federals were repulsed, after losing seventy-six men, while only one Confederate was killed and seven wounded.

Union Success in Western Virginia.—Most of the population in Western Virginia were in sympathy with the North. They furnished guides and information to General McClellan, and assisted him so effectually that the Confederates were unable to gain any foothold in that section.

Battle of Rich Mountain.—The fortified camp of the Confederates at Rich Mountain was flanked and taken by General Rosecrans, on July 11th. The Confederates were demoralized by the hardships and perils of retreating through the mountains. General Robert S. Garnett, their commander, was killed, and Colonel Pegram was captured. General H. A. Wise had some success in the Kanawha Valley against superior bodies of men. Even General Robert E. Lee, who was sent to command the troops in the southwestern part of the State, could effect nothing in face of the inaccessible country, the hostile population, the want of supplies, and the greatly outnumbering Federal forces, who at the close of the campaign held Northwestern Virginia and the Kanawha Valley.



R. S. GARNETT.



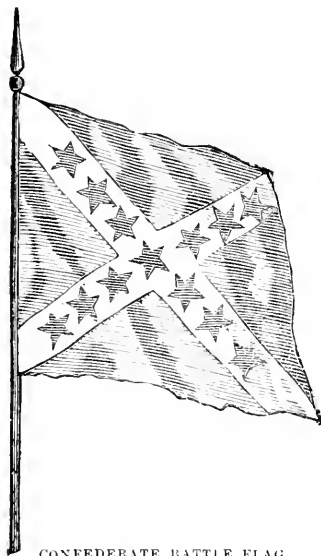
JOSEPH E. JOHNSTON.

General Johnston at Harper's Ferry.—General Johnston bent all his energies to organize and drill the raw troops which came to Harper's Ferry from all parts of the South.

He had cartridge-boxes and cartridges made in the village, and smuggled percussion caps from Baltimore, and collected horses

and wagons from the surrounding country. All the machinery from the armory was removed by June 15th, and Johnston moved his army from Harper's Ferry to a position farther up the Potomac to check the advance of a Federal force under General Patterson, so manœuvring his men as to make Patterson think them more numerous than they were.

Forward Movement from Washington.—The North was clamorous for active operations, and 35,000 men moved from



CONFEDERATE BATTLE FLAG.

Washington, under General McDowell, to drive Beauregard from Manassas Junction, and go from there "on to Richmond." This advance caused General Johnston to slip away from Patterson's front, and hasten with his men across the Shenandoah River and the Blue Ridge Mountains to join Beauregard. The General and part of the army reached Manassas on July 20th, others on the 21st, when the battle was in progress.

Battle of First Manassas, 1861.

The Confederates held the heights south of Bull Run, where they had thrown up earthworks. Beauregard intended to move his right wing round the Federal left, and get between them and Washington. The Federals, however, advanced so early on the morning of the 21st, that the Confederate movement had not begun. McDowell sent men enough to detain Beauregard's forces on the right, while he took the main attacking force to turn the Confederate left and seize the Manassas Gap Railroad. To meet this unexpected movement, the Confederate commanders were obliged to take up a new position of defence at right angles with Bull Run and their breastworks. General Beauregard reported their force on that morning, as 22,000 of his army with

twenty-nine cannon, and 6,000 of Johnston's army with twenty guns. The Federal army had 35,000 men and forty-nine guns.

"Stonewall" Jackson.—To strengthen the Confederate left against the coming attack, Johnston's 6,000 men and twenty guns were sent to reinforce the thin line of troops stationed there, and the battle raged throughout the hot summer day, on the plateau around the Henry House. When the first Confederate advance was driven back by superior numbers, General Bee, to encourage his weary and bleeding South Carolinians to fresh efforts of resistance, pointed to some Virginians just from the Shenandoah Valley, under General T. J. Jackson, exclaiming: "There stands Jackson like a stone wall; let us determine to die here, and we will conquer!" The Carolinians rallied bravely behind this living wall, but the heroic Bee fell dead in their midst. The struggle for the plateau above Young's Branch continued until 3 P. M. Rickett's splendid United States battery was captured and recaptured three separate times.



BARNARD E. BEE.

Kirby Smith's Opportune Arrival.—By 3 o'clock Johnston's 6,000 men, with less than 3,000 of Beauregard's, had fought for five hours, and repulsed five several Federal assaults. At this time a fresh Federal force was pushed still farther on to flank the Confederate left. At this very moment General Kirby Smith, with 1,700 men, a part of Johnston's force from the Valley, appeared on the field. General Smith had stopped the train which was bearing them to Manassas Junction, and hurried his men towards the sound of the firing. The advancing Federals were astonished and terrified to find fresh troops pouring musket-balls into their flank at a point where they expected no resistance.

Rout of the Federal Army.—A forward movement along Beauregard's whole line at this time drove the Federals entirely from the plateau. Early, hastening from the other end of the Confederate lines with three regiments, foiled a last effort to

extend the Federal right. The assailants were driven back everywhere at the point of the bayonet, and were soon in rapid retreat. The guns of Rickett's and Griffin's United States batteries, captured on the field, were turned upon their former comrades. Stuart and the cavalry rode upon them with shouts and sabre cuts. The retreat became a panic-stricken rout—a headlong flight, in which cannon, muskets, clothing, wagons, everything which could impede their progress, was thrown away by the fleeing multitude. General McDowell vainly attempted to rally the fugitives at Centreville, but terror was stronger than discipline, and the army which had marched proudly from Washington to destroy the “rebels” and capture Richmond poured back into the city a disorganized, demoralized mob.

Losses in the Battle.—The Federal loss was over 5,000 men, that of the Confederates 2,000; besides which twenty-nine fine cannon, thousands of muskets, small arms, ammunition, stores, and supplies of all sorts were found on the battle-field, which proved very valuable to the Confederates.

Astonishment at the Result of the Battle.—All reports of the battle show that both sides were surprised at the result. At 3 o'clock the Federal generals thought the day was theirs, and could not understand the panic and flight two hours later. Many southerners also thought the battle lost at that hour, and were amazed to find their over-matched men and guns victorious. The cause of this unlooked-for success was the determination of each Southern soldier to give his life to defend his rights and his home, while the different spirit of the Federal soldiery at that period is shown by the fact that “three-month volunteers” left the Federal army at the very moment when their comrades were advancing to the battle-field.

Different Effects of the Battle.—In the North, the advocates of the war were stirred up by indignation and rage to greater exertion and hatred against the South. An overweening confidence in Southern prowess and an unfounded contempt for Northern courage, caused discipline and vigor of action to decline in the Confederacy.



Acts of the United States Congress.—A few weeks before this first great battle the United States Congress ratified all Mr. Lincoln's unconstitutional orders; authorized 500,000 volunteers to be called for; increased the regular army and the navy; ordered ironclad ships and river gunboats to be built; took various other measures to strengthen the Federal power, and to meet these expenses laid taxes and borrowed money to the enormous amount of \$500,000,000.

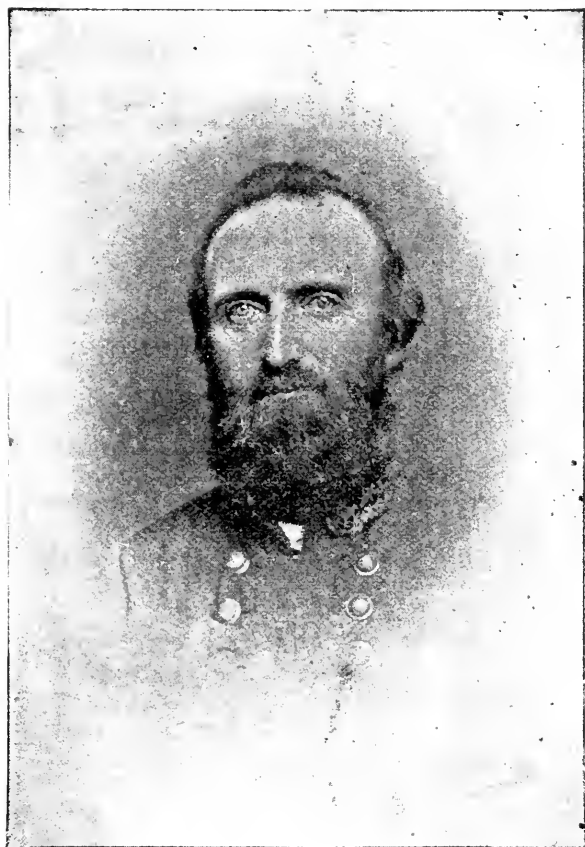
Acts of Confederate Congress.—The Confederate Congress called out 400,000 volunteers, issued \$100,000,000 treasury notes, and took other action to give firmness to their cause and government.

General McClellan in Command.—For losing the battle of Manassas General McDowell was removed from command of the Army of the Potomac, and General McClellan put in his place. Both sides then busied themselves in filling up and organizing the armies as the two Congresses made it practicable.

Ball's Bluff.—The only other fight of consequence in Virginia during this year was at Ball's Bluff, near Leesburg, where 1,700 Federal troops, under Colonel Baker, United States Senator from Oregon, were met by about the same number of Confederates, under General Evans, and were driven into the Potomac River with the loss of nearly 1,000 men, including their commander. The Confederates lost 156.

Restriction of the Press.—The Northern party in power now became absolutely intolerant. Not satisfied with the prescription, imprisonment, and confiscation of property meted out to all who were accused of favoring what it termed the "Rebellion," it now proceeded to attack and curtail the "liberty of the press," the great boast of American citizens. New York papers, especially, were punished for not approving of the war, and were forbidden to be carried in the mails. And these things went on for several years.

General T. J. Jackson.—General Jackson—Stonewall Jackson—was made a major-general, and was sent in the late fall, with his "Stonewall Brigade" and other troops to take position



T. J. Jackson,
General.

[This picture was selected for Lee's History by Mrs. T. J. Jackson.]

at Winchester and defend the Valley of Virginia against the Federals.¹

QUESTIONS.—1. By what armies was Virginia threatened? 2. How many soldiers did she have to oppose them? 3. Where was the first blood shed in the State? 4. What was the result of the fight at Big Bethel? 5. Why was the Federal cause successful in Western Virginia? 6. Tell of the battle of Rich Mountain. 7. Who was sent to command the Confederates in Western Virginia? 8. Why could he accomplish very little? 9. What was done by General Johnston at Harper's Ferry? 10. When and why did he leave there? 11. What was the feeling at the North, and what movements were made? 12. Describe the battle of First Manassas. 13. Tell of "Stonewall Jackson" and General Bee. 14. What was the result of General Kirby Smith's advance? 15. Describe the rout of the Federal army. 16. What losses were sustained by both sides? 17. Why were both sections of the country astonished at the results of the battle? 18. What reason is given for the Southern success? 19. What were the effects of the battle? 20. What acts were passed by the United States Congress? 21. By the Confederate Congress? 22. Who was now given command of the Federal army? 23. Tell of the fight at Ball's Bluff. 24. What restriction was put upon the press at the North? 25. Give a sketch of General T. J. Jackson (note). 26. Find the places on the map.

CHAPTER XLVI.

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION, CONTINUED—1861.

Civil War in Missouri.—The efforts of Missouri and Kentucky to preserve a neutral peace proved unavailing. The

¹ Jackson was a native of Clarksburg in Western Virginia. Early left a poor orphan boy, he worked and struggled until at last he obtained a warrant to the Military Academy at West Point. The first year he stood at the foot of his class, but by diligent study he rose so steadily that his classmates said in another year he would have reached the head of the class. In the Mexican War he was twice promoted on the field for gallant conduct. At its close he left the army and became a professor in the Virginia Military Institute at Lexington, Virginia. He was of medium height and square figure, ungraceful in movement, and abrupt in manner and speech. But his personal peculiarities were counterbalanced by his thorough integrity, courage and piety. He became a Presbyterian elder, and the superintendent of a negro Sunday-school, and was esteemed as a good, odd, and useful man. He proved to be very like Oliver Cromwell in his earnest piety, his influence over his men, and his marvellous military skill.

Federal Colonel Lyon, attacked the militia camp of Missouri, overpowered the State troops, and killed a number of influential citizens. Civil war broke out at many points. The governor and others tried to place the State in friendly relations with the Confederacy, but the United States power was too strong for them. Recruiting for both armies was carried on, and the Southern sympathizers got the better of the Union troops in various small engagements. To prevent the invasion of Arkansas, General Ben McCullough marched into Missouri, and united his forces with the State troops of General Sterling Price. In the battle of Wilson's Springs, on August 10th, between the two armies nearly equal in strength, the Federals were defeated with the loss of 1,000 men, a number of cannon and small arms. General Lyon was killed, and General Sigel succeeded to the command.



UNITED STATES FLAG.

Missouri Neutral.—Missouri might have been won for the Confederacy, but the government at Richmond could not furnish arms and equipments for the volunteers who would have joined its armies. The Southern successes in the West were gained with old-fashioned shot-guns and hunting rifles. Failure to put down their opponents in Missouri caused Harney, Lyon, Fremont and Hunter to be displaced in turn, and General Halleck was put in command in November.



H. W. HALLECK.

Kentucky's Position.—Governor Magoffin tried hard to keep Kentucky wholly neutral. The people were divided in sentiment, and would gladly have maintained peaceful relations with both the North and the South. To comply with the wishes of the State, the Confederate government pro-

mised to send no troops to Kentucky unless Federal soldiers went there. The Federal government had no respect for any rights of a State, and soon sent General Robert Anderson, the defender of Sumter, to take military control of Kentucky. The Confederate authorities were then constrained to take positions in the State to protect Tennessee and Virginia.

Columbus and Paducah.—To prevent the Federal forces from fortifying Columbus, Kentucky, which commanded the channel of the Mississippi and controlled the passage of the river between Kentucky and Missouri, General Polk¹ took possession of the place on September 3d, and put up strong de-



LEONIDAS POLK.

fences. He wished also to seize Paducah at the mouth of the Tennessee, but before he had sufficient force to do it, General Grant, commanding the United States troops at Cairo, took possession of Paducah on September 10th. By this time the Federal government had built gunboats, and strengthened the river steamboats with iron plates and cannon, and had abundant means to defend Paducah, and to

send expeditions up the Tennessee and Cumberland rivers, against which the Confederates had no means of contending.

East Tennessee.—The Confederate General Zollicoffer was sent to East Tennessee, where the people, like those of Western Virginia, were unfriendly to the South. To forestall the advance of the Federal troops, he was obliged to cross the Cumberland Mountains into Kentucky. The command of the Confederate forces in Central Kentucky was entrusted to General Simon B. Buckner, who stationed himself at Bowling Green. The line from there to Columbus was the northern line of defence of the Southern Confederacy.

¹ Like others of his noble countrymen, Bishop Leonidas Polk, of Louisiana, felt it his duty to take an active part in the Southern movement. He had entered the ministry of the Episcopal Church, from the United States Army, and now offered his services to defend the righteous cause of the South. He was commissioned as Major-General, and given command of Western Tennessee and Alabama, to which Western Kentucky and Eastern Missouri and Arkansas were soon added.

Battle of Belmont.—General Grant was ordered to operate along the Mississippi so as to prevent Confederate troops being sent to reinforce General Price, who was advancing from Arkansas. Hoping to surprise the Confederates at Belmont opposite Columbus, Grant, under cover of his gunboats, landed several thousand soldiers some miles above the town, on November 7th, and marched them rapidly on Belmont. He met with stout resistance. General Polk dispatched 2,000 men from Columbus, by whose aid the Federals were driven to their boats. The victory left the control of the Mississippi still in the hands of the Confederates, and the Congress at Richmond thanked the officers and men who won it.

Port Royal Captured by Dupont, 1861.—The capture of Fort Hatteras, on the North Carolina coast, and of Port Royal Harbor, in South Carolina, strengthened the blockade, and weakened the Confederates along the coast. Port Royal furnished an admirable shelter from storms for the blockading vessels, and its capture laid the whole South Carolina coast with its wealthy "sea islands," open to their attacks.

Futile Effort at the Mouth of the Mississippi.—A river steamer on the lower Mississippi had been covered by the Confederates with iron plates, armed with a strong iron beak, and renamed the "ram" *Manassas*. With this ram and some few fire-ships an attempt was made to destroy the Federal fleet at the mouth of the Mississippi. The attack, in which one big Federal vessel was pierced by the ram and the fire-ships were let loose among the rest, frightened them all so that they stood out to sea. But the *Manassas* was more injured than her enemies. The blockading fleet returned to its position, and nothing came of the effort.

Threatened Trouble With England.—England and France had before this acknowledged the Confederate States as "a belligerent power," and had declared themselves neutral in the American war. The Confederate government then sent James M. Mason, of Virginia, as commissioner to England, and John Slidell, of Louisiana, to France, to see what could be done for

the advantage of the South. These gentlemen and their secretaries ran the blockade from Charleston to Havana, where they embarked for Europe on the British mail steamer *Trent*. By the law of nations, they should have been safe on a neutral vessel; but law was little respected at this time by Federal officers. The United States war-vessel *San Jacinto*, commanded by Captain Charles Wilkes, was cruising near Havana. Learning that the Confederate commissioners were on the *Trent*, Captain Wilkes stopped her, boarded her, and took from her by force Messrs. Mason, Slidell, McFarland, and Eustis. Wilkes received great praise from the North, and a gold medal from the Federal Congress, for this violation of international law. England, however, indignant at this "outrage," at once demanded that the prisoners should be restored to her, intimating that serious consequences would follow if they were not speedily liberated. A contest between England and the United States would have been greatly to the Confederate advantage. But Mr. Lincoln and his Cabinet were too wise to incur a foreign war. They simply said that Captain Wilkes had acted without any authority from Washington, and ordered the prisoners to be delivered to Lord Lyons, the British minister, at Washington.

QUESTIONS.—1. Tell of the civil strife in Missouri. 2. Who were the commanders there? 3. What was the position of Kentucky? 4. Why could she not remain neutral? 5. Tell of Bishop Polk (note). 6. What efforts did he make to keep control of the Mississippi? 7. Why could he not fortify Paducah? 8. What was done in East Tennessee? 9. What was the northern line of defence for the Confederacy? 10. Describe the battle of Belmont. 11. What was the effect of the capture of Port Royal by Admiral Dupont? 12. What fruitless effort was made at the mouth of the Mississippi? 13. Tell of the capture of Mason and Slidell by Captain Wilkes. 14. How was trouble with England averted? 15. Have you found the places on the map?

CHAPTER XLVII.

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION, CONTINUED—1862.

Mr. Lincoln Orders a General Advance.—Eighteen hundred and sixty-two opened with cold, stormy weather. To pacify the murmurs against the vast expenditure of money without apparent results, Mr. Lincoln astonished the country by issuing an order that, on February 22nd, all the Federal armies everywhere should advance against the enemy. In Kentucky and Tennessee the order was forestalled.

Zollicoffer Killed at Mill Spring.—General Zollicoffer, in eastern Kentucky, attacked the Federal force at Mill Spring, hoping to defeat it before it was reinforced. His death, early in the action, was followed by the defeat of the Confederates, with a heavy loss of men and guns. As a consequence of this battle, East Tennessee was soon in possession of the Union army.



ZOLLICOFFER.

Forts Henry and Donelson.—In Western Kentucky also, the Southern cause met with disaster. General Polk, at Columbus, still controlled the Mississippi River. General Albert Sidney Johnston, commanding the Western Department of the Confederacy, had his headquarters at Bowling Green. The Cumberland and Tennessee Rivers were between the two positions. A fleet of Federal gunboats and transports was ready to sail up these rivers into the heart of the Confederacy. To prevent this, Fort Henry was built on the eastern bank of the Tennessee, and Fort Donelson on the western bank of the Cumberland, just south of the Kentucky line, where the rivers are about twelve miles apart. Both forts were stronger on the water front than towards the land. Fort Henry was much the smaller, and was held by some 2,200 men, with seventeen cannon.

Capture of Fort Henry.—On February 6th Fort Henry was

attacked by seven gunboats under Commodore Foote. After a severe bombardment, and the bursting of some of the large guns in the fort, it was found impossible to continue any effective resistance. When most of the garrison had escaped to Fort Donelson, General Tilghman surrendered Fort Henry, himself and sixty men. This opening of the Tennessee River to the Federal gunboats was a tremendous blow to the South, and the ill-effects of it were soon felt by the destruction they speedily wrought as far down as Florence, Alabama.

Importance of Fort Donelson.—At Nashville, on the Cumberland River, the Confederates had collected large supplies of valuable stores, which the Federal generals were anxious to capture. To make that possible, Fort Donelson had to be overcome. To strengthen the fort, General Albert Sidney Johnston sent some 14,000 men, under Generals Buckner, Pillow, and Floyd, who had brought his troops from Western Virginia. Donelson was defended by earthworks and heavy batteries. There was also an outer line of breastworks and rifle-pits, and a strong abatis—forest trees cut so as to fall on each other with the branches pointing outward—between them and the fort. General Grant moved against Donelson, on February 12th, with 17,000 men. Until the 14th he waited for reinforcements and the gunboats, keeping up a destructive cannonading and some desultory fighting in the meanwhile. A severe storm of sleet and snow set in, and many wounded soldiers were frozen to death. On the 14th the fort was invested, and the fleet began the attack. The powerful Confederate water batteries struck the gunboats 150 times in an hour and a half, and beat them off. Assaults on the breastworks were also repulsed, but the Confederate commanders found that they could not maintain the position against the heavy forces which were coming against them on the river and the land. A council of war held at night determined to leave the fort and cut their way through the besieging army to Nashville.

Gallant Fighting.—By dawn of the 15th the Federal right, which held the main road to Nashville, and the centre were

strongly attacked by the Confederates. The fighting was gallant on both sides, but little by little the Northern line was forced back, and the road to Nashville was cleared. But fresh Federal troops were hurried forward. General Grant, who had gone to consult with Commodore Foote, returned to the field, a forward movement was ordered, and the Confederates were driven back to their works. Both sides slept on their arms, exhausted with cold, hunger and fatigue.

Fall of Donelson.—The officers within the fort agreed that surrender was inevitable; but Floyd, chief in command, turned the fort over to Pillow, and escaped in the night with some of his own troops. Pillow also got safely away. Forrest's cavalry followed their example. General Buckner, thus deserted by his superiors, sent a flag of truce to General Grant, on Sunday morning, February 16th, asking for terms of surrender. "Unconditional surrender" was demanded, and to this Buckner was forced to yield, giving up between 10,000 and 14,000 prisoners, all the guns, several thousand horses and considerable stores.

Results.—The fall of Donelson filled the North with joy, but brought great misfortune to the South. The Confederate forces had to withdraw from Western Kentucky and evacuate Columbus, "The Gibraltar of the West." Nashville, with the stores accumulated there, was taken by General Buell, and the whole of Tennessee was, for a time, occupied by the Federal armies. General Halleck began the campaign with 100,000 Federal troops, Johnston had not more than 55,000, and this number was greatly diminished by losses in battle, by the surrender at Donelson, and by straggling and desertion, which always follow a defeat.

Battle of Pea Ridge or Elkhorn.—By great exertions General Johnston assembled 35,000 troops in Northern Mississippi, near Corinth, early in April. Reinforcements from Arkansas were prevented by the advance of Curtis's army into that State. General Van Dorn collected all the Southern troops possible to repel the invasion. With some 16,000 men, under Price and McCullough, and 4,000 Indians, under General Pike, Van

Dorn met Curtis in the Northwestern part of the State. In spite of severe cold and a rough country he got into the rear of Curtis's entrenchments on Pea Ridge and attacked him on March 7th. The fighting was severe on both sides. The Confederates forced back the Federal right nearly a mile. In the centre, where they had less success, Generals McCullough and McIntosh were killed and General Price was severely wounded. The troops were so much disheartened by the loss of their generals that Van Dorn fell slowly back the next day, carrying all his artillery and baggage.



ALBERT PIKE.

Battle of Shiloh—Death of Albert Sidney Johnston, 1862.—By April 3d, General Grant had 38,000 troops protected by gunboats at Pittsburg Landing, on the south bank of the Tennessee River. As General Buell was approaching to join Grant with an equal force, General Johnston wished to attack Grant early on April 5th, but his men did not get into position until night. On the morning of the 6th the Confederates attacked Grant's position around Shiloh Church. They carried the front line, killed General W. H. L. Wallace, captured Prentiss with 3,000 men, and drove back the Federals all along the line, though they made a brave resistance. At 2 o'clock, when victory seemed assured to the Southerners, General Johnston, who had been constantly in the hottest part of the fight, had the great artery in his leg cut by a minie-ball. There was no surgeon near, the bleeding could not be stopped, and the gallant soldier died in a little while. He was an irretrievable loss to the Southern army and cause.



A. S. JOHNSTON.

End of the Battle.—The death of their trusted commander was kept from the Southern troops, and General Beauregard carried on the contest. The Federal army had been driven to the river bank, and the shelter of their gunboats. There was still an hour of daylight, and another vigorous assault by the

eager Confederates upon the demoralized enemy would have forced them into the river or compelled them to surrender. At this moment the gunboats opened fire with shot and shell, but the Confederates were sheltered by the height of the bluff, and were less and less exposed as they neared their retreating foe. Absolute victory seemed within their grasp, but General Beauregard, thinking that his men were exposed to a murderous fire, and were much exhausted, ordered them to fall back from the field. Most of Grant's artillery, thousands of prisoners, numbers of flags and the Federal camp had been captured, and Beauregard telegraphed to Richmond that he had gained "a complete victory." During the night, Buell brought up as many fresh troops as the Southern army contained. He attacked in the morning, and gradually drove the Confederates to their original position. In this bloody battle the Confederate loss was 10,699, that of the Federals 13,573.

Fall of Island No. 10.—When Columbus was evacuated, the garrison was taken to Island No. 10, forty miles down the Mississippi. For a month the defence of the river was kept up there, but on April 8th, the day after Shiloh, Commodore Foote with his gunboats captured the Island, with its powerful guns, and 6,700 men. The upper Mississippi, the Tennessee and the Cumberland were now open to Federal advance.

QUESTIONS.—1. What orders were issued by Mr. Lincoln in 1862? 2. Tell of the battle of Mill Spring and General Zollicoffer's death. 3. Who commanded the Western Department of the Confederacy? 4. Describe Forts Henry and Donelson. 5. When and how was Fort Henry captured? 6. Why was it important to strengthen Fort Donelson, and how was it defended? 7. Describe the attack upon it. 8. Who were the commanders on both sides? 9. What did the Confederate council of war decide upon? 10. Why could they not do it? 11. Tell of the fall of Fort Donelson. 12. What were the results of this disaster? 13. Describe the battle of Pea Ridge or Elkhorn. 14. Tell of the battle of Shiloh. 15. What great general was killed there? 16. How did the battle end? 17. What were the losses on both sides? 18. What was the effect of the capture of Island No. 10? 19. Look out all the places on the map.

CHAPTER XLVIII.

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION, CONTINUED—1862.

Jackson at Bath and Romney.—The first of January, 1862, Jackson moved from Winchester northwestward. Knowing that the enemy would not expect an advance over the mountain roads covered with snow, he began the rapid marches for which his soldiers were called "foot-cavalry." Moving to the Potomac, he tore up the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad, destroyed several dams on the Chesapeake and Ohio Canal, and threatened the people of Maryland with invasion, so that reinforcements were sent there to oppose him. He then turned westward in the night, crossed two mountain ranges, struck the Federal camp at Romney, and drove the enemy from that whole region. After this the army returned to Winchester with their fingers, ears, and toes frost-bitten, but in fine spirits, notwithstanding the hardships of the campaign.

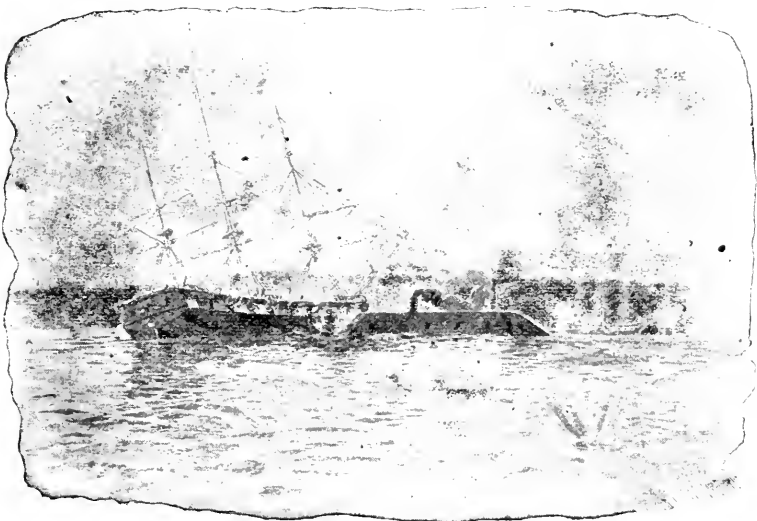
Capture of Roanoke Island and Other Ports.—Roanoke Island, an important Confederate position on the coast of North Carolina, between Albemarle and Pamlico Sounds, was held by 3,000 men and a squadron of eight small gunboats under Captain Lynch. A force was dispatched to the island from Hampton Roads, consisting of more than 100 vessels, some of them strong war-ships, and 16,000 men. It was impossible for the island and its defences to withstand these powerful assailants, and it fell into the hands of Commodore Goldsborough and General Burnside. This victory gave Albemarle Sound to the Federals, and left the southeastern part of Virginia at their mercy. Fort Pulaski, defending Savannah; Fort Macon, at the mouth of Beaufort harbor; New Berne, in North Carolina, and several harbors on the Florida coast were also seized by the Northern war-vessels. The capture of these places left fewer shelters for vessels which dared the dangers of the Federal blockade. The

risk of their capture was greatly increased, and the number of "blockade runners" became constantly less.

The Ram Virginia.—One considerable success cheered the Confederates in the midst of so much discouragement. When the Federals evacuated the Gosport Navy Yard, they scuttled and sunk the fine steam frigate *Merrimac*. The Confederates succeeded in raising the vessel, and remodelled it on a new plan furnished by John Mercer Brooke, the inventor of the deep-sea-sounding apparatus. The decks were cut down, and a low roof put on something in the shape of a tortoise. This roof and the sides were covered with thick iron plates. A strong



J. M. BROOKE.



SINKING OF THE CUMBERLAND.

iron beak was fastened to the prow. The vessel was armed with ten heavy guns, and renamed the *Virginia*. On March 8th the ram steamed out of Norfolk Harbor, in company with two small gunboats, and advanced towards the Federal fleet in Hampton Roads. The shot hurled at her glanced from her iron sides.

She fired her guns, and, making straight for the large wooden frigate, *Cumberland*, rammed such a hole in her side that within an hour she sunk, and nearly half her crew were drowned. The frigate *Congress* avoided the beak of the *Virginia* by running into shallow water, but was captured and burned. The other Federal vessels escaped destruction in the same way, though they suffered severely from the cannon on the ram



ADMIRAL BUCHANAN, and the gunboats.

Coming of the Monitor.—This unexpected destruction of their fine war-vessels struck the North with terror. All the seaboard towns seemed to fear immediate attack. But when the *Virginia* appeared the next morning, hoping to destroy the *Minnesota* and other Federal vessels, she was met by an unexpected antagonist, the *Monitor*, built by Ericsson, which had come into Hampton Roads during the night. With a revolving iron turret upon her flat, iron top, the *Monitor* looked like “a cheese box on a plank.” She was very strong, and more easily managed than the *Virginia*, but neither one of the queer looking craft could do serious harm to the other, and after the *Monitor* had withdrawn into shallow water where the *Virginia* could not follow her, the *Virginia* went back to Norfolk. This first battle between ironclad ships, changed the mode of naval warfare all over the world. This test of the *Monitor* quieted the fears of the Northern cities, and the Federal government ordered other monitors and ironclad ships to be built with all speed.

Southern Successes on the Coast.—Later on in the year there were small Confederate successes on the South Carolina coast. Six thousand Federal troops were beaten off at Secessionville in June, and in October an attempt to seize the railroad near Pocotaligo was defeated.

McClellan at Centreville.—Most of the Southern troops had enlisted for only twelve months, and their generals had an anxious time in the spring of 1862, until permanent re-enlistment

was secured. Johnston's force at Centreville dwindled to 30,000, while McClellan had 120,000 in Washington. General Johnston quietly drew his insufficient army into strong earthworks behind the Rappahannock, and when McClellan moved forward, on March 10th, he found the Confederate army gone and the bridges over which it had passed destroyed. He had determined to attack Richmond from another point, and said it was impossible to follow Johnston through the spring mud.

Battle of Kernstown.—When Johnston withdrew from Centreville, Jackson also fell back, with his little army, from Winchester. Being ordered to prevent the Federal forces in his front from joining McClellan, Jackson retraced his steps, and on March 23d, with only 2,747 men, attacked the Federal forces, more than double his own, at Kernstown, near Winchester. Although the Southern force was obliged to retire from the field at nightfall, it had done so much and had excited such alarm at Washington that reinforcements were sent to the Valley, and Banks was prevented from going elsewhere. This result was so important that the Confederate Congress gave Jackson a vote of thanks for Kernstown.

The Armies About Yorktown.—Mr. Lincoln wished General McClellan to advance on Richmond by way of Fredericksburg. McClellan preferred going by Fortress Monroe. Before his movements were decided on, General Johnston took his army to Richmond, and from there to Yorktown, to meet McClellan. The season was a rainy one, and the long marches over the muddy roads were very trying to men and horses, but the soldiers kept in good spirits and bore their hardships with fine courage.

Fight at Williamsburg.—It took 400 vessels one month to transport McClellan's men from Washington to Fortress Monroe, and almost another month was consumed in laying siege to Yorktown, where Magruder had thrown up heavy earthworks. To disconcert McClellan's plans, General Johnston had the guns he could not move spiked, quietly evacuated Yorktown, and took up the march for Richmond. The Confederate rear was

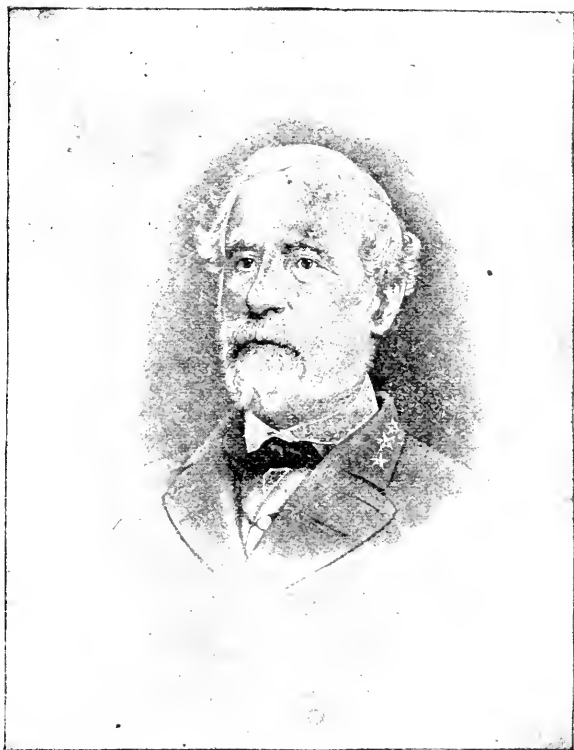
struck at Williamsburg by Federal troops on May 5th, but held its ground until the artillery and wagons got safely away, and then followed the rest of the army.

Federal Ships in the James.—This abandoning the Peninsula made it impossible for Southern troops to hold Norfolk, and they were ordered to Richmond. The war-vessels there moved up James River, the Confederate property was destroyed, and the city passed into Federal possession. To the disappointment of the South, it proved impossible to take the *Virginia* up James River, even at high tide. She ran aground and had to be blown up to save her from the enemy. James River was now left unprotected, and the Federal ironclads at once steamed up towards Richmond, the *Galena* and the *Monitor* among them. Obstructions in the river and heavy batteries on shore stopped them at Drewry's Bluff, eight miles below the city. They were seriously injured by the guns from Fort Darling, while they could effect nothing against the high bluff, and withdrew to City Point,

Seven Pines or Fair Oaks.—By the last of May, McClellan's army had come near Richmond by way of West Point, and lay along both sides of the Chickahominy, where it threw up heavy intrenchments. The swamps around the river were almost impassable from the rains. On May 31st, General Johnston attacked the two Federal corps of Keyes and Heintzelman, hoping to destroy them before they could be reinforced. The same waters which were to keep back his enemies rendered his own movements slow. Reinforcements reached the United States troops before Johnston's plan was fully carried out, and rendered his victory incomplete. Both sides lost heavily, but the Federals most severely in men, arms and stores. General Johnston was wounded in the evening so seriously that he was disabled for many months.

General Robert E. Lee.—General Robert E. Lee¹ was now

¹ General Lee was the youngest son of "Light Horse Harry Lee" of the Revolution. He graduated with high honors at West Point, distinguished himself greatly during the Mexican War, and had since filled various responsible military positions. He was equal, if not superior, to any man in the service, and had been re-



most truly & affly yours
R. E. Lee

assigned to the command of the Army of Northern Virginia, and became the most prominent figure in the great struggle.

QUESTIONS.—1. What nickname was given to Stonewall Jackson's soldiers? 2. Tell of Jackson's movements towards the Potomac, and what he did there. 3. How did he follow this up? 4. Under what circumstances was Roanoke Island captured by the Federals? 5. What other forts were also taken, and how did this affect the Southern cause? 6. Describe the ram *Virginia*, and tell of her attack upon the Federal ships. 7. Tell of the fight between the *Virginia* and the *Monitor*. 8. What successes did the South have on the coast? 9. What movements were made by Johnston and McClellan in the spring of 1862? 10. What battle was fought by General Jackson near Winchester? 11. What two armies gathered near Yorktown? 12. How did General Johnston disconcert McClellan's plans? 13. What caused the fight at Williamsburg? 14. What was the fate of the *Virginia* and the result of her destruction? 15. Tell of the battle of Seven Pines or Fair Oaks. 16. Who now became the commander of the Army of Northern Virginia? 17. Give a sketch of General R. E. Lee (note). 18. Find on the map all the places mentioned.

CHAPTER XLIX.

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION, CONTINUED—1862.

Jackson in the Valley, 1862.—From Kernstown, Jackson took his army to Swift Run Gap in the Blue Ridge, where his men could be re-enlisted and reorganized, and where he could, through his scouts, watch the enemy. It was discovered that besides Banks's force in the Valley three other armies were moving from different directions to surround and destroy Jackson. Milroy, from the west, was coming along behind the North Mountain; Fremont was advancing from the northwest, and Shields from the east. Jackson had about 15,000 men, to meet between 45,000 and 60,000 coming against him.

peatedly promoted, and was expected to succeed General Scott in command of the United States army. He loved his country and the Union, but he felt that his highest allegiance was to his native State, and when Virginia left the Union, Lee resigned from the United States army and offered his sword and his services to her. You will see what a noble man and great soldier he proved to be.

Defeat of Banks.—Moving rapidly, first south and then west, he struck the advance of Milroy's army at McDowell, on May 8th, so severely that they retreated in haste. Resting his men a few days, Jackson then recrossed the North Mountain and the main Valley, completely crushed a part of Banks's army at Front Royal, on the 23rd, and then turned suddenly upon Banks himself, who was falling back towards Winchester. The Federals retreated hastily, terrified at Jackson's rapid and unexpected movements. The retreat soon became a panic-stricken rout. The fortifications at Winchester were carried, on the 25th, by a bayonet charge, and the Federals fled through the town. The inhabitants rushed into the streets to welcome their deliverers from Northern oppression. Banks's fugitives did not stop running until they were safely in Maryland. Three thousand prisoners, with heavy cannon and small arms, were taken, and so many stores that Banks was called "Jackson's commissary."

Defeat of Fremont and Shields.—The number of Jackson's men was greatly magnified by the fright of his opponents, and alarm again prevailed lest he should march upon Washington. To strengthen this fear, Jackson went almost to Harper's Ferry, thereby causing a large Federal force to be sent from Fredericksburg to the Valley. He then suddenly retraced his steps and carried the prisoners and long wagon trains taken from Banks safely up the Valley. Fremont and Shields tried to head him off and defeat him, but with swift movement he passed between them and beat them in detail. They were moving on parallel lines, with the Shenandoah River between them. On June 7th, Jackson repulsed Fremont at Cross Keys, with Ewell's division. The next morning he took his men to the east side of the Shenandoah, burned the bridge to prevent Fremont following him, fell upon Shields and drove him down the Valley with the loss of all his artillery and many prisoners. This time Jackson did not follow.

Death of Ashby—Result of the Campaign.—Jackson's gallant cavalry officer, General Turner Ashby, was killed in a charge during this last battle. During the month of the campaign

Jackson had out-generaled and out-fought three armies, each containing more than his 15,000 men. His army had marched 500 miles, and had captured thousands of prisoners and millions of dollars' worth of cannon, horses, wagons and stores. It was now to play an important part in the struggle around Richmond.

Preparations for Fighting at Richmond, 1862.—By the middle of June Lee's army numbered 65,000 men, and the fortifications of Richmond were in good condition to defend the city. McClellan's army of 115,000 lay behind immensely strong earthworks containing powerful siege guns. McClellan was constantly telegraphing for reinforcements, insisting that Lee's army was much stronger than his own.

Jackson Summoned to Richmond.—When Lee's preparations were completed he called Jackson from the Valley to take part in the attack on McClellan. To conceal the plan, 10,000 men were sent with much publicity to Jackson, who were quietly returned at once to Richmond. The Valley army now set out with all speed and with the greatest secrecy. The soldiers were forbidden to answer questions or give any information. Mail-riders and other persons whom they met were turned around and taken along with the army.¹

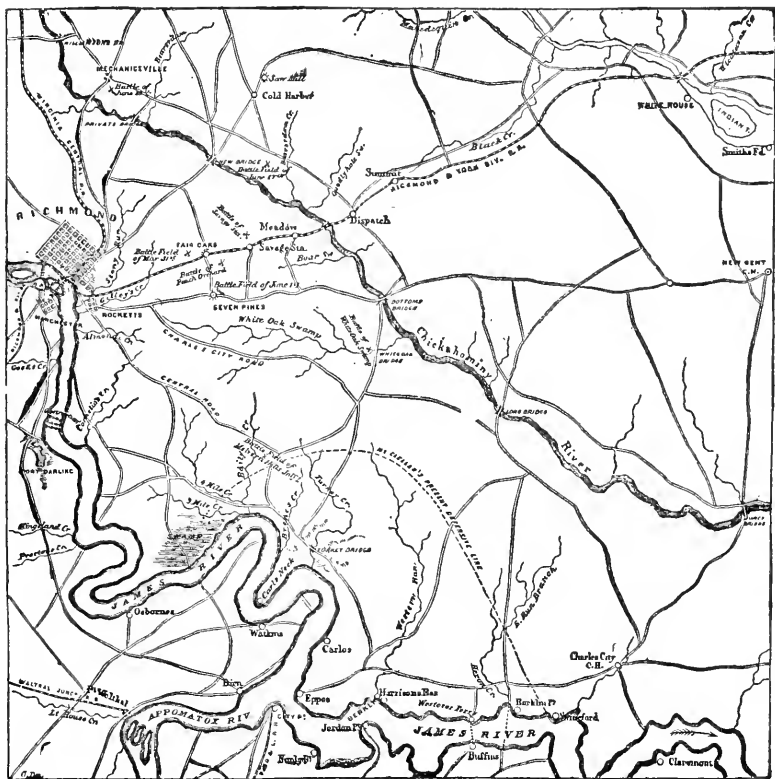


J. E. B. STUART.

Stuart's Ride Round McClellan.—Wishing to ascertain the exact position of McClellan's forces, which lay north of the Chickahominy, General Lee sent General J. E. B. Stuart to ascertain the whereabouts of the troops, the roads and the bridges. With 1,200 cavalry and four pieces of horse artillery, Stuart set out on the right of the Federal army and passed entirely round it. In the long ride he had several encounters with the enemy, captured a number of prisoners and

¹ General Jackson, it is said, having ridden to examine a side road, in returning to the main route fell in with a soldier, from whom he tried to obtain some information. The only answer the soldier would give was "I don't know." The General then said, a little impatiently, "You are strangely ignorant for a soldier." "Yes," replied the man, knowing well to whom he was speaking, "Old Jack said we wasn't to know nothin', and I don't know nothin'."

horses, destroyed valuable stores, and brought to General Lee the information he desired.¹



MAP OF SCENE OF THE SEVEN DAYS' BATTLES.

Seven Days' Fight.—When Lee learned where to find his adversary, he determined to attack him without farther waiting. The plan was for Jackson's army to move round the Federal

¹ "Jeb" Stuart was a Virginian, only twenty-seven years old, when he left the United States army for the Confederate service. He was of a joyous disposition, a lover of horses and dogs and of lively music. Knowing no fear, he contrived and executed the most daring military movements. Like Jackson and Lee, he was an humble, earnest Christian. He never uttered an oath, permitted no swearing around him, never drank intoxicating liquor, and always carried his mother's Bible with him.

right and attack them in the rear on June 25th. But the road was too long, and the Valley troops did not get into position until the next day. At 3 P. M. of the 26th, A. P. Hill attacked the Federals at Mechanicsville and drove them to their intrenchments at Beaver Dam Creek, which they abandoned during the night and fell back to Gaines's Mill. The next day Lee left 28,000 men under Magruder and Huger south of the Chickahominy to defend Richmond, and, with the rest of his army under Longstreet, A. P. and D. H. Hill, joined Jackson in a prolonged attack on the Federal army on the fortified heights of Cold Harbor and Gaines's Mill. From midday the battle raged. At nightfall the Confederates, rushing forward with their piercing "rebel yell," made a bayonet charge, and drove the Federal soldiers in precipitate flight from the defences they had thought impregnable.

McClellan's Retreat.—McClellan now abandoned his position, the fortifying of which had cost him so much labor and expense, and turned his course towards James River, where he would have the shelter of his gunboats. He crossed quickly to the south of the Chickahominy, destroyed immense quantities of stores, left his sick and wounded to the mercy of his enemy, and burned the bridges behind him. To mask his retreat, his men in the fortifications in front of Magruder and Huger were retained and an artillery fire kept up there, but by the evening of the 28th his movement was ascertained, and Lee ordered his men to pursue, and, if possible, to prevent it. At Savage Station, where immense supplies had been destroyed by McClellan's orders, Magruder inflicted great injury on the Federal rear, but could not cut off its retreat.



GEO. B. MCCLELLAN.

Malvern Hill.—The retreating army continued its march, closely followed by the Confederates. In the bloody fights of White Oak Swamp and Frazier's Farm, on June 30th, the Federals suffered severely. Pressing on, during the night, they gained the strong position of Malvern Hill, where their artillery

could sweep the open ground along their whole front. It was impossible to use any large force of Confederate artillery, and, during the afternoon of July 1st, repeated efforts on Lee's part failed to dislodge McClellan from his strong position. Lee made preparations for a more vigorous assault on Malvern Hill the next morning, but McClellan again retreated during the night to Harrison's Landing, where he reached the desired protection of his gunboats. Nothing more could be done against his enemy, and Lee took his army back to Richmond.

Results of the Seven Days' Fights.—Neither side was satisfied with the result of this series of bloody battles. Instead of destroying Lee's army and capturing Richmond, McClellan's great force had been compelled to retreat with immense losses. At first the Southern generals had only hoped to repulse the great besieging host, but after the victory at Gaines's Mill, Lee laid his plans to destroy that host in detail. Many causes concurred to frustrate these plans, and McClellan, as we have seen, got away with more men than Lee had ever had. The killed and wounded in the Federal army were reported at 15,000, on the Southern side 16,782. More than 10,000 prisoners, including officers of rank, fifty-two pieces of artillery, and upwards of 35,000 stand of small arms, with stores and supplies of all sorts, were captured by the Confederates.

McClellan and Lincoln.—McClellan's defeat and retreat caused great mortification and grief throughout the North, and Mr. Lincoln called for 300,000 more volunteers. The President and the General were not good friends, and McClellan complained that the Washington authorities tried to thwart his plans and destroy his army. To see the truth for himself, Mr. Lincoln went to Harrison's Landing and reviewed the army, which was 86,000 strong, on July 8th. Lee had never more than 81,000 around Richmond, including Jackson's corps. McClellan insisted that he must be reinforced, and attack Richmond again. He was ordered to the Potomac, and the commands of Banks, Fremont and McDowell were consolidated and placed under General John Pope.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was Jackson's position in the Valley? 2. What armies were moving against him, and what force had he to meet them? 3. Tell of his fight at McDowell, and of his success at Winchester. 4. How and where did he defeat Fremont and Shields? 5. What were the results of this campaign? 6. What preparations were now made for the fighting at Richmond? 7. Whom did General Lee summon to Richmond, and how were his plans concealed? 8. Tell the story of Jackson and the soldier (note). 9. Give an account of General Stuart's ride. 10. Give a sketch of J. E. B. Stuart (note). 11. Tell of the battles of Mechanicsville and Gaines's Mill. 12. What effect had these fights upon McClellan? 13. Did not Lee's army follow him? 14. Where did the next battles take place? 15. Tell of the battle of Malvern Hill. 16. What were the results of the Seven Days' Fights? 17. What captures did the Southern army make? 18. Tell of McClellan and Lincoln. 19. Who was now given command of the Federal army? 20. Find the battle-fields on the map.

CHAPTER L.

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION, CONTINUED—1862.

Halleck and Pope.—General Halleck was brought from the West and made commander-in-chief of the Federal armies, at the same time that Pope was appointed to the Army of Virginia. In one of Pope's first orders he said, "I have come from the West, where we have alway seen the backs of our enemies—from an army whose business it has been to seek the adversary, and to beat him when found." This boasting made him unpopular with his army.



R. S. EWELL.

Cedar Mountain—Pope's Army.—General Lee sent Jackson and his corps to meet Pope, who was moving with 40,000 men upon the railroad junction at Gordonsville. On August 9th, Jackson was attacked by Banks at Cedar Mountain, but the Federals were repulsed and driven from the field. Lee now brought most of his men from Richmond to Gordonsville. Jackson soon moved off towards the northwest, and Longstreet advanced nearer the

line of the railroad held by Pope. Pope's army was the most destructive which had yet invaded Virginia. By the general's order, any man might be treated as a spy, who was peaceably engaged at his home, and who did not at once take the oath of allegiance to the United States. Under the same orders, farms were laid waste, dwellings dismantled or destroyed, farm implements, furniture and private property of all sorts were either to be carried off or destroyed. Everything was ruthlessly taken or rendered useless to the owners.

Jackson Captures Manassas Junction.—Crossing the upper fords of the Rappahannock, Jackson's march was hidden from the enemy by the Bull Run Mountains. On August 26th, he passed eastward through Thoroughfare Gap to a point between Pope's army and Washington. The first notice the Federals had that Jackson was anywhere near was the capture of Manassas Junction with 300 prisoners, eight guns, ten locomotives, seven trains of cars, and immense stores of all kinds. The hungry, ragged Southerners took what they could use and burned the rest.

Battles of Second Manassas.—Jackson's situation was critical. He was between the divisions of Pope's army, greatly larger than his own, and Longstreet was still miles away. Pope ordered McDowell to move upon Jackson's rear, saying we shall "bag the whole crowd." Pope moved quickly to Manassas, hoping to strike Jackson before Longstreet came up. Jackson moved from Manassas by the Sudley Springs road, and by Centreville to the Warrenton turnpike, and took position near Groveton on the field of the first battle, where he would be in a favorable position to unite with Lee, advancing by way of Thoroughfare Gap. Pope, failing to find Jackson at Manassas, directed his columns on Centreville, and was attacked by Jackson as soon as he came within striking distance, on the evening of August 28th. The battle raged until nightfall. Jackson's men suffered severely. His second in command, General Ewell, lost his leg, but the Confederates gained the advantage everywhere.

Complete Victory.—The battle was renewed the next morn-

ing, and throughout the day the Confederates repulsed every assault of the Federals until night put an end to the conflict. On the 30th Pope again attacked, and, in the afternoon, when Jackson's men were nearly exhausted, General Lee, with Longstreet's corps, from behind the mountains, came to their aid. Pope had telegraphed to Washington that the "enemy was driven from the field." The next news was that he himself was in hasty retreat, leaving his dead and wounded. Lee pursued and inflicted severe blows upon the retreating army before it reached the fortifications at Washington. Major-General Kearney, of the Federal army, fell in the last of these engagements, and his body was delivered to his friends under a flag of truce.

Losses on Both Sides.—Thirty thousand Federals and 12,000 Confederates fell in this brief campaign. General Lee took 9,000 prisoners, thirty cannon, and 30,000 small arms. In three months he had defeated two fine armies larger than his own, and had freed Virginia north of the James River, from invasion. At Second Manassas the Confederate artillery, newly organized by Lee's chief-of-artillery, General Pendleton, first

took the important part it afterwards held in the Army of Northern Virginia.



W. N. PENDLETON.

Lee in Maryland.—Virginia being free from hostile troops, Lee moved his army to Leesburg and crossed over into Maryland. This advance frightened the Washington government. In the emergency they begged General McClellan once more to take command of the Army of the Potomac and defend the capital, which he magnanimously consented to do.

Jackson at Harper's Ferry.—Lee moved to Frederick City, and sent Jackson to capture Harper's Ferry and open the way to the Valley of Virginia. McClellan was approaching with 87,000 men, and Lee, with the rest of his army, moved westward through the Katoclin and Blue Ridge Mountains. One of his orders of march was picked up, which revealed to McClellan his adversary's intentions and quickened his pursuit.

At several points Lee's men halted and gave battle, giving time for Jackson to take possession of Harper's Ferry, on September 15th. A. P. Hill was left there to remove the 13,000 prisoners, seventy-three cannon and 30,000 muskets surrendered, while Jackson joined Lee on the west side of Antietam creek, near the village of Sharpsburg.

Battle of Sharpsburg or Antietam.—McClellan opened on September 17th the bloody battle known by both of these names. Hard marching and fighting had produced so much straggling that there were only 35,000 Confederates present, against McClellan's 80,000 and over. The Federal right attacked Jackson's corps fiercely at dawn. The tide of battle swept to and fro along the line; Jackson drove the Federal troops in his front, but in the centre and on the other wing they pressed back the Southerners. The fresh troops of the Federal army seemed inexhaustible, while the broken and diminished Confederate regiments had to be re-formed and taken into action again and again. By stubborn fighting the Confederate centre and left had repulsed the Federals in their front at 3 P. M. Burnside's fresh troops then attacked the Southern right, and, aided by a powerful artillery fire, drove the Confederates before them. At this critical moment A. P. Hill's men, just from Harper's Ferry, rushed to the rescue of their comrades, and drove Burnside back across the creek with tremendous slaughter. Both armies slept on their arms, but Lee held the field, and McClellan asked permission to bury his dead.



A. P. HILL.

Lee Returns to Virginia.—After waiting quietly a whole day, Lee moved his army back to Virginia in the night. He had to leave the wounded Southerners in the hospitals, and therefore McClellan claimed the victory. The loss on both sides was nearly equal—about 12,000—and Sharpsburg must be considered a drawn battle. Lee now took position between Shepherdstown and Winchester, recruiting his exhausted army and improving its equipment with the arms taken at Harper's Ferry.

McClellan Superseded by Burnside.—General McClellan had once more failed to destroy Lee, and he was therefore superseded in command of the Army of the Potomac by General Ambrose E. Burnside.

“On to Richmond” by Fredericksburg.—General Burnside decided to make his advance by Fredericksburg, as Mr. Lincoln had wished McClellan to do. His army of 125,000 men was in three divisions, under Hooker, Sumner, and Franklin. Sumner, who reached the heights opposite Fredericksburg on November 17th, wished to cross the Rappahannock and take possession of the town, where there were only a cavalry regiment and four infantry companies of Southern troops. Burnside, however, would not permit him to cross at Fredericksburg, nor Hooker at the fords above.



A. E. BURNSIDE.

Fortifying at Fredericksburg.—The Federal army then fortified the country north of the Rappahannock, while Lee, on the south side, made earthworks and rifle-pits, and brought up the heaviest guns he could obtain. Jackson came again from the Valley, and all possible preparations were made for a desperate resistance. From the heights north of the river, Burnside's powerful guns commanded the lower ground on the south side, and it was impossible to prevent his troops from crossing under cover of their artillery. But the Confederates hoped to drive them back after they had crossed the river. It was an early and very severe winter, and both armies suffered from the cold. The Federal soldiers were well supplied with tents, food, and clothing. The Confederates, with few tents, built poor shelters of bushes. Their food was scanty rations of fat bacon and cornbread, and their clothing the ragged garments which had seen many a battle. Numbers of them were barefooted, but their hardships had not lessened their spirit or their patriotism.

Bombardment of Fredericksburg.—Burnside, especially, desired to eat his Christmas dinner in Richmond, and began his

forward move on December 10th. Under cover of 150 great guns, a pontoon-bridge was laid across the river. The Confederate sharpshooters in the town hindered the operation, and a furious bombardment of the little city was the consequence. Many of the frightened people had already left their homes. The few who remained took shelter in the cellars, as it seemed as if every house must be battered to pieces. Owing to a dense fog, it was difficult to know what either army was doing.

Disparity of Forces.—By the morning of the 13th, 90,000 Federal soldiers, with 220 cannon, had crossed the river. Forty thousand men and 104 guns, under Sumner, at Fredericksburg; 50,000 men and 116 guns, under Franklin, lower down. North of the river was the reserve of 23,000 men under Hooker, and 150 siege guns on the hills. Lee had only 60,000 men and 250 pieces of artillery. Longstreet was on the Confederate left opposite Sumner, and Jackson on the right opposite Franklin.

Battle of Fredericksburg.—Jackson's right was assailed in the early morning. At 1 P. M., under cover of a furious cannonade, the Federals advanced in great force along his whole front. The Confederate artillery was forbidden to fire until their assailants were close upon them. On the left it checked the enemy's advance. On the right the Federals penetrated a gap in Jackson's first line, but were immediately driven back to the shelter of their batteries.

Marye's Hill.—The artillery on the Stafford heights hurled a storm of shot upon Longstreet's corps, during the morning, and, at 11 A. M. Sumner's advance began. Marye's Hill, the key to the whole position, was held by the Washington Artillery on its crest, and by other batteries, so placed that they could sweep the plain in front. A sunken road and a stone wall, at the base of the hill, hid a strong infantry force, and reserves of men and guns were on the rear slope. As Sumner's columns advanced, the large guns across the river fired more heavily. The Confederate cannon, as on Jackson's line, remained silent until the assailants were within easy reach. The murderous fire then poured into them did not deter the steady advance of the Federal ranks.

As one division was mown down, another took its place; but when the unexpected rifle-fire from the sunken road burst forth in their very faces they staggered back in confusion.

Hooker's Reserves Defeated.—Seeing Sumner's men melt away before the Confederate line, Burnside ordered Hooker to take his men across the river and carry Marye's Hill. This effort was no more successful than the previous ones. Six times the blue Federal lines moved up to storm the hill, to be six times driven back. As the last assault was made, the heated guns on top of the hill were moved back to give place for fresh ones. The advancing brigades thought their foes were retreating. Instead of this, they were met by fresh cannon and infantry, which drove them back with deadly slaughter. When night came, 12,000 Federal soldiers, and 5,000 Confederates lay dead or wounded on the icy plain. Knowing that



JOSEPH HOOKER.

Burnside's army was double his own, General Lee thought the advance on the 13th was only a "reconnaissance in force" to find out his position and strength, and kept his army ready for a real attack the next day. Sunday and Monday went by without any renewal of the fight, and on Monday night the Federal army, in the darkness and fog, recrossed the river. One of Longstreet's divisions and parts of two of Jackson's had repulsed the great hosts in their front.

Result of the Victory.—This battle ended active operations for the winter. All through the South the privations consequent upon the war were making themselves felt, yet the people at home made great efforts to supply the needs of the soldiers. Women set to spinning cotton and wool; they wove cloth, knit socks, and made caps and gloves. The carpets from the floors were cut up into blankets for the soldiers, and all provisions that could be spared were sent to furnish the hungry men in the field with a few good meals.

Devotion of Confederate Women.—History shows that whenever any people have contended for their freedom and

their rights, the women of that nation have shared the burdens and trials of the conflict, and have encouraged and stimulated the men by their sympathy and cheerful fortitude. This generous devotion to their country's cause was specially remarkable among the Southern women. To it they gave their dearest and best, and bore up bravely in defeat as well as in victory. With silent courage they faced privation and danger. They nursed the sick and wounded; took charge of farms and plantations; supplied the growing deficiencies in all domestic affairs with wonderful ingenuity; they cared for and directed the thousands of negroes left dependent upon them; and never lost their trust in God and the righteousness of their cause, though their loved ones languished in prison or lay dead on the battle-field. Their patriotism and womanly fidelity will be held in honor while the world lasts.

QUESTIONS.—1. Who was made commander-in-chief of the Federal forces? 2. Why did Pope become unpopular? 3. Tell of the battle of Cedar Mountain and the destruction wrought by Pope's army. 4. How and by whom was Manassas Junction captured? 5. Describe the battles of Second Manassas. 6. Who gained the victory? 7. What were the losses in this campaign? 8. What movement was now made by General Lee? 9. Who was once more put in command of the Federal army? 10. Tell of Jackson's capture of Harper's Ferry. 11. Describe the battle of Sharpsburg or Antietam. 12. Which side gained the victory? 13. Who superseded McClellan? 14. What was his plan for reaching Richmond? 15. What armies gathered at Fredericksburg? 16. What was the condition of the Confederate soldiers? 17. Tell of the bombardment of Fredericksburg. 18. What were the forces on both sides? 19. Describe the battle of Fredericksburg, and the attack on Marye's Hill. 20. Why was not the battle renewed? 21. What did the commanders on both sides now do? 22. Tell of the devotion of the Southern women and of the work they accomplished. 23. Find the battle-fields on the map.

CHAPTER LI.

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION, CONTINUED—1862.

Defences of New Orleans.—Seventy miles below New Orleans Forts Jackson and St. Philip commanded the channel of the Mississippi, which was also defended by a raft of logs and chains stretched across it, and by a Confederate fleet of thirteen small gunboats, a floating battery and the ram *Manassas*.

Federal Forces in the River.—Admiral Farragut had seven large, steam war-vessels, sixteen gunboats, twenty-one mortar-schooners, and transports with 15,000 men on board, under General Benjamin F. Butler. To overpower the forts with this strong force was a mere question of time. On April 18th a bombardment was begun and carried on for six days and nights. The river was rising rapidly, and had washed away part of the raft. The forts gave no sign of surrender and Farragut, dividing his fleet into three squadrons, left one to attack each fort, and, with the third, ran past the defences and up the river, on the morning of April 23d. The Confederate vessels contested the advance until eleven of them were disabled. The attacking ships were also much injured, but thirteen of them, which were unhurt, steamed on to seize the city.

Affairs in New Orleans.—The approach of the hostile vessels filled New Orleans with grief and alarm. General Mansfield Lovell turned the city over to its municipal authorities and took his soldiers away to be used elsewhere. Great supplies of stores were destroyed to prevent their falling into the enemy's hands. The levees blazed for miles with burning cotton, sugar and molasses. The unfinished war-vessels were set on fire and launched into the middle of the river, and thousands of citizens gathered up such property as they could carry with them, and hastily left the city.

Fall of New Orleans.—On the 25th of April Admiral Farragut's fleet anchored off the city. The mayor refused to sur-

render because the forts still held out. Farragut then sent marines on shore, who hoisted the United States flag over the mint. This flag was soon taken down by a young man named Munford. While this was going on the forts had been attacked in front and rear. Their food and ammunition were exhausted, and, on the 28th, they spiked their guns and surrendered.¹

Great Losses of the Confederates.—By the 1st of May the Confederates had lost in the West and South, Kentucky and Missouri, with the defences at Columbus, Henry, Donelson, New Madrid and Island No. 10. They had abandoned Middle Tennessee, had lost Nashville and New Orleans, and the important battles of Elkhorn and Shiloh. When Beauregard fell back from Shiloh to Tupelo, in Mississippi, Fort Pillow and the city of Memphis fell into Federal hands, and General Buell, who occupied Corinth, sent his cavalry to destroy the railroads and bridges and Confederate property of all sorts.

Confederate Conscription.—To obviate the difficulties of enlistment and fill up the armies, the Confederate Congress, early in the year, ordered that able-bodied men between eighteen and thirty-five should be enrolled, and, when called for, should be drafted into the service for three years. Those who had enlisted for one year were to serve two more.

Changes of Commanders.—Van Dorn now brought 17,000 men from Arkansas, and the Army of Mississippi was made stronger and more efficient. On account of ill-health, Beauregard was replaced in command by General Braxton Bragg, who

¹General B. F. Butler was placed in command of the city, who, from his brutal exercise of power, was afterwards known as "Beast Butler." One of his first acts was to hang Munford for pulling down the United States flag before the city surrendered. He insulted the women of the city because they would not extend courtesy to himself and his men, and authorized his soldiers to treat them with shameful indignity. Besides this, he and his men "confiscated" and took whatever they wanted. Furniture, jewels, silver, books, pictures, spoils of all sorts, were sent to adorn the homes and please the friends of the plunderers. The public prints had caricatures of General Butler, with his pockets full of spoons and ladies, and many severe jokes were made on him in after years. He oppressed and devastated both New Orleans and the whole Gulf coast of Louisiana, and, for his outrages against the rules of modern warfare, was outlawed by President Davis. The Federal government found it expedient to remove him, and General Banks was put in his place.

had done so much to improve the discipline and efficiency of the army that great things were expected from him. The Federal generals Halleck and Pope went to Virginia; Buell and Thomas, with their troops, were sent to Chattanooga; and General Grant was given command of the Army of the Tennessee, with Sherman, McClernand and Rosecrans under him.

Effort to Recover Tennessee and Kentucky.—General Bragg now tried to recover the ground lost in Tennessee and Kentucky for the Confederacy. He left Van Dorn to prevent Grant's joining Buell, and took the rest of his army towards Chat-



N. B. FORREST.

tanooga. To clear the way for his advance, he sent Forrest's¹ cavalry forward through Middle Tennessee, and Morgan's² into Kentucky. Forrest, advancing northward, took McMinnville and Murfreesboro with its large garrison and stores. Morgan, with 2,000 men, seized the towns of Lebanon and Cynthiana, and captured 1,200 prisoners. He cut telegraph wires, burned railroad bridges, and went so near to Cincinnati as to cause great alarm. Then he turned back and seized Clarksville, in Tennessee, with a large supply of military stores.

Bragg Advances into Kentucky.—Bragg sent part of his men to strengthen Kirby Smith's command, which pushed on through East Tennessee into Kentucky, while a small body of troops was left to prevent the Federal garrison in Cumberland

¹Nathan B. Forrest was a native of Tennessee. With little education and no military training, he proved to be one of the great soldiers of his time. His powerful frame, dauntless courage and unusual activity, combined with his aptness to perceive his enemy's weak points, and his power to influence men, made him a born leader. His military capacity was such that he never failed to carry out the boldest undertakings, and never met with a defeat, although he almost always encountered greatly superior numbers. He was the terror of his foes, and the beloved defender of the Gulf States.

²John H. Morgan, born in Alabama, had grown up in Kentucky. He entered the Confederate service in 1861, and at once became distinguished as a daring cavalry officer. The soldiers of his command were as fearless and enterprising as himself, and under such admirable discipline that their obedience and valor were to be trusted in any circumstances. When he now returned to Kentucky, hundreds of her noblest sons flocked to his standard.

Gap from moving on his rear. Bragg hastened into Central Kentucky with 30,000 men. Buell also hurried northward to oppose the Confederate advance.

Battle of Richmond, Kentucky.—Moving rapidly through Eastern Kentucky, Kirby Smith, on August 30th, the same day of Lee's victory at Second Manassas, with 5,000 men attacked and defeated 10,000 Federal troops near Richmond, Kentucky. Five thousand prisoners, nine cannon, and 10,000 stand of small arms were taken on the field. A few days later Bragg entered Kentucky.

Capture of Louisville.—Bragg had about 52,000 men marching on separate roads. Buell had about the same number, but was rapidly reinforced. Both armies moved towards Louisville, but Bragg stopped, first, to capture Munfordville, with 4,133 prisoners, and then at Frankfort, to inaugurate a Confederate governor for Kentucky. Buell, in the meantime, pressed forward and occupied Louisville, and Bragg's opportunity for success was lost.



S. PRICE.



E. KIRBY SMITH.

Grant at Iuka and Corinth.—Van Dorn, who had been left in Mississippi to defeat Grant and then to join Bragg, had, instead, experienced two severe defeats. Price's division had been severely handled at Iuka, and later on the whole Confederate army had been repulsed with heavy loss in a desperate attack on the Federal fortifications at Corinth. This was a great blow to the Southern cause.

Bragg at Frankfort.—Buell soon had 75,000 men in Louisville. Bragg could get no reinforcements, and was obliged to fall back to save the quantities of stores he had collected. To get into the Confederate rear and cut off their retreat Buell moved towards the southeast. Bragg, however, took the idea that Buell was coming to fight him at Frankfort, and kept most of the troops there.

Battle of Perryville.—On October 8th Polk's corps, 16,000 strong, encountered 58,000 of Buell's army at Perryville. When night put a stop to the fierce fighting Polk held the ground, having repulsed the enemy and captured fifteen cannon and 600 prisoners. His loss was 3,145; that of the Federals somewhat greater. In the night he moved to join the other Southern forces. Bragg then fell back into East Tennessee, carrying a large supply of provisions and stores. This campaign bitterly disappointed both sides. The South justly felt that with more rapid movements Bragg could have accomplished more, and the North believed that Buell might have surrounded and destroyed Bragg's army. Buell was therefore superseded by Rosecrans. Van Dorn was also replaced by General John C. Pemberton.

Result of the Campaign.—Bragg had misused his opportunities, but he had recovered East Tennessee and a large part of the middle of the State. He now posted his army at Murfreesboro', forty miles from Nashville, and threw up earthworks.

Battle of Murfreesboro' or Stone River.—Here Rosecrans moved against him on the 30th of December. Forty-six thousand nine hundred and forty men on the Federal side and 37,712 on the Confederate were engaged in this battle. Rosecrans intended to open the attack with his left wing in the early morning



J. A. WHARTON.

of the last day of the year. Bragg forestalled this by a gallant assault on the Federal right. By 11 o'clock that whole wing was driven from its position, half the field had been taken, and Wharton's Confederate cavalry had passed round to the rear and cut off the supply trains. General Thomas held the Federal centre firmly for a time, but, at last, Polk's Mississippi and Alabama troops carried the line of defence at the point of the bayonet, and the centre joined the right in the rapid retreat. The lines of the two armies were now at right angles to their original positions.

“**Hell's Half-Acre.**”—The Federal left, which held a strong position in “The Round Forest,” between the river and a deep

railway cut, repulsed all efforts against it. So great was the slaughter made upon the attacking Southerners that the soldiers called the bloody ground "Hell's Half-Acre." When night came Rosecrans still held the Round Forest, but during the night the whole Federal army was drawn farther back, and the field was left to the Confederates.

Victory Claimed by Both Sides.—On the 1st of January, 1863, both armies were quiet from exhaustion. On the 2nd, there was again heavy fighting without definite results. Then a tremendous rain made Bragg apprehensive lest a rise in Stone



BATTLE OF MURFREESBORO.

River might cut him off from his supplies. Rosecrans was receiving large reinforcements, so the Confederate commander crossed his army over the river in the night of the 3rd, and drew it further back. On account of this withdrawal the North claimed the victory, as the South had done on the night of December 31st. The losses in the fight were terrible. The Federal army lost 13,249 men, thirty cannon, nine flags, and 6,000 stand of small arms; the Confederates 10,266 men, and some of their best officers. The larger loss in the Federal army could easily be made up, but the South was beginning to feel severely the drain upon her population. Bragg had telegraphed a great

victory to Richmond, and the whole South was astonished to find him again falling back. Both the country and the army lost confidence in him. But President Davis could not believe him incapable and kept him at the head of the army in Tennessee.

Van Dorn Burns Grant's Depot at Holly Springs.—During the later months of 1862, General Grant began his efforts against Vicksburg. At Holly Springs, in Mississippi, where several railroads met, he established a fortified camp, and collected great



BURNING OF HOLLY SPRINGS.

supplies of army stores. Van Dorn, with his Confederate cavalry, raided round Grant's army, cut his communications, captured Holly Springs and 2,000 Federal soldiers, and then burned the storehouses with millions of dollars worth of Federal property. In consequence of this, Grant was compelled to fall back.

Confederate Cruisers, 1862.—Immense injury was done to Federal commerce during this year by the few Confederate vessels on the ocean. There were two cruisers of especial activity, the *Alabama*, built at Liverpool for the Confederates, and the *Florida*, which was bought. These vessels had to slip away

from England unarmed and then pick up their guns and crews at some appointed place. Commanded by Captain Raphael Semmes, who had already done good service on the *Sumter*, the *Alabama* cruised with great success in the Atlantic and Indian Oceans. The *Florida*, under Captain John H. Maffit, also captured many Federal merchantmen. The *Shenandoah* was a third most efficient Southern cruiser.

Condition of the Confederacy, 1862.—Except the short extent of coast between Charleston and Savannah, and one or two points in North Carolina, the Federal troops and vessels now held all the Atlantic and most of the Gulf coast, as well as the Mississippi River above Vicksburg and below Grand Gulf. The strong blockade kept supplies and recruits from Europe out of the South, and Federal armies in Tennessee and Mississippi threatened the communications by which the Southern armies were supported. In the field, the Confederates had the advantage, and the wonderful victories of Jackson and Lee won the admiration of the world, and led the Southern soldiers to believe that they would surely achieve Southern independence.

QUESTIONS.—1. How was the Mississippi defended below New Orleans? 2. Describe the advance of the Federal forces up the river. 3. How did it affect affairs in the city? 4. Tell of the fall of New Orleans. 5. Describe General B. F. Butler's occupancy of the city, and his behavior there (note). 6. What great losses had been sustained by the Confederacy? 7. What conscription law was passed? 8. Who became commander of the army of Mississippi, and who were opposed to him? 9. What was his plan? 10. Give a sketch of N. B. Forrest (note). 11. Give a sketch of John H. Morgan (note). 12. What movements were now made by Bragg and Buell? 13. Tell of the battle of Richmond, Kentucky. 14. Who got possession of Louisville? 15. What two battles were fought in Mississippi, and with what results? 16. Where was Bragg at this time? 17. Tell of the battle of Perryville. 18. What was the result of this campaign? 19. Why were both sides dissatisfied? 20. Describe the great battle of Murfreesboro' or Stone River. 21. Why was the victory claimed by both sides? 22. Who were the commanders on both sides, and what were the losses. 23. Tell of the burning of Holly Springs. 24. Give an account of the Confederate cruisers. 25. What was the condition of the Confederacy at the close of 1862? 26. Find all the places on the map.

CHAPTER LII.

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION, CONTINUED—1862.

West Virginia Formed.—Early in 1861, the forty-eight counties in Virginia which had refused to take part in secession were recognized by the United States government as if they were the whole State, and sent members to the United States Congress. Francis H. Pierpoint was the governor of this pretended State. After the fall of Donelson, Mr. Lincoln appointed Andrew Johnson "Military Governor" of Tennessee, and persons sent from the State were received for a time into the Federal Congress.¹

Mr. Lincoln's View of Slavery in 1861.—Mr. Lincoln had declared more than once that the question of slavery had nothing to do with the conflict between the two sections of the country. In his inaugural address he said that he had no purpose, inclination or right to interfere with the institution of slavery. His first annual message repeated these sentiments. He said he should be guided by the Constitution, and rebuked General Fremont in Missouri, and General Hunter in Florida for proclaiming the slaves free. You have read that Congress denied that it had any power to interfere with slavery.

Change of Opinions.—But the North saw with disappointment and chagrin the immense armies they had equipped at so much expense melt away before their Southern foes. The valor and prowess of the Confederacy were beginning to influence Europe in her favor, and it seemed all important to devise some more effectual mode of striking the Southern people and re-awakening the old prejudice against them.

Prospective Emancipation, 1862.—Mr. Lincoln found that

¹Conventions of Southern sympathizers had met in Missouri and Kentucky, voted those States into the Confederacy, and elected "provisional legislatures." Representatives, chosen by these legislatures or by the soldiers from these States, had seats in the Confederate Congress, so that there were two sets of Congressmen, one in Washington and one in Richmond, from Virginia, Tennessee, Kentucky and Missouri.

an act of Congress of 1862, which confiscated all the property, especially the slaves, of those whom the North characterized as "rebels," gave great satisfaction to the haters of the South. He, therefore, issued, just after the battle of Sharpsburg, a proclamation declaring that slavery should cease on January 1, 1863, in any seceded State which had not by that time returned to the Union.¹

Effects of the Proclamation.—Many persons at the North strongly condemned this interference with the rights of the Southern people by robbing them thus of their property. A number of the Northern States showed their opposition to it and other arbitrary measures of the government at the November elections. New York elected as governor Horatio Seymour, who had advocated compromise legislation to avert the war, and who was wholly opposed to the Emancipation Proclamation and other high-handed proceedings of the government. The proclamation awoke new patriotism and devotion at the South, as it showed that under pretext of "preserving the Union" the Northern Republicans would trample upon all law and defy the Constitution in order to work their own will.

Emancipation, January 1, 1863.—January 1, 1863, a second proclamation from Mr. Lincoln declared all slaves in the seceded States absolutely and forever free. This did not affect negroes out of the reach of the Federal armies. But after it, whenever those armies advanced, the negroes flocked to them in hordes, expecting to be supported in idleness. The question of maintaining the ignorant thousands who thus crowded into their camps, soon became a very serious one to the Federal commanders. Many of the men were employed as teamsters and camp servants, and others were enlisted into the army.

War Prices.—Gold and silver were scarce at the North, but paper money, "greenbacks," was abundant. Prices had risen

¹ The three special objects of this proclamation were to stir up the negroes against their masters, which would compel the white men to go home to protect their families, and thus weaken the Southern armies; to make the people of Europe believe that the South was fighting only to maintain slavery; and to make it appear that the Democratic party, which thought that each State must settle the question of slavery for itself, was unwilling to carry on the war.

considerably, but there was work for everybody. The large bounties paid the soldiers provided for their families, and there was little want. Paper was the only currency in the South, and it was fast becoming worthless. Supplies formerly obtained from the North or from Europe were scarcely to be had, and brought great prices.¹

Suffering in the South.—It was all the Southern railroads could do to move the armies and transport food for them. Each region of country had, therefore, to raise provisions enough to feed its population. When an army swept over a district, the people had either to move away or suffer from want. As time went on, the destitution increased until the sufferings of the people can scarcely be imagined.

Exchange of Prisoners.—The Northern government at first refused to make any arrangements for the exchange of prisoners of war, although commanders in the field frequently exchanged the prisoners they held, as long as the numbers remained equal. Late in 1861 the Federal Congress insisted that arrangements should be made for an immediate exchange of prisoners, of which the South then held the greater number. The Federal War Department tried to avoid such exchange, but the people insisted, and, in July, 1862, General Dix, United States Army, and General D. H. Hill, Confederate States Army, signed a cartel for the mutual exchange of prisoners, which was observed for a time.

War Prisons.—The Confederate government wished to have all prisoners exchanged or paroled promptly. This was done with some regularity while the South held the excess of prisoners, up to the summer of 1863. After that time, when the ex-

¹ Coffee was scarce at twenty dollars a pound. Tea cost more. Kid gloves, which "ran the blockade," sold from five dollars to twenty-five dollars. Shoes, fine dress goods, paper, books, pins, needles, buttons, scissors, sewing materials, the many little necessities of life were hard to get, and ten times their former prices, even in the cities. In the country they could scarcely be found at all. The sewing machines wore out, and there were few needles for hand sewing. Silk fringes and home-made thread of cotton or flax, mended old garments or made the few new ones. Colleges were closed, professors and students having all gone to the army. Occasional schools were taught by disabled soldiers who took provisions for pay, as well as Confederate money.

cess was held by the North, which could amply provide for its armies and its captives, they refused to exchange them, and crowded them into forts and prison camps, where they were tortured or destroyed by hardships, privation and cruelty. This compelled the South also to provide places of imprisonment for thousands of Northern prisoners. There was scanty food and few comforts for the Southern soldiers and people, and their prisoners were, of necessity, poorly fed and housed. But they fared as well, if not better, than the armies in the field, and had better quarters.

West Virginia Admitted to the Union, 1863.—Late in 1862, the forty-eight counties of Virginia organized a government, and applied for admission into the Union as the State of "West Virginia." The Constitution says that "no State shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of another State, without the consent of the legislature of the State concerned as well as of Congress." Virginia would never have consented to be thus robbed of nearly one-half of the territory she held after she gave the Northwest to the Union. She was not consulted on the subject. Notwithstanding this, the illegal request of the unconstitutional State was granted, and West Virginia was admitted to the Union in the Spring of 1863.

QUESTIONS.—1. What action was taken by the United States government with reference to forty-eight counties in Virginia? 2. In what States were there two governments (note)? 3. What were Mr. Lincoln's views of slavery in 1861? 4. What caused him to change them? 5. What proclamation was issued in the fall of 1862? 6. What were its effects? 7. When was the Emancipation Proclamation issued? 8. How did it affect many of the negroes? 9. Give some account of war prices and privations (note). 10. Tell of the suffering in the South. 11. What steps were taken for the exchange of prisoners? 12. What is said of war prisons, North and South? 13. When was West Virginia admitted into the Union?

CHAPTER LIII.

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION, CONTINUED—1863.

Attack on Galveston.—Nearly the whole Texan coast was held by the Federals. On Galveston Island they had a garrison of several hundred soldiers; four fine gunboats and some armed transports guarded the harbor. General Magruder, commanding in the State, covered two river steamboats with cotton bales to protect them from the enemy's shot, put some heavy guns on them, planted field-batteries on the shore, and, with the help of a small infantry force, attacked the Federal gunboats and the garrison. The land batteries hurled shot and shell at the Federal vessels. The cotton-clad steamboats attacked the largest of them, the *Harriet Lane*, boarded and captured her. The United States flagship, the *Westfield*, in getting out of range of the batteries, ran aground. To avoid surrendering her, the captain blew her up and lost his life in the explosion. The other ships escaped, but the garrison surrendered, and the Confederates recovered possession of Galveston, capturing 600 prisoners and many valuable stores.

Sabine Pass.—In the attempt on Sabine Pass, later in the year, a fleet of Federal gunboats, accompanied by transports carrying 5,000 men and forty cannon, was driven off by the guns in a small fort, and two of the gunboats were forced to surrender.

Federal Advance on Charleston.—The North, especially, hated Charleston, South Carolina, which it regarded as the cradle of secession; and there was a great desire to capture it by April 14th, the anniversary of the surrender of Fort Sumter. To effect this, Admiral Dupont entered the outer harbor at Charleston on April 7th, with a strong naval force. By direction of General Beauregard the fleet was permitted to pass the batteries on Morris's Island without receiving a shot. When

the vessels were within gunshot of Sumter, the guns of the fort and from all the islands round opened on them. They replied fiercely, but directed their principal fury against Fort Sumter. Iron cables and sunken piles prevented the ships passing round the fort. They, therefore, attacked it in front with a terrific fire, but the Southern guns proved too strong even for the monitors. In less than an hour the powerful iron fleet was compelled to withdraw. The *Keokuk* was so injured that she sank near Morris Island, and others of the monitors received such injury that they had to be taken back to Port Royal. Later in the summer General Gilmore made an equally unsuccessful attack upon Charleston.

Hooker Commanding in Virginia.—The great campaigns of 1863 opened in Virginia, where General Burnside had been superseded by General Hooker, who was known as "Fighting Joe" from his bravery in the field. Hooker's army at Fredericksburg numbered, in April, 120,000 infantry and artillery, 12,000 cavalry, all thoroughly equipped and disciplined, and more than 400 cannon.

Lee's Troops.—During the winter Lee had sent part of Longstreet's corps to the south of Petersburg, where it could be fed with comparative ease, and had retained only some 40,000 men between Fredericksburg and Richmond. At one time, indeed, furloughs and other causes reduced the army there to 30,000 men. By the last of April it was increased to 53,000 men of all arms.

Hooker Moves to Chancellorsville.—Hooker determined to advance against Lee's left flank by the upper fords of the Rappahannock. To conceal his intention, he sent Stoneman with some 10,000 cavalry to pass behind Lee and destroy his communications, while Sedgwick, with 37,000 men, moved to the heights below Fredericksburg on April 29th. Hooker moved his main army up the Rappahannock and crossed that river and the Rapidan. By May 1st six Federal corps, 90,000 men in all, were gathered round Chancellorsville, a plantation settlement in the heart of a dense growth of young trees and bushes, known as "The Wilderness."

Lee's Move.—The Southern commander soon understood General Hooker's plans, and proceeded to frustrate them. Lee left Early, with 9,000 infantry and some artillery battalions, with forty-five guns, to keep Sedgwick back, and moved towards Chancellorsville with about 43,000 men. On May 1st the van of the two armies became engaged, and the Federals were driven back upon their main body intrenched around Chan-



J. A. EARLY.

cellorsville. Knowing that a direct attack upon these breastworks would occasion immense loss of life, Lee, as on former occasions, the next morning divided his army, and sent Jackson to move round to the Federal right flank and rear. The first road taken by Jackson led towards the southwest, and the Federals construed the movement into the beginning of a retreat. A small force sent to find out about it was repulsed, and Lee kept up such vigorous demonstrations along his front that no more men were sent after Jackson.

Jackson's Successful Attack.—After a march of fifteen miles, Jackson reached the rear of the Federal right at a point so close to it that Howard's men could be seen cooking their supper. When Jackson's men rushed on them like a thunderbolt from a cloudless sky, they were completely surprised. The Eleventh Federal corps became utterly demoralized and fled, leaving everything behind them. The Southerners crashed forward through the undergrowth, clambered over the breastworks, drove all before them, and shortly before nightfall, captured the intrenchments, less than a half a mile from Hooker's headquarters, with all their guns and many of the men.

Jackson Shot.—Jackson now rode forward in the dark with his staff to examine the enemy's position. As they returned to the Confederate lines, in the increasing darkness, the party was mistaken for a squad of Federal cavalry, and was fired into by a Southern regiment. Two of them fell dead, and Jackson was among others who were severely wounded. General A. P. Hill, the second in command, was disabled by the same volley, and

General J. E. B. Stuart was summoned from the cavalry outposts to take command of the corps.

Renewal of the Battle.—When General Lee learned of Jackson's wound, he directed Stuart to continue the attack and sent him Anderson's division from the front. At dawn of Sunday, May 3rd, the Confederates again advanced. Much Confederate artillery had come up during the night, and was now used to great advantage. As the Federal soldiers were swept out of the breastworks by the Confederate infantry, the guns were brought forward from point to point, until the central position at Chancellorsville alone remained to be carried. General Lee had come from the front, and seemed to give fresh courage and strength to his men. The Federal troops fought stoutly and repulsed two assaults of the Southerners. A third carried the foremost heights. Confederate guns opened a tremendous fire from their crest, and by 10 A. M. Chancellorsville was won.

Burning of the House and Woods.—The Federal army was still more than double the number of the Confederates, and two of its corps had not been engaged at all. But General Hooker had been stunned by a shell bursting near him. There was no efficient head left to it, and the Federal host fell back to heavy intrenchments nearer the Rappahannock. Bursting shells had set fire to the woods and the Chancellorsville house, which was full of Federal wounded. General Lee first took steps to rescue these sufferers, and then re-formed his weary army and prepared to attack the new Federal position.

Sedgwick's Advance.—News that Sedgwick had captured the heights of Fredericksburg, driven off the force opposing him, and was moving upon Lee's rear, compelled the Southern commander to turn round against him, instead of moving forward. On the night of May 3rd, Wilcox, with the aid of troops sent by Lee, repulsed Sedgwick's advance with great slaughter. On the 4th, Early re-occupied Fredericksburg and then advanced upon Sedgwick's rear. Lee at the same time attacked Sedgwick in front with McLaw's and Anderson's divisions and drove him to the river, which he crossed under cover of night and fog.

Hooker Defeated at Chancellorsville.—When the Confederates advanced, on the morning of May 6th, they found the whole Federal army gone. Hooker had retreated during the night, in spite of his assurances to the country of the “certain destruction” of the Southern army. He had



JACKSON MONUMENT.

lost 17,000 men, thirteen guns, 19,500 stand of arms, seventeen flags, and much ammunition, and his utter discomfiture occasioned much alarm at Washington, and great disappointment throughout the North.

Death of Jackson.—Ten thousand two hundred and eighty-one men and eight guns was the heavy price paid by the Confederates for this victory, and even more than this was the loss of Jackson himself. His wound resulted in his death on May 10th. General Lee's exclamation that “any victory is a dear one which deprives

[Erected by English admirers.] us of the services of Jackson,” proved to be too true. Other generals were as brave, as patriotic and devoted, but no one possessed Jackson's military insight, rapidity of movement, daring in attack and the habit of victory, which made both friends and foes believe him invincible.¹

QUESTIONS.—1. Describe General Magruder's attack on Galveston, and how he captured the city. 2. What was done at Sabine Pass? 3. Where was the next naval attack? 4. Describe the second bombardment of Fort Sumter and its results. 5. Who was the Federal commander in Virginia at this time? 6. What troops did General Lee have? 7. Tell of General Hooker's move to Chancellorsville. 8. What movements were made by General Lee? 9. Describe General Jackson's successful attack. 10. Tell how Jackson was wounded. 11. How was the battle renewed, and with

¹There had been remarkable religious interest and feeling in the Army of Northern Virginia during this year, especially in Jackson's corps. That general had log chapels built by his men, encouraged the religious work among them, and provided them with devout, faithful chaplains. General Lee and other officers of rank shared his interest.

what results? 12. What trouble was occasioned by the bursting of shells? 13. Tell how Sedgwick's advance was repulsed? 14. How did General Hooker escape from Lee, and with what loss? 17. Tell of Jackson's death. 16. What is said of the religious feeling in the Army of Northern Virginia (note)? 17. Look on the maps for all the places mentioned.

CHAPTER LIV.

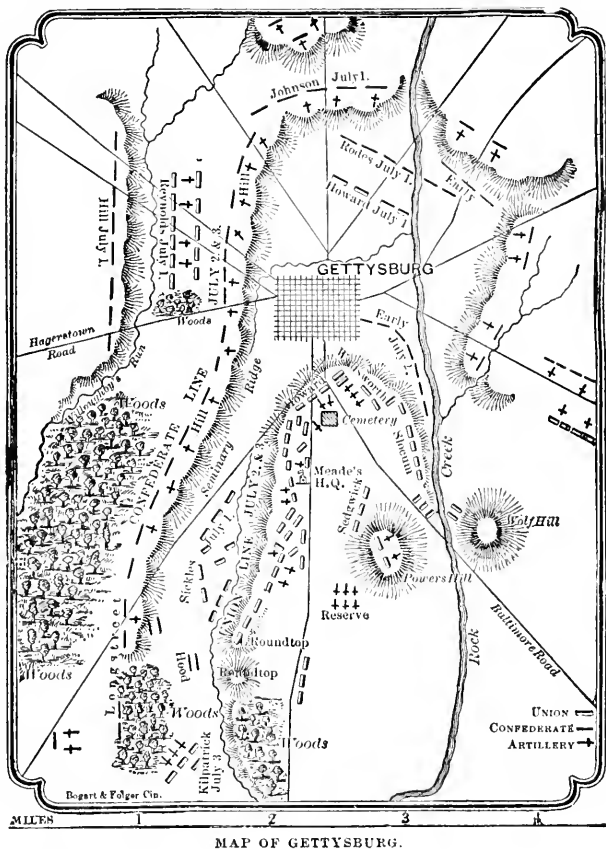
LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION, CONTINUED—1863.

Lee Moves North.—After Jackson's death, General Lee divided his army into three corps, under Longstreet, Ewell, and A. P. Hill, and prepared for another move northward. By the first of June the army was increased to 68,000 men, with more than 200 cannon. On the 3d of the month Lee set out with Longstreet's and Ewell's commands, leaving A. P. Hill's corps in front of Hooker's 118,000 men. From Culpeper, Ewell went directly to the Valley of Virginia, while Longstreet and Stuart remained for a while on the east side of the mountains. When these movements were ascertained, the Federal army left Fredericksburg to keep between Lee and Washington. A. P. Hill then followed his comrades to the Valley.

Ewell Takes Winchester.—On June 14th, Ewell drove Milroy out of Winchester, where he captured 4,000 prisoners, twenty-eight fine cannon, and a huge supply of stores of every description. Ewell's corps then crossed the Potomac to Hagerstown, and soon advanced into Pennsylvania, to Chambersburg, Carlisle and York.

Orderly Conduct of Lee's Army.—By invading the North, General Lee hoped to obtain food and supplies for his army, and to relieve Virginia of the drain which had nearly exhausted her resources. To do this, the army must take possession of the food, cattle, horses, and whatever was necessary, but it was only to be done in a regular and orderly way by the quartermasters and commissaries. Requisitions were made for what was taken, and all articles were paid for in Confederate money. By Lee's

orders, soldiers and officers were bidden to "abstain with most scrupulous care from unnecessary or wanton injury to private property," orders which were rigidly obeyed. This magnani-



mous conduct presents a strong contrast to that of the Federal armies in the South.

Approach to Gettysburg.—Lee's second and more important object was to draw the Federal army out of Virginia to some place where it could not again take shelter at Washington from the injury he hoped to inflict upon it. Consternation and dread

filled the North at the tidings that Lee's army was approaching the capital of Pennsylvania. Washington, Baltimore, Philadelphia, and New York looked to see it enter their streets. The militia in all the adjacent States was called out. General Hooker was relieved, at his own request, and General George G. Meade was put in his place, with orders to meet and fight Lee, and at the same time to keep between him and Washington.



GEORGE G. MEADE.

Battle of Gettysburg.—On the morning of July 1st, A. P. Hill's advance struck the head of the Federal army west of Gettysburg, and a battle raged for six hours. The Federal forces were driven from the town with a heavy loss, and their commander, General Reynolds, was killed. Towards the close of the fight General Lee came up, and directed Ewell to drive the Federals from the strong position of Cemetery Hill, to which they had retreated, if he could do so without bringing on a general engagement. Ewell delayed, awaiting the arrival of Johnson's division; when it arrived, late in the afternoon, the Federal army had been so strengthened it was thought best not to attack until the next morning. Two divisions of Longstreet's corps were only four miles away, while much of the Federal army was much farther off. General Lee, therefore, examined the ground and made his plans to drive the Federals from Cemetery Hill early the next morning before the rest of Meade's army came up. Longstreet, however, was opposed to fighting at Gettysburg, and did not get ready for his part in the attack before 4 o'clock in the afternoon, which delay gave time for the whole Federal army to arrive and occupy most of the heights south of Cemetery Hill. Sedgwick's Sixth corps, the last to arrive, got up at 2 P. M., after marching thirty-two miles, while Longstreet, who had only four miles to come, did not get into position until two hours later.

Second Day's Fight.—When the battle did begin it raged furiously. Longstreet, on the right, drove the Federals from

their advanced positions, and Ewell, on the left, penetrated the Federal line and secured a lodgment on Culp's Hill, which he held during the night. Hood's Texans, who had driven Sickles back through the Peach Orchard, pushed on and swarmed up the rocky slope to seize the important position of Little Round Top. Vincent's Federal brigade, climbing up the other side of the hill, reached the top a moment sooner than the Texans, and a hand-to-hand fight for the summit took place. The struggle lasted a half-hour, but the Federals had the firmer foothold and forced the Texans back. When night came the Southern men had driven the Federal troops out of the valleys, but the latter held the crests of the hills, which they continually made stronger. Thousands of brave men had fallen on both sides, and the decisive struggle was yet to be fought.

Third Day's Fight—Pickett's Charge.—As the Federal loss was very heavy, General Lee hoped that by a vigorous and com-



G. E. PICKETT.

bined attack early on the 3d of July he might carry their positions. Longstreet was, therefore, ordered to attack on the right, with Pickett's three brigades which had not yet been engaged, while Ewell assailed the works in his front at the same time, at daylight. Heth's division, three brigades of North Carolina, Mississippi, Alabama and Tennessee troops, and one from Virginia, all commanded by the gallant

General Pettigrew, and supported by two of Pender's North Carolina brigades, were to attack on Pickett's left. Wilcox's Alabamians were to support him on the right. Longstreet again failed to move in time, and when he did move he did not attack with all the force that General Lee ordered. The Federal right anticipated Ewell's attack, and opened a heavy artillery fire on him at 4 A. M. and after four hours' fighting drove him from the position within their works, which he had gained the day before. The Confederate preparations for the battle were not completed before noon. Longstreet's force was to attack Cemetery Hill at a comparatively weak point. One hundred and fifty Confederate guns were con-

centrated on the hill and opened fire at 1 P. M. The Federal batteries replied, and the most furious artillery engagement ever heard on this continent raged for more than an hour. At that time, the Confederate ammunition was so nearly exhausted that they had to cease firing, and they seemed to have beaten the Federal guns into silence. But when Pickett's and Pettigrew's divisions advanced across the open plain to charge the breastworks on Cemetery Hill, the Federal artillery burst forth again and poured a storm of shot and shell into the advancing Confederates, while want of ammunition prevented the Southern guns from replying. Undeterred by this murderous fire, the gallant Southerners moved steadily forward, closed the gaps made in their lines by the enemy's shot, broke into a double-quick, drove everything before them, swarmed over the stone wall, leaped into the breastworks, and planted their flags on the very crest of Cemetery Hill. The necessary supports which had been ordered by General Lee were not brought up, the Federal guns concentrated upon Pickett and Pettigrew and drove them, shattered and bleeding, from the position they had so gallantly gained, after one-half their number had been shot down.



W. S. HANCOCK.

End of the Battle.—The repulse of this desperate charge ended the most bloody battle ever fought in America. Lee had lost 16,000 men killed and wounded, and 5,000 prisoners. He was so far from his base of supplies that his exhausted ammunition could not be replenished, so as to attack Meade again on July 4th. The Southern commander and his army, however, undiscouraged by their first serious repulse, hoped that General Meade would now attack them. But the Federal general felt in no condition for such attack. He had lost 23,000 men and some of his best officers. He knew that Lee must either fight or fall back, and he let things take their course. As the Southern army was not molested during the 4th, Lee had his dead buried and the wounded who were able to travel put into ambulances; made

provision for those who could not be moved, and withdrew his whole force during the night. The swollen streams and muddy roads made the marching difficult, but the Federals did little to harass the retreat.

The Confederate Army Returns to Virginia.—Lee's pontoon bridges over the upper Potomac had been destroyed by Federal cavalry, and when the Southern army reached Hagerstown, on July 7th, the river was too high to be forded. Defences had, therefore, to be thrown up in case Meade should attack. When the Federal army came up, on the 12th, instead of attacking at once, it fortified also. General Lee had by this time built a new bridge, the river had fallen so that cavalry and light wagons could ford it, and, on the night of July 13th and the forenoon of the 14th, the Southern army moved safely back to Virginia, and retired towards Winchester. About the end of the month Meade also crossed the Potomac east of the Blue Ridge, and Lee fell back in front of him, behind the Rapidan River.

Effects of Gettysburg.—Lee had accomplished, for a few weeks, the first object he had in entering Pennsylvania, but had failed in the second. Not one of Jackson's successors had proved like him, prompt and able to carry out his great commander's plans, swiftly and surely. The battle of Gettysburg was a great success and cause of joy to the North—a crushing blow to the South. By it the war spirit at the North was kindled afresh, the Peace party was silenced, and the friends of the Confederacy were discouraged at home and abroad.

A Campaign of Strategy.—Later in the season two Federal corps were detached from Meade's army, and Lee sent Longstreet with two divisions to reinforce Bragg in Tennessee. It was principally a "campaign of strategy," in which each commander sought to outwit the other. On the 27th of November General Meade crossed the Rapidan to get between Lee and Richmond. Lee fell back, and for three days waited in a fortified position on Mine Run for Meade to attack him. There was heavy Federal cannonading, and Meade would have attacked, but that General Warren, who was appointed to make the assault, declined to

sacrifice his men in what he believed would prove a useless effort. The Federal army was then withdrawn in the night, a few hours before Lee expected to make an attack upon it. After this both armies went into winter quarters.

QUESTIONS.—1. What move was now made by General Lee? 2. What town was taken by General Ewell, and where did he immediately go? 3. What objects had Lee in going into Pennsylvania? 4. How were supplies obtained? 5. How did Lee's army behave? 6. What was the feeling at the North about General Lee's advance into Pennsylvania? 7. Where and when did the armies meet, and who was the Federal commander? 8. Tell of the first day's fight at Gettysburg. 9. Of the second day's fight. 10. Tell of the third day's fight and of Pickett's and Pettigrew's charge. 11. Describe the end of the battle. 12. Which side was victorious, and what were the losses? 13. What movement was then made by General Lee? 14. What delayed his return to Virginia? 15. When did the Federal army cross again into Virginia? 16. What were the effects of the battle of Gettysburg? 17. Of what sort was the next campaign? 18. Why was there no fight at Mine Run? 19. Find all the places on the map.

CHAPTER LV.

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION, CONTINUED—1863.

Grant Against Vicksburg.—A few Federal gunboats had succeeded in running past Vicksburg and Port Hudson, but the Confederates still held the Mississippi River between those points. All communication between the ports of the Confederacy east and west of the river, and the possibility of passing troops and animals from one side to the other, depended on their continuing to hold it. The defence of Vicksburg was entrusted to General John C. Pemberton, and General U. S. Grant devoted his energies to its capture. Finding it impossible to attack Vicksburg on the northeast, General Grant crossed his men to the west side of the Mississippi, marched them seventy miles southward, and then brought them again to the east side of the river, at Bruinsburg, on April 30th. He defeated the

Confederates at Port Gibson and Raymond, and moved towards Jackson, the capital of Mississippi. To assist in his plans, Grant sent a strong cavalry force under Grierson through the State to destroy the railroads, bridges, cars and engines, and the supplies of all kinds.

Joseph E. Johnston to Defend Mississippi.—General Joseph E. Johnston, who commanded in Mississippi, tried to collect at Jackson a force with which to co-operate with Pemberton, who was between Grant and Vicksburg, but Grierson's destruction of the roads made it impossible for Southern reinforcements to reach Jackson rapidly. He had only 6,000 troops when two Federal corps advanced on the town. Having removed the government property, Johnston withdrew his force to Canton. After destroying the railroads, workshops and everything valuable to the Southern army, Grant moved westward against Pemberton, who had been ordered by Johnston to concentrate his forces and strike Grant's rear as he moved eastward; and to keep up the communications between himself and Johnston. When Johnston left Jackson, he ordered Pemberton to move northward and join him at Clinton. Instead of doing this, Pemberton moved towards the south; and when he, at last, began to retrace his steps, marched so slowly that Grant's scattered divisions had time to concentrate and attack him, on May 16th, near Edward's Depot, and drive him, with severe loss, behind Big Black River. The next day, his army was still more seriously injured, and he drew it back within the fortifications of Vicksburg. General Johnston had especially wished to prevent this. He knew that Pemberton's army of 34,000, if shut up in Vicksburg with provisions for only a few months, must be, in time, destroyed or captured by General Grant's superior forces. He, therefore, wrote to Pemberton that if he were once surrounded he would be obliged to surrender, and ordered him to leave Vicksburg immediately and move towards the northeast. Pemberton received this order, on May 18th, and had time to obey it; but he wrote to General Johnston that he declined to leave Vicksburg.

Vicksburg Besieged.—Grant's divisions quickly replaced the bridges over the Big Black River, which the Confederates had burned behind them. Sherman, McClernand and McPherson brought their men rapidly forward, and, on May 19th, completely invested Vicksburg. Heavy assaults upon the Confederate intrenchments were made by General Grant's orders on the 19th, and again on the 22d. In both attacks the Federals were repulsed with such severe loss that Grant thought it useless to renew them, and began a regular siege of the city.

Attack from the Federal Fleet and Batteries.—Federal vessels on the water front, and powerful land batteries now joined in the siege, and hurled shot and shell continuously into the city. For want of ammunition, the Confederate guns rarely replied.¹ Grant's army was reinforced until it numbered 80,000 men. Johnston had only 25,000, and Grant fortified his rear so strongly that no successful attack could be made upon it.

Famine.—Want of food soon became a powerful ally to the besieging army. By the last of May there were only half rations of bacon, and supplies of all sorts, grew rapidly less. Bacon was soon replaced by scanty rations of mule meat. The hungry soldiers had to do constant duty in the trenches. The summer heat, starvation and want of rest combined to exhaust the strength of the garrison. An effort to relieve them from Arkansas failed, and their condition grew worse day by day. The citizens were not exposed in the trenches like the soldiers, but fared quite as hardly in other respects, and the courage and patience with which both troops and people endured their dangers and privations were wonderful; the women allowed nothing to interrupt their constant ministrations to the sick and wounded.

¹ Vicksburg was so unsafe from the incessant firing, that the citizens left their homes and took shelter in caves and chambers dug in the sides of the hills. They fitted these up with the furniture from their homes, and were in comparative safety. As the siege went on, the soldiers found similar protection when not kept in the trenches. Messengers from General Johnston got into the town occasionally, and carried caps for firing the muskets. As the besiegers advanced their lines closer to the town, they dug mines to blow up the defences, hoping to effect an entrance through the breaches. The first mine was exploded on June 25th, a second on July 1st. The fierce assaults made on these occasions were repulsed by the hard-pressed Confederates with desperate fighting.

The End Near.—General Pemberton sent urgent requests to General Johnston to attack Grant and raise the siege. Johnston replied that their combined efforts could not save Vicksburg, but might possibly extricate the garrison. He also informed Pemberton that he would attack Grant on July 7th, and urged the garrison to co-operate with him and try to cut its way out. The end came before that time.

Vicksburg Surrendered.—General Pemberton sent General Grant an offer of capitulation on July 3d. Grant replied that he would only accept unconditional surrender. Pemberton agreed, and on the next day, July 4th, surrendered the town with 31,600 men—thousands of whom were disabled by wounds and disease—seventy-two cannon and 60,000 muskets. The men were paroled and allowed to go home.¹

The Confederacy Cut in Two.—The fall of Vicksburg occurred at the same time with Lee's defeat at Gettysburg, and added greatly to the Northern delight and the depression of the South. In consequence of it Port Hudson, the last Southern fortification on the Mississippi, surrendered a few days later, the whole of the great river was opened to Federal vessels, and Louisiana, Texas and Arkansas were cut off from the rest of the Confederacy, but they proved their devotion to the principles for which they contended by remaining steadfast to the Southern cause.

Sherman at Jackson.—On his way to Vicksburg Johnston learned of Pemberton's surrender and fell back to Jackson. Sherman, with a large force and powerful guns, moved against him, while another body of Federal troops marched so as to turn his left flank. Being too weak to hold Jackson, Johnston removed most of the stores and all the sick and wounded who could travel, and evacuated the town on the night of July 10th. General Sherman did not discover Johnston's move until it was completed.

¹The paroling took some time, and the starving Confederates were provided with rations by their captors. The soldiers showed them much kindness, gave them tobacco and food, and when, worn and weary, the gallant defenders marched out of their entrenchments, forebore uttering a single cheer of triumph. Much of this forbearance was, no doubt, due to General Grant, who directed "the commands to be orderly and quiet as these prisoners pass," and "to make no offensive remarks."

He then took possession of Jackson and burned the government and railroad buildings and nearly the whole town.¹

The Country Wasted.—During the siege of Vicksburg, Grant sent Blair's division to ravage, "burn and destroy" in the region along the Yazoo River. Sherman now proceeded in the same way, "absolutely stripping the country of corn, cattle, hogs, sheep, poultry, everything," and throwing the growing corn "open as pasture fields," until the ruthless commander himself acknowledged that the destruction of the country was terrible to look upon. By July 23d, his work of destruction being completed, Sherman moved back from Jackson to Vicksburg, and the Vicksburg campaign was over.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was the condition of affairs on the Mississippi? 2. What was General Grant's plan? 3. What victories did he gain? 4. Who was made Confederate commander in Mississippi? 5. Who commanded at Vicksburg? 6. What movements were made by General Pemberton? 7. How did he disobey his superior in command? 8. Describe the siege of Vicksburg. 9. Tell of the attacks by land and water. 10. Describe the cave life of the besieged (note). 11. Tell of the famine in the city. 12. What was General Johnston's plan to save Pemberton's army, and why was it not carried out? 13. What happened on the 4th of July? 14. Describe the surrender of Vicksburg, and the behavior of the Federal troops (note). 15. How did the fall of Vicksburg affect the Confederacy? 16. Tell of Sherman's move against Jackson, and what he did there. 17. Tell of the destruction wrought by him and Blair throughout the country. 18. Find on the map all the places mentioned.

CHAPTER LVI.

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION, CONTINUED—1863.

Cavalry Raids.—We must now turn our attention to the two armies confronting each other in Tennessee. General Bragg's force was in good condition, but had done no fighting since Murfreesboro'. Considerable work had, however, been done by

¹ Writing of this burning, Sherman said: "We have made fine progress to-day in the work of destruction," and "this city is a mass of charred ruins."

his cavalry in checking the advances and raids of the Federal cavalry.

Morgan's Raid.—Early in June General Morgan, with 2,000 cavalry, made a raid through Kentucky. He moved rapidly across Tennessee, capturing small garrisons as he went. On through Kentucky he swept, cheering his friends, frightening his foes, and enlisting a number of recruits. On July 8th the adventurous command crossed the Ohio, and, riding through Indiana and Ohio, defeated thousands of citizen soldiers gathered to head it off, captured towns and prisoners, destroyed railroads, bridges, depots and stores, and got back to the Ohio, seven miles from Cincinnati, on the 14th. In these six days Morgan had taken and paroled 6,000 prisoners, cut many railroads, destroyed some \$10,000,000 worth of public property, and had terrified the population of two States.

Morgan's Capture and Escape.—By this time his men and horses were both worn out. The governor of Ohio had called out the militia. The roads were all ambuscaded. The Ohio River was guarded by gunboats and by forces on the shore, and



W. S. ROSECRANS.

the getting out of the State was much more difficult than getting into it. Hundreds of Morgan's men made their way back to Kentucky, but hundreds were taken prisoners, among them General Morgan himself.¹

Bragg at Chattanooga.—By the middle of June Rosecrans's army was increased to 70,000 men, while Bragg's force had been weakened by sending troops to Mississippi, and was only 44,000. The authorities at Washington urged Rosecrans to advance, and on June 23d he moved eastward to turn Bragg's right and cut him off from the East and from Georgia. Bragg fell back to Chattanooga² and threw up intrenchments.

¹ He and twenty-eight of his officers were confined in the penitentiary at Columbus. Their heads were shaved, and they were subjected to other indignities. In November Morgan and six of his comrades made their escape through a tunnel which they dug under the prison walls.

² Chattanooga is on the south bank of the Tennessee River, at the mouth of Chattanooga Valley, lying between the steep, rocky heights of Lookout Mountain

Federal Success in East Tennessee.—General Buckner was at Knoxville with 4,000 Confederates. General Burnside moved from Kentucky against him with 15,000 men, and Buckner's force fell back. A Confederate garrison of 2,000 at Cumberland Gap was captured by Burnside, and East Tennessee was again in possession of Federal troops. Foiled in his effort to flank Bragg on the right, Rosecrans now hoped to get behind him on the left. He crossed the Tennessee River west of Chattanooga, repaired the railroads as he advanced, and hoped to get into Georgia without serious hindrance.

Battle of Chickamauga.—As Rosecrans moved down the valley west of Lookout Mountain to turn Bragg's left flank, that commander left Chattanooga for Chickamauga Valley to protect the railroad into Georgia. Rosecrans at once occupied Chattanooga and advanced against Bragg's front. General Longstreet had been sent from Virginia with 5,000 men to strengthen Bragg's army, but all of these had not reached the field when the battle was joined, on September 19th. In the first day's fight Bragg tried to get behind his enemy's left, between him Chattanooga, but Rosecrans's superior numbers made the effort unsuccessful. Both armies slept on the field. Longstreet came up in the night with the rest of his men, and was given command of the left of the Confederate army, which was, at that late hour, reorganized into two corps.

Second Day's Fight.—Bragg ordered his whole line to attack very early on the 20th. The morning broke with a dense fog. Reorganizing the army in the midst of a battle caused confusion, and the fighting was not renewed until 10 o'clock. Longstreet's force drove back the Federal right where General Rosecrans was in person, until both right and centre fled in confusion to Chattanooga. General Thomas, who commanded the Federal left opposite to Lieutenant-General Polk, had greatly strengthened his position during the night by felling trees and throwing up

on the west and Missionary Ridge on the east. A creek of the same name runs through the Valley. East of Missionary Ridge is Chickamauga Valley, through which runs Chickamauga Creek. The region consists of range after range of mountains, with narrow valleys lying between.

earthworks. Polk's command was slow in getting into action, his subordinate generals did not all co-operate promptly, and his attack failed to overcome Thomas's stout resistance, and drive him also from his entrenchments. In the night of the 20th, however, Thomas fell back, leaving his dead and wounded on the field.



J. C. BRECKINRIDGE.

Forces and Losses.—In the fight along Chickamauga Creek—"The River of Death"—more than 20,000 men had fallen. Bragg had put some 50,000 men into the battle, Rosecrans 55,000. Including prisoners, the loss on each side was about 16,000. The Confederates captured 8,000 prisoners, many of them wounded, fifty-one guns, 15,000 small arms, and quantities of ammunition, wagons, and hospital stores.

Bragg After the Battle.—General Bragg allowed the Federal army to withdraw without hindrance into the fortifications at Chattanooga and make them stronger. The Confederate army knew that the different Federal corps might have been attacked in detail before their concentration, and that the plan of battle on the 19th and 20th had been a poor one; and, when General Bragg did nothing to follow up his victory, they lost confidence in him, and begged for another commander. Bragg threw the burden of the failure on his subordinate officers. Unfortunately for the South, he was retained in his position, notwithstanding the dissatisfaction of his army.

New Confederate Position.—Bragg now moved to the heights in front of Chattanooga, established his line from the northern crest of Lookout Mountain across Chattanooga Valley to the top of Missionary Ridge, and held the roads south of the river. The Confederate cavalry passed round Rosecrans's rear, captured his wagon trains, cut the railroads, and bid fair to starve him out. The Federal situation was extremely critical. The troops in Chattanooga were suffering for food, clothing, and supplies of all sort, and their horses and cattle were dying of hunger. In the emergency, the Federal authorities turned

to the men who had been successful in Mississippi. General Grant was ordered to take command at Chattanooga, and Sherman, from Vicksburg, and Hooker, from Virginia, were hurried thither with their men.

General Grant at Chattanooga.—General Grant was very lame from a fall, but he hastened to Chattanooga, which he reached on October 23d. Rosecrans was removed and Thomas put in his place. Efforts were immediately made to supply ammunition, food and clothing to the destitute soldiers in Chattanooga. Several thousand men from the town were floated on pontoons past the Confederate pickets to Brown's Ferry, where they captured the guard on the south side of the river. Another force marched down the north bank of the river, and a bridge was quickly laid across the ferry, over which Hooker's men crossed, and occupied Lookout Valley. As the Tennessee River was now held by the Federals from Bridgeport to Brown's Ferry, they brought men and provisions to the ferry, carried them along the north shore to a point opposite to Chattanooga, and then crossed them over into the town so that the wants of the garrison were soon supplied.

Reinforcements for Grant's Army.—General Bragg attempted to prevent relief of Chattanooga by attacking Hooker's position at the mouth of Lookout Valley, on the night of October 28th, but failed to dislodge him. Sherman moved on through North Alabama and then towards Nashville, to protect the railroad to the Tennessee River.

Bragg's Army Weakened.—While Grant's army was being made stronger, that of Bragg was suddenly weakened. President Davis visited that army late in October. Knowing nothing of the movements to relieve Rosecrans in Chattanooga, Mr. Davis sent General Longstreet with 15,000 men and Wheeler's cavalry to East Tennessee, to drive Burnside from Knoxville. Grant learned of this movement, and determined to strike Bragg's force while it was in its weakened condition. When Sherman's corps reached Chattanooga, on November 15th, it brought up the army there to 80,000 men. Bragg's force was little more

than half as many. The Federal authorities doubted whether Burnside could hold East Tennessee against Longstreet, and Grant wished to defeat Bragg at once and then move to Burnside's help.

Flanking Bragg's Position.—I told you before that Bragg held the north end of Lookout Mountain, the Valley between it and Missionary Ridge and that Ridge which he had strongly fortified. Grant now ordered most of his men to the north side of the river, marched them eastward, and then crossed them back to the south side where they could strike the right flank of the Confederate army. Sherman and Howard made the movement, but Hooker's corps could not cross the swollen river, and had to advance on the south side of it. Thomas held the centre at Chattanooga.

Battle of Lookout Mountain and Missionary Ridge.—Hooker was ordered to cross the north end of Lookout Mountain, and to move through Chattanooga Valley and seize the south end of Missionary Ridge. Sherman was to seize the north end of the ridge and then Thomas was to attack the centre. On the 23d, Thomas captured the advanced Confederate position at Wood's Fort. The next day Sherman, who had crossed the river safely, seized the north end of Missionary Ridge. At the same time, Hooker's force clambered boldly up the steep ascent of Lookout Mountain and drove the Confederates from its northern end. The Confederates fell back across Chattanooga Creek, burnt the bridges, and occupied a strong position on Missionary Ridge, which by determined resistance they might have held. But either through lack of confidence in their commanders or from discouragement at the greatly outnumbering forces moving against them, the Southern troops did not in this encounter manifest their usual determined courage. The guns were not handled with spirit, and failed to check the Federal advance, and as Thomas's men swarmed up the mountain side and over the earthworks, the Confederates gave way and retreated before them panic stricken. The abandoned Southern guns were seized by the Federals and turned upon the fleeing men. No efforts

availed to rally the fugitives. The whole Confederate position was abandoned and the defeated army was rapidly withdrawn to Ringgold and thence to Dalton.

Results of the Battle.—The losses in the battle were about 6,000 on each side, but most of the Southern loss was of men captured without a wound; forty guns and thousands of small arms were also taken by the Federal army. General Grant kept up a pursuit of Bragg for some days, and sent at once 20,000 men to Burnside's aid in East Tennessee. This forced Longstreet to abandon his fruitless siege of Knoxville, and placed East Tennessee once more under the control of Federal armies. Longstreet had a hard time in the hostile, northern part of the State. Averill's Federal cavalry cut the railroads in Southwestern Virginia, and Longstreet was for some time unable to communicate with the other Southern armies. President Davis was at last obliged to remove General Bragg from command of the Army of Tennessee, which was given to General Joseph E. Johnston. Both armies now went into winter quarters.

Condition of the Armies, 1863.—The year had been very successful for the Northern armies, and equally disastrous to the South. The Federals had gained possession of the Mississippi River, had thus cut the Confederacy in two, and held much of Arkansas and Louisiana west of the river. They occupied Tennessee and northern Mississippi, and made devastating raids into Alabama and Georgia. The northern part of Virginia was overrun and desolated by them. The limits of the Confederacy were narrowed on all sides, and its resources were crippled and overtaxed. There were thousands of deserters from the Southern armies, especially from those of Vicksburg and Missionary Ridge, where the soldiers were disheartened by their ill-success and the wretched condition of their families. It was impossible to enforce the conscription laws, and from the desertions and the heavy losses in the many Southern defeats, there were little more than 400,000 men on the Confederate rolls at the close of 1863, and fully one-third of these were absent from the ranks. The Federal armies at the time numbered largely over 1,000,000.

In this state of affairs, the North was naturally exultant and defiant, though many grieved for loved ones slain in battle, and many lamented the constant increase of despotism and the decay of constitutional liberty. Notwithstanding all their sufferings and reverses and the great disparity of numbers, the Southern people and the Confederate government preserved a buoyant, determined spirit, and hoped for ultimate success.

QUESTIONS.—1. Tell of cavalry raids in Tennessee. 2. Describe Morgan's raid through Kentucky and into Ohio. 3. Tell of his capture and escape (note). 4. What movements were made by Rosecrans and Bragg? 5. What success did the Federals meet with in East Tennessee? 6. How is Chattanooga situated (note)? 7. Tell of the battle of Chickamauga. 8. Describe the second day's fight. 9. What forces were engaged, and what losses sustained on both sides? 10. How did General Bragg behave after the battle? 11. What new position did he take? 12. Who was ordered to take command of the Federal forces at Chattanooga? 13. What movements were made by Grant, and what disposition did he make of his forces? 14. Who came to reinforce Grant's army? 15. How was Bragg's army weakened at this time? 16. Tell of Grant's effort to flank Bragg's position. 17. Describe the battles of Lookout Mountain and Missionary Ridge. 18. What were the results of this battle? 19. Tell of Longstreet's difficulties in Tennessee? 20. What was the condition of the country and of the army at the end of 1863? 21. Find the places on the map.

CHAPTER LVII.

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION, CONTINUED—1864.

Victory at Olustee, 1864.—During the early months of this year the Confederates gained a number of successes, which proved that their spirit had not been cowed by their great defeats in 1863. At Olustee, near Ocean Pond, in Florida, General Finnegan, with 2,500 of his own men and an equal number of Colquitt's brigade, on February 20th, met and defeated the Federal General Seymour at the head of about 7,000 men. The Confederate force captured five cannon, a number of small arms and 1,800 prisoners, losing only 250 men themselves. In

consequence of this victory the Federal troops were driven from Florida and the State was preserved to the Confederacy.

Sherman Returns to Vicksburg.—When he had driven the Confederates from East Tennessee, Sherman took his command back to Vicksburg and prepared to move against Mobile, in Alabama, wishing, also, to destroy Meridian, Mississippi, an important point where the principal railroads of the Gulf States cross each other. Grierson and Smith were to come from Memphis to join him. Sherman had at his disposal about 30,000 infantry and 10,000 cavalry. General Polk, commanding the Confederate forces in Mississippi and Alabama, had not more than 20,000 men scattered through both States, with some 4,000 cavalry. He could not prevent Sherman's advance to Meridian, though Forrest, with about 3,000 horsemen, kept up constant skirmishing with the superior force of the enemy.



J. P. ANDERSON.

Sherman at Meridian.—As Sherman moved towards Meridian, spreading desolation along his route, Polk moved southward to protect Mobile. Sherman occupied the town, and on February 16th set 10,000 men to destroying the railroads. After laboring at these for five days, they fired the town and nearly wiped it out of existence—depots, storehouses, hospitals, hotels, and private houses all perishing in the flames. The railroads and bridges were destroyed for many miles, and the corn and cotton either carried off or burned. The Federal cavalry under General Sooy Smith was also sent to destroy the railroads and devastate the country east of Meridian.

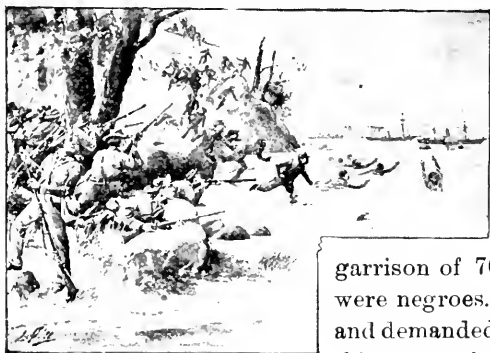


S. D. LEE.

Forrest's Victories.—Forrest, who has been called the Stonewall Jackson of the South, followed Smith's devastators, with 2,500 cavalry, and inflicted two severe defeats upon them, first in the prairie country near West Point, Mississippi, and again at Okalona. So much damage was done

them that the Federal command retreated to Memphis, leaving six cannon, three flags, 162 prisoners, and all their dead and wounded in Forrest's hands, who lost only 144 men himself. This defeat of his cavalry compelled Sherman to withdraw from Alabama to Vicksburg.

Capture of Fort Pillow.—After this, Forrest moved again into Western Tennessee, gained several successes there, and on



CAPTURE OF FORT PILLOW.

April 12th captured and destroyed Fort Pillow, standing on a bluff a little above Memphis. The fort was defended along the river front by gunboats, and had a

garrison of 700 men, 500 of whom were negroes. Forrest invested it, and demanded its surrender. When this was refused he assaulted the fort and carried the works after a

brief resistance. The garrison fled towards the gunboats. Forrest had companies stationed on the flat below the bluff, on both sides of the fort. As the fleeing garrison rushed along the flat, a murderous cross-fire from the Confederate muskets mowed them down. The assaulting force also pursued them; thus they were attacked on both flanks and in the rear, and some 500 were slain or drowned in trying to reach the gunboats.¹

Battle of Mansfield, Louisiana.—After Sherman returned to Vicksburg from Meridian, he sent 10,000 of his men across the Mississippi to assist General Banks in an expedition up the

¹ The negroes who escaped told wild stories of the barbarity of Forrest's men, and the North waxed very indignant over the "Massacre at Fort Pillow." The truth was, that so far from murdering his wounded prisoners, Forrest tried to deliver them at once to the Federal vessels, and did so next day. The Confederate Congress investigated all the facts, and passed a vote of thanks to Forrest and his men for their brilliant and successful campaign. The slander, nevertheless, stimulated the hatred of the South among her enemies, both at the North and in Europe.

Red River, to capture Shreveport and move on into Texas. Banks had about 40,000 men, with gunboats and transports. Kirby Smith commanded the Confederate Department west of the Mississippi, and General Dick Taylor, son of old General Zachary Taylor, the forces in Louisiana. Taylor could not prevent Banks's advance, and fell slowly back before him. By April 8th he had gathered 15,000 men, whom he stationed across Banks's road near Mansfield, and waited to be attacked. When the Federals did not come on, Taylor made the attack himself, and by nightfall drove them from the field with great loss. Guns, wagons, small arms were captured, and prisoners by thousands. At Pleasant Hill, the retreating army made a stand, and checked the advance of their pursuers, though they suffered more loss than they inflicted.



RICHARD TAYLOR.

Banks Retreats to New Orleans.—Banks now fell back to New Orleans, laying waste the whole country in revenge for his disasters. His troops were described as marching "with a torch in their right hand, plunder in their left, and their arms on their backs." By the time he got to New Orleans he had lost 8,000 killed and wounded, 6,000 prisoners, thirty-five cannon, 1,200 wagons and 20,000 stand of small arms.

Kilpatrick's Raid.—Before the campaign opened in Virginia, Kilpatrick, with 4,000 cavalry, made a raid round Lee's lines to destroy the railroads between him and Richmond. They were then to make a dash into Richmond, set the Federal prisoners there free, and do as much damage as possible. The plan was frustrated by the stout resistance of citizen soldiers, by high waters, bad roads and ignorance of the country.¹

Grant Made Commander-in-Chief.—In March, General U. S.

¹ Part of the command, which became separated from the main body, was attacked by a small force of home guards, and its leader, Colonel Ulric Dahlgren, was killed. In Dahlgren's pocket was found an address to his officers and men exhorting them to free the prisoners in Richmond; to burn the city; to kill Jefferson Davis and his Cabinet; and to commit other horrible deeds. This paper was signed with Dahlgren's name, but the United States government and General Meade denied that any such orders had been given him.

Grant was brought to Washington and made Lieutenant-General and head of all the United States forces, and thus was second only to the President. Sherman was, at the same time, given the chief command from the Alleghany Mountains to the Mississippi, and McPherson was put in Sherman's place at the head of the Army of Tennessee.

Grant's Plan.—The only two Southern armies of any strength now in the field were Lee's force on the Rapidan, and Johnston's



GENERAL U. S. GRANT.

at Dalton, Georgia. Grant determined to strike both at once. He ordered Sherman to move against Johnston, and break up his army, and then to march on through the Southeastern States, destroying as he went everything which could help the Confederates to carry on the war. Banks was to prevent reinforcements going to Johnston, by moving towards Mobile and destroying the railroads in Alabama.

Force Against Richmond.—Grant took his own place with Meade's army in Virginia. He had all the resources of the Federal government at his disposal, and no one murmured at anything he ordered. There were 125,000 men and 325 cannon on the north bank of the Rapidan. Sigel with a considerable force was to move up the Valley of Virginia and cut off supplies for Lee. Butler was directed to come with his 30,000 men from Fortress Monroe towards Richmond, to co-operate with Meade. Lee had only 62,000 men and 224 guns with which to meet the great hosts coming against him.

Lee's Movements.—Grant's army crossed the Rapidan on May 4th, expecting to turn Lee's right flank. Lee, however, intercepted the Federal movement, but ordered Ewell and Hill who led the advance, to avoid a general engagement until the rest of the troops came up. Longstreet, who had gotten back from Tennessee, was at Gordonsville with two divisions, twenty miles away.

Battles of the Wilderness.—Both armies now plunged into the Wilderness country, covered with a thick, tangled undergrowth, and crossed by a few narrow bad roads. The Federal generals knew little about it, and had no idea that Lee's force was within a few miles of them. The Confederate advance under Ewell, and the Federals under Warren, came into collision, on the morning of May 5th, and the woods were soon full of fighting. Warren at first gained ground, but was then driven back and lost 3,000 prisoners; while two of Hill's divisions (Heth and Wilcox) repulsed Hancock's repeated assaults. Both sides slept on their arms ready for the deadly work of the next morning.

Lee to the Rear.—It was a terrible place for a battle. Owing to the dense growth, one could see only a few yards away. To manœuvre was impossible. Cavalry and artillery were nearly useless, and the infantry had to fight almost hand-to-hand. General Grant ordered his whole line to attack at 5 o'clock, on the morning of the 6th. Lee wished to attack also, but Longstreet's force and Hill's third division had not come up. Han-

cock's 40,000 men fell upon Hill and drove the centre and right back in confusion. Just then Longstreet's troops arrived, and, in their turn, attacked Hancock and drove him back to his breast-works.¹

End of the Battle.—Unfortunately, General Longstreet was severely wounded and unable to carry out his plans, and a second attack upon Hancock failed to drive him from his position. But when night came, the balance of success was on the Confederate side. Gordon, on Lee's left, had done much damage to Sedgwick. Hancock's attack on the right and Burnside's in the centre, had both failed, and Warren on the left had met with heavy loss. In the two days' fighting, Grant had lost 17,666 men, Lee about half that number. The dead



N. G. EVANS.

and wounded lay everywhere among the tangled growth, and, as the woods took fire from shot and shell, many of them perished in the flames.

The Race for Spotsylvania.—Both armies watched each other all day of the 7th. In the night Grant intended to slip by Lee's right, but Lee had ordered Anderson to march to Spotsylvania Courthouse at 3 o'clock in the morning. Anderson moved at 11 and won the "Race for Spotsylvania," getting there in time to assist Stuart's cavalry in heading off Grant's advance. The Southerners thus had possession of the roads, and the choice of position. Both armies threw up strong lines of earthworks very near each other.

The Bloody Angle.—From the 8th to the 20th of May, heavy assaults were made on Lee's lines. Early on the morning of the 12th, a projecting point in the Confederate earthworks was seized, and two generals, 3,000 men and twenty-four guns

¹ It was here that General Lee met some of Longstreet's force coming forward at a double-quick. He saw that they were Texans; called out, "Hurrah for Texas! Hurrah for Texas!" and rode to their front with the order "Charge!" The soldiers, fearing lest their beloved commander might be shot, cried "Lee to the rear." A gray-haired sergeant seized his bridle, and said: "General Lee, if you do not go back, we will not go forward." The general yielded to this appeal, and the gallant Texans swept on, changing the face of the battle.

were captured. Lee's men rallied to the point, while the Federal troops poured in by thousands. Unable to drive them out, the Southerners slew so many of them that the space within the salient was known as the "Bloody Angle." The Federals could not penetrate the second line of defences, though the deadly struggle continued until far into the night. In one of the hottest moments, General Lee was again prevented by the cries of his men, from leading a column into action. Stout oak trees were cut down by musket balls during this fight.

Grant's Losses.—Other attacks, on the 18th and 19th, failed to drive the Southern army an inch. At Spotsylvania, Grant had lost 18,399 men, making almost 40,000 since the campaign opened—nearly two-thirds of Lee's whole force. Grant knew, however, that though Lee's loss was much less than his own, he could, by a similar process, destroy Lee's entire army and keep his own ranks full. He had already received 35,000 reinforcements, and could get all he called for.

Move Towards Richmond.—On the night of May 20th the Federal army made another flank movement to the North Anna River, but Lee was again too quick for it. This sidling process was continued for ten days. Grant found Lee in his front at each point which he hoped to seize, and when, on the 31st, he reached McClellan's former position at Cold Harbor, the Confederates were there before him, behind strong fortifications.

Stuart Killed at Yellow Tavern.—A grievous loss had in the meantime befallen the Southern cause. Sheridan, with 10,000 Federal cavalry, had ridden towards Richmond to cut Lee's communications. Stuart followed him with less than 4,000 men. A fierce but unequal fight between them took place at Yellow Tavern, six miles from Richmond, on May 9th, in which Stuart received a mortal wound, from which he died the next day. Stuart was the finest cavalry officer America ever produced, and his loss to the Confederate cause was almost as great as that of Stonewall Jackson.

Sigel and Butler Defeated.—Sigel, of whose expected advance up the Valley I have told you, had been defeated at New

Market, on May 15th, by Breckinridge. The Federal force numbered 6,500 men. That of the Confederates not quite so many. In Breckinridge's army the battalion of boys from the Virginia Military Institute fought like veterans, and lost some fifty of their number killed and wounded. If Butler from Fortress Monroe had been prompt, he could have seized Petersburg, and so have changed the condition of affairs, but he moved slowly, and was, on May 16th, attacked by Beauregard with not half as many men, and shut up in the neck of land between the James and Appomattox rivers. Thus "bottled up," he could make no use of his 30,000 men. Twelve thousand five hundred of them were afterwards carried across the James to Grant's army before Richmond.

Second Cold Harbor.—Grant had now 113,000 men. Lee, also, had been reinforced till his army again numbered 60,000. On the morning of June 3d Grant threw his men on Lee's works in a tremendous assault. They advanced in double lines six miles long, but could accomplish nothing. Lee's men, behind their breastworks, received little injury, and slew their assailants by thousands. Twelve thousand seven hundred and thirty-seven of them fell in less than a half-hour, and when Grant ordered a second attack the soldiers refused to move forward. The officers saw that there was no hope of success, and at mid-day offensive operations were suspended.

Losses.—Grant had 192,000 men in the field during the month of this campaign, and had lost 60,000 of them in getting to the place where McClellan had been two years before. Lee, with all his possible reinforcements, had only 78,400 men from the Wilderness to Cold Harbor. His loss is nowhere exactly stated, but it is estimated at 20,000.

Hunter's March Up the Valley.—General David Hunter, one of the few Virginians in arms against the State, succeeded to Sigel's command after the battle of New Market. With 10,000 men, he routed the small forces opposed to him, advanced up the Valley of Virginia, plundering, burning and destroying as he went. At Staunton he was joined by Crook and Averill,

with whom he proceeded to Lexington and Lynchburg. Much of the force were 100-days' men, who stole and burned better than they fought. At Lexington Hunter burned the barracks and professors' houses of the Military Institute and Governor Letcher's house. At Lynchburg he was met by Breckinridge and Early, with 10,000 men from Lee's army. After some little fighting, the Federals retreated rapidly to the Kanawha Valley. Sheridan, who was sent with 10,000 cavalry to cut the railroads and join Hunter at Lynchburg, was so severely handled at Trevillian's by Hampton, with 4,000 Confederate cavalry, that he at once returned to Grant's army.

QUESTIONS.—1. What victory was gained in Florida by the Confederate forces in 1864? 2. What movement was Sherman preparing to make? 3. How many men did he have? 4. Tell of Sherman at Meridian. 5. What victories were won by Forrest? 6. Describe the capture of Fort Pillow. 7. With what force did Banks advance into Louisiana? 8. Tell of General Taylor's success at Mansfield. 9. Of Banks's retreat to New Orleans and of his losses. 10. What raid was Kilpatrick sent on? 11. What of Dahlgren's share in it (note)? 12. Who was now made commander-in-chief of the Federal forces? 13. What was Grant's plan? 14. What forces were to move against Richmond? 15. What were General Lee's movements? 16. Describe the battles of the Wilderness. 17. Tell the story of Lee to the rear (note). 18. How did the battle end? 19. Who won "The race for Spotsylvania"? 20. Tell of the terrible fighting at the "Bloody Angle." 21. What were Grant's losses in these battles? 22. What movement did Grant now make towards Richmond? 23. What gallant general was killed at Yellow Tavern? 24. When and where was Sigel defeated? 25. What became of Butler? 26. Tell of the second battle of Cold Harbor. 27. What losses had been sustained on both sides? 28. Describe Hunter's march through the Valley. 29. What happened at Trevillian's? 30. Find all the places on the map.

CHAPTER LVIII.

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION, CONTINUED—1864.

The Armies in Georgia.—As Grant had ordered, Sherman moved against Dalton, on May 4th, with nearly 100,000 well

equipped men. Johnston had some 40,000 poorly provided soldiers, and was afterwards joined by 19,000 more under Lieutenant-General Polk. Sherman's object was to destroy Johnston's army and reach Atlanta, Georgia. The great superiority of the Federals made it impossible for Johnston to maintain an



advanced position, much less to move forward, as he was urged to do from Richmond.

Continued Flanking Movements.—The mountainous, rough country afforded so many strong positions for defence that Sherman adopted the tactics of continually flanking the Southern army, instead of attacking it in its fortifications. He had so many men that he could threaten Johnston's front with a large force, while other corps were moving to get behind him. In this manner, the Confederate army was forced to fall back from Dalton to one strong position after another, Sherman always

moving round its left flank. There were constant skirmishes, and several severe encounters, and raiding parties harassed the country.

Fighting at New Hope Church.—Near New Hope Church, Johnston made a determined stand, in defence of the important railroad station at Alatoona. For several days the powerful attacks of Hooker's and Howell's corps were successfully repulsed, but the flanking process was renewed, and first Alatoona and then Marietta were given up as the Confederates fell slowly back.

Death of General Polk.—On June 14th, General Polk was killed by a cannon ball, as he was watching the Federal advance from the top of Pine Knob.¹

Sherman's Continual Advance.—As Sherman continued to move forward by his right flank, Johnston was again compelled to fall back to protect his rear. Again and again the Confederate army repulsed heavy attacks and inflicted severe loss on its assailants. But, though they could check and foil Sherman occasionally, they could not prevent his perpetual advance towards Atlanta. The Southern soldiers were worn out by constant marching over the rough roads, heavy with mud, and by unrelieved exposure in the trenches. They were naturally still more disheartened by the long continued retreat, the causes and strategy of which many did not understand, and under this discouragement many deserted the hardly pressed army, but on the whole the spirit of the army improved even though retreating.

Hood Put in Command.—From point to point the Confederates drew back, until they were beyond the Chattahoochee

¹This brave, good man was a great loss to his men and the whole South. During all the hard marching and fighting of the campaign he had been most earnest in the discharge of his religious duties. The first night after joining General Johnston, the Bishop General baptized General Hood in his tent at midnight, and a few evenings later baptized General Johnston also. Johnston knelt to receive the sacred ordinance, Hood was on crutches and was obliged to stand. The Sunday before his death, Bishop Polk had assembled his staff and read the Episcopal service to them and all who could get within hearing distance. Four religious tracts were found in his pocket, soaked with his heart's blood, three of them directed in his handwriting to Generals Johnston, Hardee and Hood. His remains lie in St. Paul's Church, in Augusta; and all who knew him testified that he was a noble, pure, sincere, Christian man.

River, very near the fortifications around Atlanta. Sherman was close in their front, having repaired the railroads and bridges behind him, so that supplies and reinforcements could easily reach him. Just at this time, when Johnston was in a more favorable condition for fighting than he had been before, the authorities in Richmond, not understanding his difficulties, relieved him from command of the army, and entrusted it to General Hood. Events soon proved that the change was not a fortunate one for the South.

Attack and Defeat.—Sherman now surrounded Atlanta as far as possible, sending McPherson eastward to destroy the railroads and seize Decatur. General Hood had been put at the head of the Confederate army expressly to fight. On July 20th, he made a strong attack on the Federal lines, and for a time carried everything before him. But Hooker's corps came quickly to the aid of their comrades, and, after a half-hour of fierce combat, the Confederates were driven back to their intrenchments, leaving several thousand killed and wounded in their enemy's hands. On the 22nd, Hood again attacked McPherson's command on the southeast of Atlanta, while Wheeler operated in McPherson's rear. Again the Southern soldiers gained a brilliant temporary success. General McPherson and numbers of his men were killed, but, as before, the Confederates experienced such heavy loss that they had again to fall back. Hood then drew his army into the fortifications of Atlanta and the siege of the city began.



HOWELL COBB.

Atlanta Besieged.—Intrenching himself strongly, Sherman again pressed on by the Confederate left, and sent out cavalry expeditions to destroy the railroads east and south of Atlanta. Some of these were severely handled by the Southern cavalry. An expedition of 5,000 Federal horsemen under General Stoneman, which set out to release the Northern prisoners at Macon, was utterly defeated, and Stoneman, with 1,000 men and some cannon, was captured. Hood

made other attacks upon the Federal lines, with no better success than before.

Atlanta Evacuated.—For nearly a month longer the siege lasted, with occasional shelling, a gradual contraction of the Federal lines, and much damage to the railroads by Sherman's cavalry. Wheeler retaliated by breaking the railroad in Sherman's rear and capturing his supplies. At length Sherman moved his whole force west and south of the city. Hood's communications were hopelessly injured, and to save his army from the fate of Vicksburg he was compelled to evacuate Atlanta. What supplies he could not take away were destroyed. Magazines and ordnance stores were exploded, and the Southern army left the city in the night of September 1st.

Sherman in Atlanta.—General Sherman at once occupied Atlanta, put his men in camp for a needed rest, and repaired his communications northward. On the city he laid a relentless hand. All the residents, however helpless or feeble, were driven from their homes. The depots, factories and principal buildings were destroyed, and all the surrounding country laid waste. The capture of Atlanta, with the railroads centering there, was a great blow to the South, as it cut off most valuable supplies from the people and the armies. The North, which had been much depressed by Grant's failure to take Richmond, was filled with exultation at Sherman's success. Admiral Farragut had, in the meantime, taken possession of Mobile Bay, and the thanks of the United States were publicly given to both Sherman and himself, with salutes of 100 guns in honor of their victories at all the Federal arsenals and navy-yards.¹

¹From Dalton to the occupation of Atlanta the Federal army lost, from battle and disease, 47,245 men; the Confederates about 23,000. When Lee invaded Pennsylvania Mr. Lincoln had called out 300,000 men for six months, and three months afterwards he called for 300,000 volunteers for three years, or till the close of the war. In this year, 1864, a draft of 500,000 men was ordered for March 10th another for the regular army and navy on March 14th, and again, on July 18th, President Lincoln called for 500,000 more men for one year, to be drafted if they did not volunteer before September 5th. This was 1,200,000 in nine months. To avoid the drafting, the Northern States and cities offered very large bounties to all who would volunteer. Only half of the 500,000 called for in July were raised, and Mr. Lincoln, on December 19th, ordered a draft of 300,000 more, if they did not volunteer. In 1864 there were not more than 250,000 Confederate soldiers in the field everywhere.

Hood Advances into Tennessee.—While Sherman was resting in Atlanta, Hood moved off on a rash expedition into Tennessee. He hoped that by getting into Sherman's rear, and destroying his communications, he could force him to abandon Georgia. Hood's army, 40,000 strong, crossed the Chattahoochee, on September 29th, and took nearly the same route by which Johnston had retreated. They captured the smaller depots and garrisons, but passed round the larger ones, and broke up the railroad as they moved northward. The only hope for any success to this forward movement was in rapid advance, but before reaching Chattanooga, Hood turned his course southwest to Gadsden, Alabama, where Wheeler's cavalry joined him. His first intention had been to cross the Tennessee river at Bridgeport, and he expected Forrest to join him there. Instead of pushing north again into Tennessee, however, Hood continued slowly westward to Florence, Alabama, and sent orders to Forrest to report to him there.

Forrest's Successes in Tennessee, Mississippi and Alabama.—During the spring and summer, this gallant cavalry leader had greatly injured the Federal cavalry and communications in Western Tennessee, Northern Mississippi and Alabama. On Tishomingo Creek, in Mississippi, on June 10th, with 3,500 men he defeated 10,000 Federal troops, destroyed and captured more than 2,000 of them, with eighteen guns, quantities of arms, and all their baggage and supplies. His own loss was 493. Other brilliant exploits followed, all intended to destroy Sherman's communications and supplies. He was engaged in destroying gunboats and transports on the Tennessee river when Hood's summons reached him.

Sherman's Plans Against Hood.—As soon as Sherman learned that Hood had gone off towards Tennessee, he sent Thomas to Nashville to defend the State. He himself followed Hood with most of his army, until the Southern army moved westward from Gadsden to Florence. He then sent the Fourth and Twenty-third Federal army corps forward to Thomas, returned himself to Atlanta with the rest of his troops, and pre-

pared to march to Savannah across the State which Hood had left entirely at his mercy.

Battle of Franklin.—Hood's long delays gave Thomas time to mature his plans, repair the railroads and collect about 60,000 men to oppose him. When he at length advanced into Middle Tennessee with 35,000 men, the Federal army fell back before him from place to place. On November 30th, Hood attacked the fortifications at Franklin, which General Schofield had been ordered to hold. By severe fighting the outer lines were carried, and the Confederates were ordered to take the inner fortifications at daylight the next morning, but Schofield retreated in the night, leaving his dead and wounded behind him. The victory was dearly bought with the loss of 6,000 men and five generals, among them the gallant General Cleburne. The Federal loss was about 3,500. On December 2nd, Hood took position in front of Nashville and sent a division of infantry and Forrest's cavalry against Murfreesboro'. The infantry behaved badly, and the expedition failed.



P. B. CLEBURNE.

Battle of Nashville.—All was quiet at Nashville until December 15th, when the Federal army attacked the Confederates and seized their defences on the left. After considerable fighting the next day, the Federals again broke through the Confederate lines. In a few moments the entire line gave way, and the troops retreated in great confusion towards Franklin. No efforts of their officers could induce them to make a stand, although the number of killed and wounded was small.



B. F. CHEATHAM.

Fifty-four cannon were abandoned in their rapid retreat, which did not slacken until the whole Southern army recrossed the Tennessee at Bridgeport, on December 29th. Thomas made a vigorous pursuit, but Forrest, with the rear guard, courageously held him in check.

Results of the Expedition.—In this disastrous campaign Hood lost some 27,000 men, killed, wounded, prisoners, and deserters, and seventy-two guns. The Federals, perhaps, half as many. But the South lost far more than men and arms. All hope of recovering and maintaining independence in Kentucky, Tennessee, Mississippi, and the States west of them was destroyed. It was a crushing, dispiriting blow to the South, while the Northern Congress passed a vote of thanks to Thomas and his men for their important victory.

QUESTIONS.—1.—What two armies were in Georgia? 2. What sort of movements were made by each army? 3. Tell of the fight at New Hope church. 4. Relate the circumstances of General Polk's death. 5. How had his last days been spent (note)? 6. Tell of the marching of the two armies. 7. Who was put in command of the Southern army in Johnston's place? 8. What attacks did Hood make, and with what success? 9. Tell of the siege of Atlanta, and of Stoneman's defeat. 10. Describe the evacuation of Atlanta. 11. How did Sherman treat the residents of the city? 12. Of what bay had Admiral Farragut taken possession? 13. What numbers were engaged on both sides in this campaign (note)? 14. Where did Hood now go, and why? 15. Where did he first go? 16. Tell of General Forrest's successes in Tennessee, Mississippi, and Alabama. 17. Who was sent against Hood? 18. Tell of the battle of Franklin. 19. Of the battle of Nashville. 20. What were the results of this expedition? 21. Look out the places on the map

CHAPTER LIX.

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION, CONTINUED—1864.

Attack on Petersburg.—When General Grant's assault on the Confederate lines at Cold Harbor failed, on June 3d, he determined to move to the south side of James River. He began the crossing on June 14th, hoping to seize Petersburg and cut Richmond off from all communication with the South. General Beauregard had sent nearly all his men to assist in the defence of Richmond, and had only 2,200, mostly militia, to defend Petersburg. General "Baldy" Smith moved against the

city, on the 15th, with 18,000 men, but the Confederate cannon were so well served he thought there must be a large infantry force behind them. He did capture some of the earthworks. Hancock came up, and together they might have overrun the whole place, but they waited till next day.

Beauregard Reinforced.—As soon as Lee was sure that Grant was really moving to Petersburg, he sent reinforcements to Beauregard. That general drew in the forces opposite to Butler and Hoke's division from Drewry's Bluff. These had just gotten into position behind a second line of breastworks, when Meade and Hancock attacked them, on the 16th. Lee's men had to move on the longer line, and so Grant's forces got up first. On the 17th and 18th tremendous assaults failed to dislodge the Confederates from their defences. For the first three days Beauregard, with 10,000 men, had held back the assailants, four times as many, and had destroyed as many of them as his whole force. By the evening of the 18th most of Lee's men had come up. Lee and Grant both witnessed the final efforts of the Federals, and Grant decided to stop fighting awhile and fortify his position.

Intrenchments.—Grant intended to extend his entrenchments northward and then westward; to make them impregnable with all the devices of military engineering; to seize all the railroads, and shut up Lee's army around Petersburg as with a wall of steel. Lee also exercised all skill to build his defences as powerfully as his resources permitted.

Lee's Difficult Task.—The task before Lee was immense. Thirty-five miles of intrenchments around Richmond and Petersburg had to be defended by an army not half as numerous as the besiegers, who could be doubled and trebled at Mr. Lincoln's order. At the South the conscriptions had called out all the males between seventeen and forty-five, "robbing," as Grant said, "both the cradle and the grave." These conscriptions could not be enforced, and, as the limits of the Confederacy were constantly more restricted, there was small prospect of any increase in Lee's army. The question of supplies was even

more difficult. Food and forage became scarcer daily. A pound of flour and a quarter of a pound of meat was all that could be given to each soldier. Officers had to divide this scanty ration with their servants. The clothing was as poor as the food. Neither the sympathy nor anxiety of the people could provide proper care and comfort for the sick and wounded; and the families at home suffered almost as much as the army in the field. There was little to buy, and no money to pay for anything. Sixty Confederate dollars were worth only one silver dollar.

Supplies at the North.—At the North soldiers, provisions, clothing and arms of the best quality were to be had without stint. The confidence of the nation in General Grant was so great that it did not murmur at either the money or the lives sacrificed in carrying out his plans.

Mahone's Attack.—The anxiety of the Southern leaders, and the privations of their men did not damp the courage of either. On June 22d Mahone led a force of Confederates through a ravine, which hid their movements, against the extension of the Federal left. They planted their artillery in an effective position, charged with a fierce yell through the pine thickets, and took the Federal column by complete surprise. The Federal advance retreated in dismay. One division after another went down, and Gibbon's entrenchments were quickly carried. The attacking force returned to their lines carrying 2,000 prisoners, four cannon, eight flags and a quantity of small arms.

Reams's Station.—A raid made the same day by Wilson and Kautz, with 6,000 cavalry, to destroy the railroads towards the South came to grief. They were harassed and hindered by W. H. F. Lee's small body of cavalry, and by the local militia, and were driven all day by Hampton's cavalry. Trying to make his way back to his friends, Wilson was met at Reams's Station by Mahone's infantry and Pegram's artillery, while Fitz Lee's horsemen attacked his rear; he was utterly routed, with a loss of 1,000 prisoners, twelve guns and a number of wagons.¹

¹ These and other checks to their arms in Virginia, so depressed the Northern people and soldiers, that the Federal Congress asked Mr. Lincoln to appoint a day

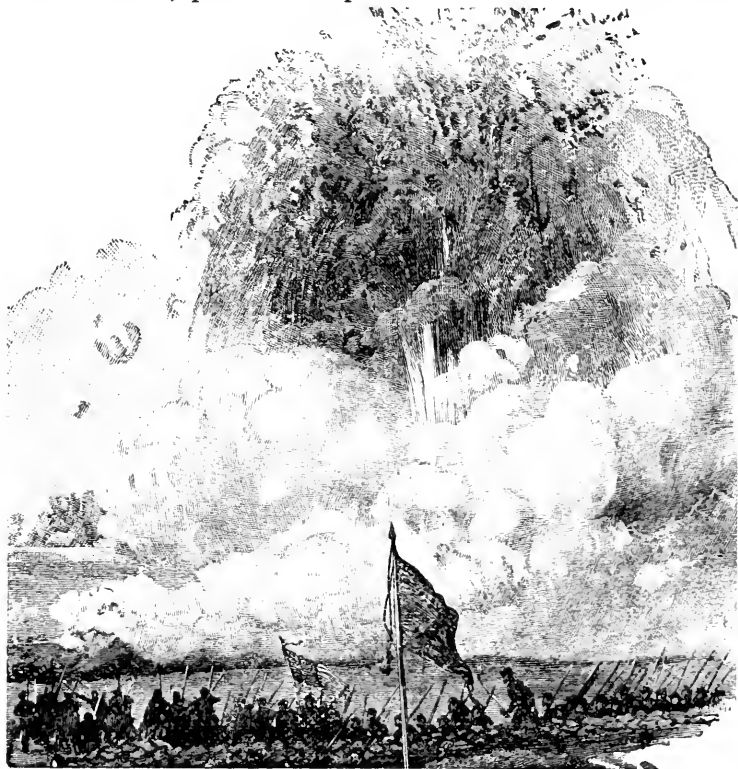
Digging a Mine.—The hostile entrenchments were very close together, and the besieging guns threw shells constantly into the defences and the city itself, which burst in the streets, dwellings and churches. As he could not carry the Confederate works by assault, General Grant had a mine dug under them, hoping to enter them through the breach caused when it exploded. Four days before this mine was sprung Grant began crossing his men back north of the James River. Lee knew when and where the mine was dug, but could not be certain when it would be exploded. He could not know what Grant's move to the north side meant, and had to carry some of his force over, also, to check any advance upon Richmond. As soon as the Confederates were over the river, Hancock was moved back to Petersburg in the night of July 29th. General Lee had retained only 13,000 men in the trenches, and General Grant hoped that when the mine was sprung, early on the 30th, his 60,000 troops could seize Petersburg.

The Mine Exploded.—General Lee had caused a strong line of defence to be made in rear of the mine, and cannon and mortars were ready to pour a heavy cross-fire on the position. The explosion took place very early in the morning, with a deafening roar and a mighty upheaval of earth high in the air. As this mass fell it burst asunder and scattered stones, timbers, weapons, and mutilated corpses everywhere round. The breach in the Confederate lines was 135 feet long, ninety feet wide, and thirty feet deep; 250 South Carolinians and twenty-two Petersburg artillerymen were buried beneath the ruins. For a moment the troops near the mine were stupified by the shock. Farther off no one could guess what was the matter.

Fight at the Crater.—It had been intended that a negro division of Burnside's corps should lead the Federal assault,

of humiliation and prayer for the success of the Federal armies. This he did for July 7th. In the changing fortunes of the South, Mr. Davis had repeatedly called upon the Southern people to humble themselves and ask for God's help in reverses, and to return thanks when delivered from threatening destruction. The North had also had public thanksgivings after Shiloh, Gettysburg and Vicksburg, but this was the only time that public prayer was thought necessary by them.

but white troops were substituted instead. They, also, were too much alarmed by the explosion to advance at once. When they did clamber over their own breastworks, and the debris beyond, they found themselves on the edge of an enormous hole or crater, piled with upheaved ruins. The Confederate



THE MINE EXPLODED.

cannon and mortars opened upon them, and their only safety was to plunge into the hole. The fire poured into them prevented their climbing out and occupying the open space beyond. General Lee's men hurried up, and the resistance became stronger every moment. Again and again an advance of the Federal troops was driven back. The Crater became crowded,

the heat of the sun was intense, and the Confederate fire more and more galling.

Negro Soldiers.—When Burnside's white troops had been thus exposed and shot for two hours, he ordered up his negro soldiers. They passed round the side of the Crater and moved forward. But they could not face the deadly fire which met them, and broke and ran for their lives, some into the Crater, some to the refuge of their own lines. Two other attempts were made to press the white troops forward. In one of these part of the Confederate lines were taken and held, until Lee's men got into proper position and drove their assailants from all the points they had seized.

Surrender of Federals—Losses.—All this time the men huddled in the Crater were being slaughtered by shot and shell. Those who were left alive raised the white flag of surrender, just as their comrades were sent flying to their trenches. The scene, where the dead and mangled were piled up in the Crater beneath the burning sun, was ghastly beyond description.¹

Early Sent into Maryland.—General Lee now made another offensive move to cause the withdrawal of part of Grant's forces. General Early was ordered to take his 10,000 men from Lynchburg to Staunton. If he found the way open, he was then to hasten northward, drive the Federals out of the lower Valley, cross into Maryland, and threaten Washington, which might ensure reinforcements being summoned to defend that city. Early obeyed Lee's directions, and moved as fast as possible over the mountains and down the Valley, the cavalry, under Bradley T. Johnson and McCausland, pressing on in front. On July 6th, he crossed the Potomac at Shepherdstown, after driving Sigel and several thousand men into the defences at Harper's Ferry.

Battle of Monocacy Bridge.—Retracing very much the road over which Lee and McClellan had come to Sharpsburg, Early

¹ This horrible affair cost the Federals about 4,000 men, the Confederates about as many hundreds. That 13,000 men should thus turn a skillful plan supported by 50,000 soldiers into a great disaster, shows how the courage and ability of the Southern generals and their troops remained unshaken after so many months of privation and battle.

moved on eastward. At Monocacy Bridge, on July 9th, he had a sharp fight with some 7,000 Federal troops, under Lew Wallace, who was defeated with a loss of some 2,000 men.

Early Before Washington.—Early then hurried on towards Washington, the fortifications of which he approached on the 11th. But his troops had marched thirty miles the day before and were too much exhausted by heat and dust, long marching and fighting to undertake an immediate attack. Had the men been in tolerable condition, they might have entered the outer line of defences, but they could not have held them. Their presence in Maryland had produced great anxiety throughout the North. Their numbers were exaggerated to 30,000 or 40,000, and large bodies of troops were hurried to the defence of the Federal capital. Ten thousand regulars and other forces were already on the ground, and the ten thousand Confederates could effect nothing against them and the thousands coming to their aid. Early, therefore, after threatening the city for a day and repulsing an attack, withdrew and crossed back into Virginia safely at Leesburg. He then returned to the Valley, defeated Averill and Crook in two engagements, and took position below Winchester, ready to advance again or fall back up the Valley.¹

Sheridan Against Early.—General Grant now sent General Sheridan with 55,000 men to drive Early back from the Potomac. Twelve thousand of these troops were cavalry. Lee sent to Early, Anderson from Longstreet's corps with one division of infantry and one of cavalry, which raised Early's force to 14,000. On September 19th, Sheridan with 50,000 men attacked Early

¹ In this campaign the Southern authorities, for the only time, undertook any systematic retaliation for the outrages and destruction so widely perpetrated by the Federal armies throughout the South. Railroads, trains and bridges in Maryland were destroyed, horses were carried off, and contributions in money were levied on the towns. Blair's residence, near Washington, was burned. When Early's army returned to the Valley, B. T. Johnson and McCausland were sent with cavalry to Chambersburg, Pennsylvania, and Cumberland, Maryland, to collect \$100,000 in gold or \$500,000 in United States bank notes, to pay for the houses burned by General Hunter in the lower Valley. If Chambersburg did not pay the money, the town was to be burned. When McCausland fired the town in obedience to these orders, the Northern people and papers cried out in horror against the barbarity which thus burned one town, though they described and illustrated with much complacency hundreds of similar conflagrations throughout the South.

at Winchester, and by hard fighting overcame the 14,000 Confederates, although he lost 1,000 men more than they did. On the 22nd, another severe blow was dealt to Early, which forced him to withdraw fifty miles up the Valley.

Victory and Defeat at Cedar Creek.—Lee again sent a small reinforcement to Early, and, on the morning of October 19th, Sheridan's entrenched camp near Cedar Creek was surprised, and the Federal troops were driven panic stricken for miles. Instead of pushing the pursuit vigorously, Early's half starved men, thinking their foes routed, stopped to plunder and refresh themselves with the comforts and luxuries in the deserted camp. When Sheridan heard that his men were fleeing in disorder, he rode rapidly forward from Winchester to meet them, and persuaded a number of them to return to the battle-field with him. His available force, especially his cavalry, was still much larger than Early's army. His presence revived their drooping spirits. He reformed his line, attacked the Confederates and utterly routed them, capturing their guns, wagons, and men, besides all they had taken from them in the morning.



J. B. KERSHAW.

Sheridan's Devastation of the Valley.—This last disaster almost destroyed Early's wasted army, and there was nothing left to check Sheridan's progress through the Valley, where his track was marked by fire and destruction. Of it, he wrote, "I have destroyed over 2,000 barns filled with wheat, hay and farming implements; over seventy mills filled with flour and wheat; have driven in front of the army over 4,000 head of stock, and have killed and issued to the troops over 3,000 sheep." Sherman had done the same things in Mississippi, and was about to do even worse in Georgia.

Grant on the James.—Grant, meanwhile, was extending his lines both north and south of the James. He had seized part of the Weldon Railroad, and from time to time injured the other railroads. In the oft-repeated encounters with the Southern

infantry and cavalry, he lost heavily, double and sometimes treble what they did, without the strength of his army being materially weakened.

QUESTIONS.—1. Tell of the attack on Petersburg in June. 2. Describe General Beauregard's defence of the city. 3. What was Grant's plan of operations? 4. What circumstances made Lee's task very difficult? 5. How did the condition of the North contrast with this? 6. Tell of Mahone's attack on Grant's left. 7. Of the battle of Reams's Station. 8. What effect had all this upon the North (note)? 9. What was Grant's next effort? 10. Describe the explosion of the mine, and the fight at the crater. 11. How did the negro soldiers behave? 12. How did this effort end, and with what loss on each side (note)? 13. Who was now sent into Maryland? 14. Describe the fight at Monocacy Bridge. 15. Tell of Early's march to Washington and return to the Valley. 16. Under what circumstances was Chambersburg burned (note)? 17. Who followed Early up the Valley? 18. What was the difference between the forces? 19. Describe the victory and defeat at Cedar Creek. 20. Tell of Sheridan's devastation of the Valley. 21. What were General Grant's movements on James River?

CHAPTER LX.

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION, CONTINUED.—1864.

Sherman's March to the Sea.—On November 15th Sherman set out from Atlanta with 60,000 infantry and 5,500 cavalry, all supplied with wagons and provisions. There was no army to resist him, so he ordered that his men should subsist on the fertile country. The army moved on different roads, but all were to direct their course towards Savannah. Wheeler's cavalry somewhat harassed the Federal advance, but could not seriously hinder them, and they moved rapidly forward, feasting luxuriously on the corn, sweet potatoes, poultry and cattle. All railroads were torn up, and Milledgeville, the capital of the State, was soon occupied.¹

¹ The "bummers," as stragglers going out to forage were called, stole everything they could lay their hands on, constantly destroying what they could not carry away. A Northerner eye-witness described their doings: "Taking the last chicken,

Nearing Savannah.—The Confederate government could not collect any considerable force to defend Savannah. Efforts were made to sweep the causeways across the rice swamps around the city with artillery, but amounted to very little, and Sherman reached the vicinity of Savannah on December 10th. Fort McAlister, a strong earthwork, was taken on the 13th, and then General Sherman waited to attack the city until he had opened communication with the Federal fleet,



M. C. BUTLER.

not far off, and could direct powerful cannon against it.



W. J. HARDEE.

Fall of Savannah.—By the 17th his preparations were finished, and he summoned the city to surrender, promising the heaviest vengeance if it did not. General Hardee had too few men to defend the city, which was in no condition to stand a siege. He, however, declined to surrender, withdrew his army during the night, and moved towards Charleston. Sherman's army marched in on the 21st, and the next day he wrote and presented Savannah, with 150 heavy guns and 20,000 bales of cotton, as a Christmas-gift to Mr. Lincoln.

Northern Exultation.—This success so close upon Hood's defeat at Nashville filled the North with exultation. Congratulations were sent to General Sherman from President Lincoln

the last pound of meal, and the only remaining scraggy cow from a poor woman and her flock of children, black or white not considered, came under the order of legitimate business. Even crockery, bed-covering and clothes were fair spoils.

* * * A planter's house was overrun in a jiffy; boxes, drawers and escritaires were ransacked with laudable zeal and emptied of their contents. If the spoils were ample, the depredators were satisfied, and went off in peace; if not, everything was torn and destroyed, and most likely the owner was tickled with sharp bayonets into a confession where he had his treasures hid. * * * Should the house be deserted, the furniture is smashed in pieces, music is pounded out of \$400 pianos with the ends of muskets. Mirrors were wonderfully multiplied, and rich cushions and carpets carried off to adorn teams and war-steeds. After all was cleaned out, most likely some set of stragglers wanted to enjoy a good fire, and set the house, debris of furniture and all the surroundings, in a blaze. This is the way Sherman's army lived on the country."

and General Grant and from all parts of the Union, and votes of thanks were passed by the State legislatures and the Federal Congress. In rejoicing at the result of the campaign, they lost sight of the barbarous measures which had accompanied it.¹

Price Invades Missouri.—In September, of this year, General Sterling Price entered Missouri with 10,000 men. He did not wish to make only a raid, but to occupy and hold the State. He moved through a large part of it, almost without hindrance, raising the hopes of the Confederates, and injuring Federal property. But numbers of his men, who had not seen their families for several years, deserted him to return home. Troops were gathered to oppose him. He was attacked and defeated on October 23d, and again on the 24th. His army was cut up and demoralized, and he was obliged to retreat to Arkansas.

Morgan's Last Raid and Death.—While Hunter was advancing up the Valley of Virginia, General John Morgan was employed with his cavalry in East Tennessee and Southwest Virginia. The infantry with which he was co-operating were carried to oppose Hunter, and Morgan determined to avert a Federal expedition into Virginia, by another raid into Kentucky. With little over 2,000 men he dashed into Kentucky, and captured Cynthiana and its garrison. The largely outnumbering Federal troops intended for Southwestern Virginia attacked him next day and drove his command into Tennessee. Early in September he was in the village of Greenville with only a few soldiers. The daughter-in-law of the woman at whose house he lodged, carried the information to the Federal camp at night. Four companies of Federal cavalry surrounded the house where he was sleeping. His staff were captured, but Morgan escaped unarmed into the garden. Seeing that he could not get away,

¹ Sherman, in his report, said that, besides destroying 265 miles of railroad, his army had consumed all the forage and food throughout a belt sixty miles wide from Atlanta to Savannah, and had carried off 10,000 mules and horses and a countless number of slaves. He added that they had done damage costing \$100,000,000, to Georgia—\$20,000,000 for what the army had consumed, the rest being simple waste and destruction; and justified his vandalism by saying, 'We are not only fighting hostile armies, but a hostile people, and must make old and young, rich and poor, feel the hard hand of war.'

he came out from his hiding place and surrendered to the Federal captain. After this, a cavalryman rode close up to him, and, in spite of Morgan's declaring himself to be a prisoner, killed him and inflicted indignities upon his body.

Affairs at Sea.—The Confederate cruisers, the *Alabama*, the *Florida*, the *Shenandoah*, the *Sumter* and others, by this time had nearly driven American merchant vessels from the ocean. The *Alabama* alone had destroyed about \$10,000,000 worth of ships and cargoes. She was much battered by her long cruise in the Atlantic, Pacific and Indian Oceans, and went into the harbor of Cherbourg, France, on June 11th, for repairs.

The Alabama and Kearsarge.—The United States vessel *Kearsarge* was near the French coast, and her commander, Captain Winslow came near to Cherbourg to watch the *Alabama*. That vessel was injured by hard service, but she might have slipped away without a fight. Her commander, Captain Semmes, did not know, that the *Kearsarge* had a thick defence of iron chains concealed under the planking on her sides, and believed that his ship could get the better of her in a fair fight. He, therefore, sent Captain Winslow word that he would give him battle as soon as the *Alabama* got a supply of coal.

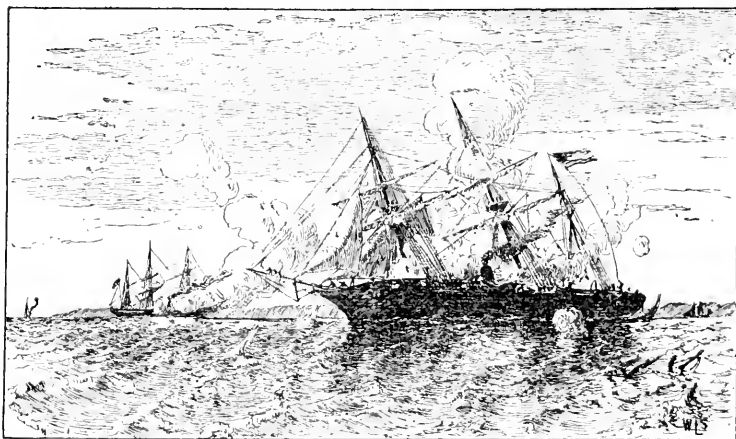


R. SEMMES.

The Alabama Sunk.—On the 19th, the *Alabama* steamed out of the harbor and the fight began. The combat was more than a marine league from the land, but was plainly seen by persons on the shore and by the crews of the English yacht *Deerhound*, and of two French pilot boats. The powder of the *Alabama* was very defective, and her shot did little damage to the chain-clad *Kearsarge*, while the gallant little cruiser was soon torn to pieces and in a sinking condition. Even after Captain Semmes lowered his colors the *Kearsarge* fired five times upon its surrendered antagonist. The boats of the *Alabama* could save only part of the crew. The rest jumped into the water before she went down, and were most of them picked up by the *Deerhound* and the pilot boats.

Destruction of the *Florida*.—Shortly after this, a Federal war vessel seized the *Florida* in the neutral harbor of Bahia, in Brazil. Mr. Seward apologized to Brazil, but the *Florida* was retained and afterwards sunk. The *Shenandoah* did not come into possession of the Federal government until after the close of the war.

Mr. Lincoln Re-elected, 1864.—A new President had now to be elected at the North. One faction of the Republican party nominated John C. Fremont; the other faction again nominated Mr. Lincoln. The Northern Democrats had all along



SINKING OF THE ALABAMA BY THE KEARSARGE.

been divided on the question of the war. The Confederate successes early in the year, and General Grant's failure to destroy General Lee with all the men put at his command, had greatly strengthened the Peace Democrats or "copper heads." In a convention at Chicago they nominated General McClellan, and urged, among other things, that steps should be taken to secure a speedy peace. The successes of Thomas and Sherman revived the hopes of the North, and Mr. Lincoln was re-elected by an enormous majority.

Peace Negotiations.—An informal effort to open peace negotiations had been made in July by a few prominent Southerners,

but they had no authority. Mr. Lincoln did not encourage them, and the whole thing came to nothing.

Condition of the Confederacy.—The Southern Confederacy was now in desperate straits. Her territory was cut to pieces and overrun by enemies. Her money was worthless; her resources exhausted. Her few soldiers were half naked and half starved, and the people at home were little better off. There were no means of repairing the railroads destroyed by the invading armies. A majority of the able-bodied white men in the South had been killed or disabled by battle, disease and exposure, and thousands of them were languishing in Northern prisons. The taking of horses and cattle for army purposes and the widespread devastation of the invading armies, bade fair to add famine to the other calamities of the South. The Federal power, meanwhile, had gained immensely during the year. It now held Tennessee, Missouri, and most of Mississippi and Alabama, had wasted Georgia and the Valley of Virginia, and had nearly destroyed Hood's, Price's and Early's armies. And Grant and Sherman were making ready 200,000 men to crush the army defending Petersburg. The end was plainly drawing near.

QUESTIONS.—1. Describe Sherman's march to the sea. 2. Who were the "bummers" (note)? 3. Who has told us of their bad doings (note)? 4. What was done as the army neared Savannah? 5. Tell of the fall of Savannah, and of Sherman's letter to Mr. Lincoln. 6. Describe the wholesale destruction in Georgia by Sherman's army (note). 7. What effort was made by General Price in Missouri? 8. Tell of General Morgan's last raid, and of his death. 9. Tell what the cruiser *Alabama* had accomplished. 10. Tell of her battle with the *Kearsarge*. 11. What became of the *Florida* and the *Shenandoah*? 12. Who was elected President in 1864? 13. What efforts were made to secure peace? 14. What was now the condition of the Confederacy?

CHAPTER LXI.

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION, CONTINUED—1865.

Condition of Petersburg.—The intense cold of the opening year kept the armies at Petersburg quiet, and increased their sufferings. Water could scarcely be gotten anywhere. Lee's army had especial difficulty in procuring fuel. More than once Southern soldiers froze to death on duty. The incessant artillery fire rendered parts of Petersburg uninhabitable. The people grew accustomed to their danger, and even the women moved about within the Confederate lines while shells and cannon balls whizzed above their heads.

Attacks on Fort Fisher.—The hard winter did not prevent operations elsewhere. Europe had threatened to disregard the Federal blockade unless it was enforced in North Carolina. Fort Fisher protected Wilmington, the only open port left, and it seemed doubly important to capture it. General Grant determined to reduce it before any of Sherman's force came near it on their march northward. An expedition against it, in December, under General Butler, had accomplished nothing.

Terry Attacks Fort Fisher.—On January 6th, General Terry was sent thither with 20,000 infantry. Admiral Porter's fleet of fifty-nine vessels—five of them ironclads—was to co-operate with Terry. General Bragg was ordered to defend Wilmington.¹

Fort Fisher Taken.—After bombarding Fort Fisher for three days, the fleet and land force attacked it. The ships opened a concentric fire from 413 guns. This unequalled storm of shot and shell battered down the walls of the fort, dismantled the cannon, exploded the powder, and made the place so hot that the garrison could not stand to their guns. The

¹One of the Richmond papers expressed the sentiment of the South by the sentence: "General Bragg has been appointed to command at Wilmington; good-bye, Wilmington." It is a question whether the most skillful commander could have held the fort against such enormous odds.

infantry was at first repulsed with severe loss, and after they carried the outer works, had a fierce hand-to-hand struggle for the inner defences, which lasted until after midnight. When General Whiting was mortally wounded, Colonel Lamb entirely disabled, and hundreds of the heroic garrison of 2,500 men killed or wounded, the general surrendered the fort and some 1,800 men. The Federal loss was nearly 700. Wilmington passed at once into the hands of the Federal troops.

Sherman's March from the Sea.—On February 1st General Sherman set out northward from Savannah, with 60,000 infantry, 5,000 cavalry, and a large artillery force. The Confederates had only a small army, composed of some of Hood's and Hardee's forces and of the State militia. Wheeler's cavalry did what they could by obstructing the roads and destroying the bridges, but could not materially delay the advancing hosts.



JOSEPH WHEELER.

Destruction in South Carolina.—The Federal army could not subsist on the supplies of South Carolina as they had done in Georgia, but everything on their route became a prey to plunder and destruction. All the outrages committed in Mississippi, Louisiana, Georgia and the Valley of Virginia were merciful, compared to the deeds of Sherman's army in South Carolina. No efforts were made to restrain the soldiers. Widespreading columns of smoke marked their route afar off. Dwellings, granaries, negro cabins, resin-factories, the pine forests themselves, were set on fire; the sun was hidden by smoke and the night made bright by flames. The dwelling-houses were rifled before they were burned. The thieves took what they wanted and destroyed the rest—the costly furniture with axes, the carpets, curtains, and libraries by dragging them through the dirt or scattering them to the winds. All plate and jewels were taken, and rings and ear-rings were torn from the fingers and ears of the terrified women. Old men were tortured to make them tell where money or silver was hidden; negroes were

robbed as quickly as white people. The gardens were probed with bayonets, and the defenceless people were often left without food or shelter. The officers not only did nothing to prevent these cruel deeds, but thought them "comical."¹

Fall of Charleston.—Sherman's direct march for Columbia, the capital of South Carolina, obliged Hardee to evacuate Charleston. This he did on February 17th, first burning the cotton, the arsenals, and other public property. A large quantity of powder accidentally exploded, killed several hundred people and kindled a fire in which much of the city was burned, and the whole threatened with destruction. It had made a heroic defence for four years, and bore everywhere marks of the shot and shell hurled into it, and the flames which had desolated it. General Gilmore occupied it on the 21st, but found its beauty gone, and its once fair streets scarred and mutilated.



WADE HAMPTON.

Burning of Columbia.—The Federal army occupied Columbia on February 17th. General Sherman promised that only public property should be injured, and that not a finger's breadth of the town should be burned. Instead of this, the soldiers began their usual thieving and destruction as soon as they entered the streets. Stores were sacked, and private houses robbed. Watches and rings were snatched from their owners. Insults and indignities were heaped upon the people, especially the women, and the town was burned, if not by General Sherman's order, without any hindrance from him. Fires broke out in twenty places at once and spread rapidly, and the soldiers cut the hose to prevent the fire-engines from checking its advance. A special protection had been promised to the Roman Catholic convent, but it, too, was burned, and the helpless nuns, with

¹ One of General Sherman's aides, after describing these plunderings, said: "It was all fair spoil in war, and the search made one of the excitements of the march." A special feature of Sherman's triumphal march through Washington, some months later, was a procession of "bummers," with mules laden with stolen goods.

their sixty pupils, had to spend the night in the open park. The most beautiful part of Columbia was thus destroyed. Churches, banks, schools, private houses and shops, became a heap of smoking ruins. The homeless people passed the night huddled in groups in the streets and gardens, and when morning broke gazed hopelessly at the desolation everywhere.¹



BURNING OF COLUMBIA.

Peace Conference.—In 1862 Napoleon III., of France, sent a French army to Mexico to make the Archduke Maximilian, of Austria, emperor there. This was entirely contrary to the Monroe Doctrine, of which I have told you. Many persons thought that the United States and the Confederacy might possibly unite to expel the French from Mexico, and thus a stop might be put to the strife between them. On February 3d of this year, an informal “Peace Conference” took place on a ship in Hampton Roads, between President Lincoln and Mr. Seward, on one side, and Vice-

¹General Sherman averred that General Hampton had destroyed Columbia by firing some cotton bales before evacuating the town. General Hampton denied this, and hundreds of witnesses testified that no fires broke out until after Sherman’s men entered the town, and that they would not allow the flames to be put out, though some of the officers and soldiers were less inhuman, and helped the frightened people to move their household goods, and showed them other little kindnesses. In his Memoir, General Sherman says that the fire was “accidental,” and that he laid it on Hampton to “shake the faith of the South Carolinians in him.”

President Stephens, Mr. Hunter, of Virginia, and Judge Campbell, of Louisiana, on the other. Mr. Lincoln would admit no conditions of peace, except the immediate return of the South to the Union. The Southern Commissioners were instructed to require the recognition of the Confederacy. The two sides could not agree, and the conference accomplished nothing. Southern patriotism and zeal were aroused anew by learning that there was no hope for an honorable peace. But enthusiasm could not fill up their depleted army, or provide for the starving soldiers and people.¹

Lee Made Commander-in-Chief.—In February, Lee was appointed commander-in-chief of the Confederate armies. He offered pardon to all deserters who would return to the ranks, and exhorted all the soldiers to be constant and firm against their enemies. His own half-starved and half-frozen men continued to face their assailants boldly. On February 5th, the Federal troops seized the defences on Lee's extreme right, at Hatcher's Run, and the Confederates could not dislodge them. The gallant General John Pegram was killed in this fight.

Lee Plans to Leave Petersburg.—General Joseph E. Johnston was now given command of the Confederate forces in North Carolina, to do what was possible to hinder Sherman's rapid advance to Virginia. Johnston could only collect 18,000 men, while Sherman, with Schofield's command from Wilmington, had some 70,000. General Lee had seen for months that if his army remained in the trenches at Petersburg it must be eventually surrounded and captured. If he left these defences for the open country, Richmond, the Confederate capital, must fall into General Grant's hands. His plan to leave Petersburg

¹ Flour was \$300 a barrel, and in the far South could not be had. Corn meal was fifty dollars, corn fifteen dollars, coffee thirty dollars, tea fifty dollars, and butter thirty dollars a pound. Dry goods could not be bought. Ladies turned and returned their old clothing or wore homespun cotton, woven by hand. They made hats and bonnets of wheatstraw and palmetto, and trimmed them with feathers and straw flowers. They fashioned gloves for themselves and their friends of old silk stockings and bits of cloth. The upper parts of gaiter boots were made in the same way, and then it cost two hundred dollars to have a pair soled. A general's pay was only \$301 a month. Other officers got less; the privates scarcely anything.

at an earlier period had been given up, because the Confederate authorities were so opposed to it. But the necessity for doing it was becoming imperative; and, if Lee could join Johnston so that they could strike Sherman before Grant could reinforce him, they might succeed in carrying on the struggle for Southern independence to a hopeful conclusion.

The Federal Forces Ordered to Concentrate in Virginia. The Southern President agreed with General Lee that supplies for the army should be collected at Danville, and that, so soon as the weather and the roads permitted, General Lee should move rapidly thither, join Johnston, and attack Sherman. But General Grant took measures which made such a move impossible. Sheridan brought his 12,000 cavalry from the Valley, wasting the country as he came. Thomas was ordered to come into Southwestern Virginia, to destroy the railroads there. Sherman was moving towards Petersburg, and Grant ordered his own infantry and cavalry to make another sweep round Lee's right, on March 29th.

Assault on Fort Steadman.—Lee perceived that Grant's line was weakened at one point by this movement, and ordered an attack there before day, on March 25th. The two lines were only 200 yards apart, and the pickets could talk to each other. General Gordon led the dangerous assault. He captured Fort Steadman on Hare's Hill, and pressed forward with 4,000 men, hoping to cut Grant's line entirely in two, to get in their rear and turn the Federal guns upon their trenches. But the guides led him to an unfavorable position, the supporting column was slow in coming up; the Federal guns opened upon his men, and Gordon was forced to retire with a loss of over 3,000. The Federals lost 2,000.



JOHN B. GORDON.

The Forces Compared.—Lee had now only some 35,000 men to defend thirty-seven miles of entrenchments—not 1,000 to a mile, and this number was constantly lessened by battle and hardships. Grant had more than three times as many—120,-

000; enough to hold his lines and throw more men than Lee had against his flank and rear, which he proceeded to do.

Sheridan's Victory at Five Forks.—Sheridan, with his cavalry and two infantry corps, was sent to destroy the railroads and occupy the country west of Petersburg. To prevent the cutting of his only communications with the South, General Lee sent Fitz Lee with the cavalry and Pickett with infantry to check Sheridan, while he himself moved rapidly to the Federal left with 17,000 men, on March 31st, and struck their advancing



W. J. PEGRAM.

column on the flank. The foremost divisions gave way before Lee's sudden, heavy attack; but behind them were greatly superior forces, massed in a strong position, which he could not successfully assault, and he had to fall back again to his own trenches. The same day, Fitz Lee inflicted considerable loss on Sheridan near Five Forks, and drove him some distance. The next day two Federal infantry corps came up. Sheridan attacked, in his turn, and defeated the Confederates, who lost 3,500 men, including the brave and youthful Colonel William Johnson Pegram, some artillery and colors. This was the beginning of the end.¹

Attack on Petersburg.—The next morning, April 2nd, Grant attacked Lee at daybreak, all along the Petersburg lines. Longstreet's men did not get over from Richmond in time to assist in defending them. The small force in the trenches fought bravely, but was driven out by numbers, and fell back to the inner breastworks, the guns from which checked the Federal pursuit. General A. P. Hill was killed in this struggle.

Petersburg and Richmond Evacuated.—The only thing

¹ William Johnson Pegram was a student at the University of Virginia when the war commenced, and enlisted in Company F., of Richmond. He was subsequently transferred to the artillery service, and at the battle of Mechanicsville commanded the Purcell battery. He had been conspicuous for his gallantry in every battle of the Army of Northern Virginia, and at the time of his death was directing the fire of a portion of his battalion, the Crenshaw artillery which here, for the first time in its history, sustained the loss of one of its guns. But a few days before he had been promoted to the rank of brigadier-general.

now was, if possible, to withdraw the Southern army, so that it might escape capture and be fed and rested. It was Sunday morning. Mr. Davis was in St. Paul's Church, Richmond, when he received General Lee's telegram saying that he would evacuate Petersburg that night. Steps were at once taken to remove the Government papers and what property could be taken away. The Government officers left the city and all the soldiers were ordered to join General Lee. In the emergency, vehicles of all sorts were piled with boxes from the departments and hurried to the depots.

Distress and Riot in Richmond.—The people of the city were filled with anguish at the news that they must fall into the enemy's hands. All men who could bear arms hurried away and left the despairing women to their anxieties. A rumor spread that the government supplies were to be distributed to the people, and crowds gathered around the commissary stores. To prevent drunkenness adding to the disorder of the day, the city council gave orders to destroy all the liquor in the place. The barrels of liquor were rolled into the streets and broken to pieces. But the gutters were soon full of the spirit. The mob quickly became intoxicated, and open riot followed. Drunken men and women broke into stores and robbed them, and the streets resounded with yells and cries of drunkenness or terror.

Fire.—Fire added to these horrors. Before General Ewell left the city he fired the tobacco warehouses to keep the tobacco from being captured. The bridges over the river and the vessels were also burned. The fire spread from house to house until the whole business part of the city was in flames. Through Sunday night and all day Monday, the burning, uproar and thieving went on. You cannot imagine all the horror, confusion and misery of the scene. By Monday evening, Weitzel's command marched in, and Richmond was in the hands of her captors.

Mr. Lincoln Visits Petersburg and Richmond.—There were no horrors, but only dull despair at Petersburg, when General Grant and his soldiers marched into the battle-torn town. Mr.

Lincoln came at once from City Point to Petersburg, and then to Richmond. He visited President Davis's house with special curiosity, and seated himself in Mr. Davis's own chair.

Exultation at the North.—The North went wild with joy at the fall of Richmond. Bells were rung, cannon boomed, public squares rang with huzzas, with hymns and doxologies, and United States flags hung from every house.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was the condition of Petersburg? 2. Why was it important for the Federals to capture Fort Fisher? 3. What force went against it, and who was sent to defend it? 4. Tell of the capture of Fort Fisher. 5. Describe Sherman's march from the sea. 6. Who opposed him? 7. Tell of the wanton destruction committed by the Federal army in South Carolina. 8. Of the fall of Charleston. 9. Of the burning of Columbia. 10. What charge did General Sherman bring against General Hampton (note)? 11. What occurred in Mexico in 1862? 12. How did many persons think this might affect the war? 13. What of the Peace Conference? 14. Describe the destitution in the South (note). 15. How did General Lee try to increase his army when he was made commander-in-chief? 16. What plan did Lee have for leaving Petersburg? 17. What did Grant do to prevent such a movement? 18. Describe the assault on Fort Steadman. 19. How did the forces of the two armies compare? 20. Tell of Sheridan's victory at Five Forks. 21. Of Grant's attack on Petersburg. 22. Describe the evacuation of Petersburg and Richmond. 23. Tell of the distress and riot in Richmond. 24. Of the fire there. 25. Describe Mr. Lincoln's visit to Petersburg and Richmond. 26. What was the feeling at the North?

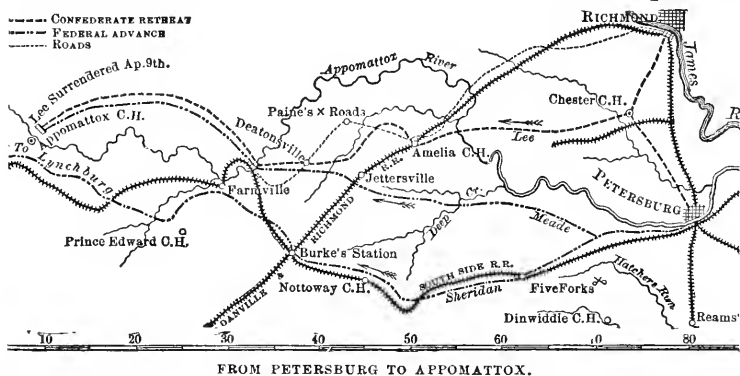
CHAPTER LXII.

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION, CONTINUED—1865.

Lee's Retreat.—In the night of April 2nd, Lee's army left Petersburg and crossed the Appomattox, bringing almost all their field artillery. Their route lay to Amelia Courthouse, where General Lee had ordered food and forage to be held in readiness. It was pleasant to the men to get once more into the open country, green with the freshness of spring, and they moved forward rapidly and in good spirits. They had

often fallen back before superior numbers, and then struck them crushing blows. They had absolute confidence in their commander, and they expected to find food for their hunger at Amelia Courthouse. But when they reached that point, on the 4th, worn and wearied with the long march over muddy roads, there were no supplies there.

Delay at Amelia Courthouse.—Somebody had disobeyed orders, and the food, which should have been in readiness there, had been carried on to Richmond. It was a dreadful disappointment. Men and animals were exhausted with hunger, and with a march of two days and nights. It was impossible to proceed



until they were fed and rested. Twenty-four hours were spent in collecting scanty supplies from the surrounding country, and the delay was fatal.

Grant in Pursuit.—General Grant's army was in rapid pursuit. One of General Lee's confidential dispatches had been captured in Richmond, and the Federal general learned from it how to foil the plan of retreat. His army moved on two roads parallel with Lee's route, and pressed on to seize the railroad and cut Lee off from Danville, which was made practicable by the delay at Amelia Courthouse.

Ewell Attacked at Sailor's Creek.—The 20,000 soldiers left to the Army of Northern Virginia resumed their march on the evening of April 6th, depressed by hunger, fatigue, and disap-

pointment. They had no food but a little parched corn, and many sank exhausted by the roadside. At Jetersville, only seven miles from Amelia Courthouse, Sheridan had intrenched himself, with 18,000 men, to wait for Meade, while Lee was still at the Courthouse. On the 6th, the weary and starving rear half of the retreating army, commanded by Ewell, was attacked at Sailor's Creek by a greatly superior force, was surrounded and all of the 10,000 men, except some 250, were killed, wounded, or captured. General Lee tried in person to avert this disaster, and when he returned to his other troops told an officer: "Half of our army is destroyed." Retreat towards Danville was now impossible, and what was left of the army pressed on towards Lynchburg. The days were taken up in skirmishes and protecting the guns and wagons, and the marching was mostly at night.

At Farmville.—At Farmville, on the morning of the 7th, the retreating troops found provisions to satisfy their hunger for the first time since leaving Petersburg. By this time Lee's principal officers were convinced that further resistance would produce only a useless loss of life. General Lee was informed of their opinion by his chief of artillery. But the Confederate commander could not believe that their cause was so desperate, and said that death was preferable to unconditional surrender.

At Appomattox, April 8, 1865.—Lee pressed on during the 8th, hoping to find supplies at Appomattox Courthouse, and then to get behind the Staunton River and unite with Johnston. But the Federal army had seized the railroad, and moved much faster than he did. Before the Confederates reached the neighborhood of Appomattox, on the evening of the 8th, Sheridan's cavalry had occupied the place and captured the trains with Lee's supplies. By the morning of the 9th, there were 40,000 Federal soldiers in front and 25,000 close behind Lee's 10,000 men. Gordon and Fitz Lee, who led the retreat, attacked and drove back the force immediately



FITZHUGH LEE.

in their front, but the great hosts behind these made farther resistance hopeless.

First Steps Towards Surrender.—On the night of the 7th, General Grant sent a note, asking General Lee to surrender. Lee inquired what terms the Federal general would offer. General Grant replied that he should only insist that the officers and men should not take up arms against the United States until properly exchanged; and offered to meet General Lee at any time to arrange for putting a stop to the fighting. Lee then said he did not think the time for surrender had come. But when, on the 9th, he found that his gallant little band could not cut its way through the toils which surrounded it, he felt that his duty to his soldiers required him to yield, and sent a flag of truce asking for an interview with General Grant.

Meeting of Grant and Lee, April 9th, 1865.—The two commanders met at the house of Mr. Wilmer McLean, in the village of Appomattox Courthouse. Grant had with him Generals Sheridan and Ord, and some of his staff; Lee, only his aide, Colonel Marshall, and a courier. Grant was forty-two years' old, of medium height, and not at all imposing in appearance. He was dressed in a shabby suit of dark blue flannel, with his trousers tucked in his boots; wore neither sword nor spurs, and had no mark of his rank save a general's shoulder straps. Lee was a remarkably fine-looking man, fifty-eight years' old, six feet in height, with silvery grey hair and beard. He wore a Confederate gray uniform, with the three stars of a general on the collar, cavalry boots with handsome spurs, and a splendid sword presented to him by a Marylander. It seemed as though he wished, in this trying hour, to do as much honor as possible to the cause and army which he represented.

The Terms of Surrender.—The terms of surrender were quickly written out. The men and officers were to be paroled, on a pledge not to take up arms until properly exchanged. The officers could retain their side arms, private horses and baggage. All other property and arms were to be given up, and the army disbanded and allowed to go home. General Lee asked if the

soldiers might retain the horses belonging to them. To which General Grant agreed, saying they would need the horses to raise food for their families. Both commanders then signed the articles.¹ Three officers from each army arranged the particulars of the surrender. Generals Gibbon, Griffin and Merritt, for the Federals; Longstreet, Gordon and Pendleton, for the Confederates.

Departure of Lee and Grant.—Lee's troops had learned of the surrender before he returned to them, and they crowded



LEE LEAVING APPOMATTOX.

around him to touch him or his horse, weeping like women. The anguish of defeat and surrender was like death to them. Lee, too, wept as with a broken voice he bade them farewell. The next day he issued a brief, parting address to the army, rode through their weeping ranks with uncovered head, and set

¹ There is no foundation for the story that General Lee handed his sword to General Grant, who returned it to him. General Grant said the sword was never thought of. Before taking leave General Lee said he wished to send back 1,000 Federal prisoners for whom he had no food; adding that his own men had been living on parched corn for days. General Grant then gave him an order for 25,000 of his own rations which Sheridan had captured.

out to join his family in Richmond. General Grant showed much magnanimity to the defeated army. As at Vicksburg, he permitted no display of exultation over his fallen foes. After he had arranged to carry out the details of surrender with no outrage to the feelings of the brave men who had so long held his troops at bay, he went to Washington to stop further conscription and spending of money.

The Soldiers After the Surrender.—Ten thousand men under arms were surrendered at Appomattox, 8,000 of them infantry, the rest cavalry and artillery. The broken down soldiers and stragglers brought up the number paroled to 28,350.¹

End of the War—Numbers Engaged.—Exultation and joy filled the whole North at the tidings of Lee's surrender. Every government post fired 200 guns, and there were universal demonstrations of rejoicing. It proved to be the real end of the war. Johnston, in a few weeks, surrendered to Sherman all the Confederate troops east of the Mississippi, on the terms made between Lee and Grant, and Kirby Smith did the same thing west of the Mississippi—about 267,000 from Appomattox to the Rio Grande. After a time, 1,200,000 Federal soldiers were mustered out of service. One million had lost their lives from battle or disease. The Confederate government, from first to last, was never able to put as many as 800,000 in the field.

Mr. Lincoln's Plan to Receive States Back into the Union.—When Mr. Lincoln was asked how the conquered Southerners should be treated, he replied: "Let 'em up easy, let 'em up easy." At his second inauguration, little more than a month before this time, he said he should act "with malice towards none, with charity for all"; and although he was almost reckless in exercising unconstitutional power, he was a kind-

¹ After being paroled, they dispersed to reach their homes as best they might. Most of them were penniless. Many had to go hundreds of miles, without money or means of transportation, but they moved through the despoiled and desolated South without rioting or outrage, often to find their homes wasted and destroyed. They braced themselves to face disappointment and defeat with the same courage and devotion which had sustained them through four years of unparalleled strife and battle, and began at once to do what was possible to retrieve the ruin of their beloved South.

hearted man, who would probably deal as kindly as he could with the Southern people after the Southern armies surrendered. In 1863 he had issued a proclamation that any seceded State should be received back into the Union whenever one-tenth of its voters should take the oath of allegiance to the United States and re-establish a State government. Louisiana and Arkansas had already organized such governments, and it seemed likely that the other Southern States would, by a similar process, soon be taken once more into the Union.

Assassination of President Lincoln.—Any hope of a liberal policy towards the South on Mr. Lincoln's part was destroyed by his assassination on Good Friday night, April 14th, 1865. He was in a box at Ford's Theatre, in Washington, when John Wilkes Booth, an actor, entered the box and shot the President in the head. Booth then shouted: "*Sic semper tyrannis*," sprang on the stage, escaped through the rear of the building, mounted his horse and rode off. The theatre was at once in an uproar. Some ran for surgeons, others pursued the assassin. The murdered President was removed to a house close by, but nothing could be done for him. The ball had entered his brain, and he died in unconsciousness the next morning.¹

Effect of Mr. Lincoln's Murder.—This killing of Mr. Lincoln excited the horror of the civilized world. The North was enraged at it, and many persons believed that the crime was planned by the Southern people. The Secretary of War, Mr. Stanton, went so far as to charge it upon the Southern leaders and to put a price upon the head of Mr. Davis and some Southern gentlemen in Canada—\$100,000 for Mr. Davis and \$25,000 apiece for four other persons. The charge was malicious and preposterous. Jefferson Davis was incapable of doing a cowardly or cruel action, and the other gentlemen would have scorned to plan or assist in such a dastardly deed.²

¹At the time of Mr. Lincoln's murder an accomplice of Booth's, one Powell, made his way into Mr. Seward's bedroom and struck several times with a dagger at Mr. Seward, who was confined to his bed, but did not inflict a mortal wound.

²The closest investigation could find no one implicated in the assassination besides Booth and the man Powell. A lad named Harold and one Atzerott were

Funeral Honors to Mr. Lincoln.—Mr. Lincoln's remains lay in state in Washington, Baltimore, Philadelphia, New York, Albany, Buffalo, Cleveland and Chicago, and were viewed by hundreds of thousands of people. On the 5th of May they were interred at his former home in Springfield, Illinois. Vice-President Andrew Johnson became President, at Mr. Lincoln's death.

Mr. Davis After the Surrender.—Before going farther, I must tell you what became of President Davis. He left Richmond for Danville, expecting Lee and Johnston to unite and make a successful stand. Lee's surrender destroyed this hope, and Mr. Davis determined to push at once across the Mississippi, and there try to secure some favorable terms for the South from the United States.

His Capture.—In Georgia, he learned that his wife and family, who were trying to reach Florida, were in danger from marauders, and rode a long distance to join and protect them. After travelling with them some days he was about to leave them and hasten west. The night before his departure, Federal soldiers surrounded the little camp and took most of the party prisoners. Mr. Davis



CAPTURE OF MR. DAVIS.

devoted friends of Booth, but took no part in the killing. They, however, and Mrs. Mary Surratt, at whose house, in Washington, Booth and others often met, were imprisoned and treated with cruel severity, tried by a military commission, and hanged on July 4, 1865. In leaping on the stage in the theatre Booth broke his ankle. With great difficulty he made his way to lower Maryland and thence to Virginia, accompanied by the boy Harold. It was impossible to elude the eager pursuit made for them. They were discovered in a barn, and Booth was shot through a crack in the door and killed, and his dead body was subjected to many indignities.

was captured as he went towards his horse. In his haste he picked up his wife's water-proof cloak instead of his own, and she had thrown a light shawl over his shoulders.

Imprisonment of Mr. Davis.—The proclamation offering \$100,000 for the capture of Mr. Davis had just reached Georgia, and the distinguished prisoner was at once subjected to insults and ill-treatment. He was carried to Fortress Monroe, where he underwent inhuman cruelty. He was confined in a damp, gloomy, stone cell, with iron-barred windows; four armed sentinels paced up and down day and night; and a bright light was kept always shining in his eyes. Heavy irons were fastened on his ankles. His wretched food was served in a disgusting way without either knife or fork. No paper, books or tobacco were allowed him, and only very scanty clothing. Everything he had was taken from him, and spectators were permitted to come and gaze at him as at a caged animal. He was never very strong, and these privations and indignities, added to his anxieties about his family and his mental anguish at the downfall of his beloved South, made him extremely ill. Although he was in the most critical condition, Dr. Craven, the Federal surgeon, could scarcely procure for him the comforts and alleviations necessary to save his life. Dr. Craven was severely reprimanded for providing his ill-patient with suitable food, and a warm overcoat, and was forbidden to speak to him except about his health.

Suffered for the Whole South.—When the charge against him of Mr. Lincoln's murder was proved a malicious slander, Mr. Davis was accused, with equal falseness, of having caused all the sufferings of Northern soldiers in Southern prisons. The ablest lawyers at the North said that he could not be tried for treason, because the whole South had resisted the Federal government. But the majority of the Northern people abhorred him as the arch-traitor, and wished to wreak their vengeance upon him. Mr. Lincoln had intimated a wish that all the Southern leaders might get away from the country without his knowing it. Mr. Johnson would gladly have punished Mr. Davis as if he were guilty of horrible crimes.

Mr. Davis's Later Life.—After languishing in confinement for two years, Mr. Davis was brought to Richmond to be tried for treason. The wiser men of the Republican party knew that the persecution which he experienced was unjust and calculated to injure their party. He was, therefore, released on a bail of \$100,000, for part of which Horace Greeley and Gerrit Smith pledged themselves. The trial never came off. The charges against Mr. Davis were finally withdrawn, and he passed his later life quietly, near Pass Christian, more beloved and honored by the Southern people amid his misfortunes than when he was President of the ill-fated Confederacy.¹

QUESTIONS.—1. When did Lee retreat from Petersburg? 2. What route did he take? 3. What misfortune occurred at Amelia Courthouse? 4. What was Grant's line of pursuit? 5. Tell of the battle of Sailor's Creek. 6. Whither did General Lee now turn? 7. Tell of the army at Farmville. 8. Of the army at Appomattox, and the attack there. 9. What did the two armies number? 10. What were the first steps taken towards surrender? 11. Describe the meeting of Lee and Grant. 12. What were the terms of surrender, and what spirit did General Grant show? 13. Tell of the departure of Lee and Grant. 14. What was the condition of the soldiers after the surrender (note)? 15. What became of the armies in North Carolina and west of the Mississippi? 16. What numbers were engaged on both sides during the war? 17. What proclamation had been issued by Mr. Lincoln in 1863? 18. Tell of Mr. Lincoln's assassination. 19. What was the effect of this murder? 20. What became of Booth? 21. Where was Mr. Lincoln buried? 22. What became of Mr. Davis after the surrender? 23. Relate the circumstances of his capture. 24. Tell of his imprisonment and sufferings. 25. Of what did his enemies accuse him? 26. Tell of his later life. 27. Of his death and the honors paid to his memory (note).

¹ Mr. Davis died in New Orleans on December 6, 1889. In May, 1893, his remains were taken to Richmond and laid in Hollywood Cemetery. Wherever the funeral train halted large crowds gathered to honor his memory, and a procession of old soldiers and citizens several miles long escorted the sacred dust to its final resting place, where an appropriate monument will soon be erected to his memory.

CHAPTER LXIII.

ANDREW JOHNSON'S ADMINISTRATION, 1865-1869.

Condition of the Country.—Within a few months the great Federal armies were disbanded; but, though the civil war was formally over, both North and South had been upturned in the struggle, and real peace and harmony did not follow the cessation of battle. The disregard of the Constitution and laws by the North for four years had induced habits of reckless authority and tyrannizing over the minority not now easy to lay aside. For years longer they prevailed, as well as other evil results of the rash license of war. At the South everything was in a state of chaos. The railroads were almost unfit for use. There were no mails except to Federal camps. The banks were all destroyed, and there was no money. In immense sections of the country the lands lay waste, the cattle were gone, fences had disappeared, the mills and many dwellings were only heaps of charred ruins. No manufactories were left. The whole system of labor was destroyed. The negroes, who had mostly been faithful to their masters and their duties during the war, were utterly demoralized by their sudden emancipation, which robbed the South of \$2,000,000,000 worth of property, in addition to the universal destruction everywhere seen.

Courage of the Southerners Under Defeat.—The defeated Southern soldiers encountered the ruin and impoverishment of their devastated homes with the same courage which had given them strength to contend against heavy odds on the battlefield. To gather up the fragments left and exercise their abilities for the comfort and support of the loved ones who rejoiced in their return, while mourning over their defeat, became the first duty and chief interest of each surviving Southerner. Officers and privates alike used the horses left them by General Grant to raise food with their own hands for their wives and children. Others did whatever offered them a livelihood. They

drove drays and street-cars, worked in machine-shops, cut wood in the forests, and the most cultivated and elegant men in the South put their hands with a will to every kind of labor.

General Lee Becomes a College President.—Southern schools and colleges had almost died out during the war. The States at once took steps to revive them. General Lee himself became President of Washington College, in Virginia, and devoted his energies to train his youthful countrymen to become useful, patriotic citizens. Numbers of the students and professors who gathered round him had followed him to battle, and now sought to fit themselves under his guidance for the duties of peace.

Submission to Federal Laws.—The political issues of the time were all unsettled, and they were to have no voice in deciding them. Knowing as well as ever that their cause had been just, and their principles founded on right and law, they acquiesced in the fate which war had brought them, and were determined to keep their paroles, and obey the Federal laws. There was great uncertainty as to what those laws would be. Mr. Lincoln had held that a State could not get out of the Union. He had, you remember, recognized the provisional governments of Virginia and Tennessee early in the war, and those of Louisiana and Arkansas organized under the proclamation of reconstruction, in 1863. He would, no doubt, had he lived, have organized similar governments in each of the Southern States.

Andrew Johnson's Position.—Like Mr. Lincoln, Andrew Johnson held that the seceded States had never been out of the Union, and that the war had been fought solely to compel them to return to their allegiance to that Union. Horrified at Mr. Lincoln's assassination, and fearing that he, the only person benefited by it, might be suspected of complicity in the crime, he broke out into abuse of the Southern people, and fierce threats against their leaders. The persons and lives of the soldiers who surrendered to General Grant and other Federal generals were protected by the terms of their paroles, and General Grant demanded that these should be complied with. But

for this, General Lee and others of the most influential Southern officers and statesmen would, most probably, have suffered grievous punishment.

Johnson's Amnesty Proclamation.—Feeling thus towards the South, Mr. Johnson's amnesty proclamation was much more restricted and severe than Mr. Lincoln's had been. He then organized provisional governments, and ordered the mails and other Federal functions to be resumed in the South.

Thirteenth Amendment.—Before Mr. Lincoln's second inauguration the Federal Congress voted a thirteenth amendment to the Constitution abolishing slavery in the United States. To make it part of the Constitution required the sanction of three-fourths of the States, and for this the co-operation of the Southern States was necessary. The provisional governors of those States, therefore, summoned their legislatures to meet and act on the amendment. Under Mr. Johnson's amnesty proclamation, no man could vote or hold office who had held office in the Confederate States; no general in their army or lieutenant in the navy; none who had been educated at West Point or been in the United States Congress; and no citizen worth \$20,000. This forbade most of the wisest and best men in the South to have any voice whatever in the new governments. The legislatures elected by the limited number of voters ratified the thirteenth amendment, which was proclaimed to be law in December, 1865.

Laws to Regulate Labor.—Dreading the evils apt to follow the sudden release of the negroes from all restraint, most of the Southern legislatures, although they represented a minority of the people, passed strict laws with regard to vagrants; and also as to contracts for labor and other relations between employers and employed. In some States these laws applied alike to both white and colored people; in others only to negroes and mulattoes. Each State promised protection in their rights to both negroes and whites. The legislatures also elected members to the next United States Congress.

Appointment of a Committee on Reconstruction.—It was

soon evident that the South could hope for no toleration at the hands of Congress. The names of Southern members were omitted from the roll-call and a Joint Committee on Reconstruction, of fifteen members, was at once appointed to enquire and report whether any Southern State was entitled to representation in Congress.

Congress and the President Disagree.—For four years the radical Republicans had urged on the war to enforce their doctrine that a State could never get out of the Union. But now, although the Thirteenth Amendment had been declared valid because the Southern States had ratified it, they averred that, by seceding, those States had severed their relations to the Union, and must be treated as conquered provinces. President Johnson thought otherwise, and a struggle began at once between him and Congress. The President's proclamation, on April 2d, declared the "insurrection at the South at an end, and the war over. But Congress showed fiercer animosity towards the South than before.

Freedmen's Bureau.—The previous Congress had established the "Freedmen's Bureau," to look after the freedmen. Through it, the War Department was to furnish food, clothing and homes for the needy negroes. If the commissioners thought desirable, they were to parcel out among the negroes the abandoned or confiscated lands of Southern whites—forty acres to a man—and were to assist them in other ways. This law was not now thought forcible enough. The attempt of the Southern legislatures to control the negroes in any way, had given great offence. A second bill was therefore passed which gave more power to the Bureau, and ordered homes, lands, food, clothing, schools and asylums to be provided for the negroes, and granted them equal privileges with the whites. All violations of this bill and offences against the negroes were to be punished by the Bureau.

Mr. Johnson's Vetoes.—Mr. Johnson promptly vetoed this bill as unconstitutional. He also vetoed on the same ground a "Civil Rights Bill" which conferred the same rights on the ne-

groes as the whites; and a bill to admit Colorado as a State. Congress, however, passed over the President's vetoes, a stricter Freedmen's Bureau Bill and both the other bills just mentioned.

Fourteenth Amendment.—The ultra Republicans now passed a Fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution, which contained in five clauses, all the measures they were resolved to carry out. The first clause declared all persons born or naturalized in the United States, citizens of them and of the State in which they lived, and forbade any State to abridge their privileges. The second limited the representation of each State in the proportion which the number allowed to vote bore to the male population over twenty-one years old. The third declared that no one should hold any office, civil or military under the United States or any State, who after having taken an oath to support the Constitution had taken part in secession—"insurrection or rebellion" as it was termed—or had given aid to others engaged in it. The fourth provided for the payment of the United States debt, including pensions and bounties, and prohibited any settlement whatever of Confederate debts. The fifth gave Congress power to enforce all the provisions of the amendment.

Reception of the Fourteenth Amendment.—This amendment was so contrary to the free spirit of the original Constitution that it was justly termed "revolutionary." Even the loyal States gave slow and unwilling assent to it. The ratification of it was made a condition for the re-admission of the Southern States to the Union. All of them rejected it, except Tennessee. The President cannot veto a constitutional amendment, but Mr. Johnson sent a message to Congress expressing his disapproval of the Fourteenth Amendment, and declaring it invalid because eleven States were not represented in the Congress which framed it.

Strife Between the President and Congress.—Mr. Johnson was not afraid of Congress, but he became much incensed at its action. He had a violent, uncontrolled temper. In the summer he travelled through the North and West, accompanied by Gen-

eral Grant and members of the Cabinet. On this tour, he denounced Congress in excited and undignified speeches, as only representing part of the Union, and called the radical leaders "Northern Disunionists," mentioning Thaddeus Stevens, Charles Sumner and Wendell Phillips by name. This, of course, widened the breach and embittered the strife between the President and Congress.

Reconstruction Committee, 1866.—The Reconstruction Committee made every effort to collect information which would justify the most severe legislation against the South. It examined strictly General Lee and other Southern leaders—every one, indeed, whose testimony might, perhaps, make Southern "disloyalty" more apparent. The Southern people, surrounded by ruin and desolation, could hardly be expected to love those who were now trying to add subjugation and humiliation to their defeat, but they had accepted in good faith the issue of the war, and intended to abide by the terms of their surrender. The testimony of General Lee and General Grant, on this point, availed nothing to change the purpose of the Reconstruction Committee. Their first report asserted that the Southern States had "forfeited all civil and political rights and privileges under the Constitution." Tennessee, having a considerable Union population, was excepted, and was restored to the Union during the summer.

Military Districts in the South.—Congress met in December more determined than ever to carry out its policy against the South. A reconstruction act now set aside the provisional governments established by the President, and divided the South into five military districts, to be governed by generals appointed by the President. Almost absolute power was bestowed on these military governors, who were required to take steps to reorganize the State governments.

Bills Passed, 1867.—The President vetoed this bill and others, two of which were framed to take away his constitutional powers. Congress passed them all over the veto, and, to prevent the President acting against their will, convened the

new Congress to meet on March 4th, at the close of the short session, instead of waiting until December.

The "Iron-Clad Oath."—The new Congress passed, over the veto, a stricter reconstruction act, which defined the authority of the military governors and prescribed the modes by which new State governments were to be instituted. A "test oath," known as the "iron-clad oath," was exacted from every one who was elected to office. It affirmed that the person taking it had not borne arms against the United States, had given no aid to those who had, and had yielded no voluntary allegiance to any authority hostile to the Union. No man was allowed to vote without swearing that he had not taken an oath to support the Constitution of the United States and then engaged in insurrection or rebellion. All Southern white men who had held any office prior to the war, from governor to constable, were excluded from voting, and the elections for State conventions and legislatures passed largely into the hands of the negroes and the Federal soldiers in Southern garrisons.

Carpet-Baggers and Scalawags.—As soon as this act became a law, a crowd of unprincipled Northern adventurers swarmed into the Southern States, seeking plunder and self-aggrandizement. They received the title of "carpet-baggers," while the Southern whites who made friends with them were called "scalawags." The "carpet-baggers," by pretending great love for the negroes, soon worked themselves into the most important and best-paying places in the reconstructed Southern States. Some of these men were the dregs of the Federal army, some were fugitives from justice; few of them hesitated at any oppression or dishonesty which would add to their possessions. Bad as they were, they flattered and cajoled the ignorant, credulous negroes until they got themselves elected to all the best offices; and the Radical Congress encouraged them as admirable tools with which to harry and insult the hated white Southerners. The years of their sway were filled with mismanagement and misrule beyond description. There seemed no hope of deliverance from these "carpet-baggers," who were found everywhere, and

had themselves elected governors of States, mayors of towns, and judges of the courts.

QUESTIONS.—1. What was the condition of both the North and South after the war? 2. What spirit was shown by the Southern soldiers? 3. What position did General Lee take? 4. What were Mr. Lincoln's views as to the seceded States? 5. What was President Johnson's opinion and how did he act toward the South? 6. What was his amnesty proclamation? 7. What was the "Thirteenth Amendment"? 8. What persons were forbidden to vote in the South? 9. What laws were made to regulate labor at the South? 10. What joint committee was appointed? 11. Were members from the Southern States admitted to Congress? 12. What difference arose between the President and Congress? 13. For what purpose was the Freedmen's Bureau established? 14. What bills were passed over the President's veto? 15. What was the "Fourteenth Amendment"? 16. How was it received? 17. Tell of the President's tour and of his speeches in 1866. 18. Describe the work of the Reconstruction Committee. 19. What sort of governments were now set up in the South? 20. What bills were passed in 1867? 21. What was the "Iron-Clad Oath"? 22. Who were the "carpet-baggers" and the "scalawags"? 23. Tell of the influence they acquired and its bad consequences.

CHAPTER LXIV.

JOHNSON'S ADMINISTRATION, CONTINUED—GRANT'S ADMINISTRATION.

Impeachment of the President, 1868.—At length the hatred of Congress against the President came to a crisis. On February 5th, 1868, Mr. Thaddeus Stevens and Mr. John A. Bingham appeared at the bar of the Senate and in the name of the House of Representatives impeached the President and demanded that the Senate should try him. The charges brought against Mr. Johnson seem now very frivolous—that he had removed Secretary Stanton from office; had issued orders directly to General Emory, and had abused Congress in his public speeches. Mr. Johnson's acts and language had been passionate and undignified, but they were not unconstitutional, and did not merit the strong measures of a trial and removal from office.

His Acquittal.—When the case came to a vote, on May 16th, thirty-five of the fifty-four senators were for conviction, nineteen for acquittal. It requires a two-thirds vote to convict. This could not be had. The chief justice gave judgment of acquittal and the court dissolved. Secretary Stanton resigned. The President won the fight and continued his denunciations of Congress.

Re-Admission of States, 1868.—By the end of June, reconstructed governments had been set up in Arkansas, the Carolinas, Florida, Georgia, Alabama and Louisiana. Their mongrel legislatures, composed largely of negroes, carpet-baggers, and Federal soldiers, willingly ratified the Fourteenth Amendment, which was proclaimed a law on July 28th. Congress approved the constitutions adopted by the States just named, and admitted them to representation. Virginia, Mississippi and Texas declined to accept the constitutions prepared for them by reconstructing conventions, and were kept under military governors for some years longer.

General Grant's Election, 1868.—General Grant was next elected President by the Republicans. The negro voters in the reconstructed Southern States followed the "carpet-baggers" like sheep, and the Electoral College gave General Grant a majority of 134, although he received only some 300,000 votes more of the 6,000,000 cast than did Horatio Seymour, the Democratic candidate.

Fifteenth Amendment.—Before General Grant was inaugurated, Congress voted for a Fifteenth Amendment, which gave the right of suffrage to the negroes, and empowered Congress to enforce it. This amendment, being ratified by the requisite number of States, became a law the next year. The three Southern States not yet "reconstructed" were required to accept it as well as the fourteenth, before they should be re-admitted to the Union. Within twelve months, the strong military rule brought them also into subjection, and they, too, were counted among the States.

Oppression Under the Reconstructed Governments.—

These "reconstructed governments" in no way represented the people of the Southern States. The military authority had never professed to be anything but arbitrary. Some of the generals who ruled in the five districts were more conscientious and humane than others, more prudent and considerate of the white population under their domination; but all had been oppressive and dictatorial, and there had been no pretence of freedom. Under reconstruction there was the mockery of a representative government, which ignored many of the most intelligent white population, while it oppressed and robbed them without mercy. The reconstruction policy turned the Southern States into what one of the strongest Northern writers describes as "a political hell."¹

Loyal Leagues.—In order to increase their influence for evil over the colored people, these crafty white leaders introduced among them secret societies known as "Loyal Leagues," or "Lincoln Leagues."² The meetings were held at night, when violent speeches incited the negroes to evil deeds, and to outrages too horrible to be described. The Freedmen's Bureau, especially, encouraged these pernicious leagues.

¹This was the harvest time for the carpet-baggers, whose principal motive in life was to enrich themselves. In South Carolina, the governor, lieutenant-governor, and all the other State officials were either carpet-baggers or negroes. In other States, officers of the army which had desolated them shared the government with other Northern adventurers and with negroes. Many of these negro legislators, judges, and magistrates could neither read nor write, and had not the sense to understand the important questions of the evil times. Government, in such incapable hands, became every day more corrupt. The ignorant negroes, elated at their fancied equality with their white colleagues, were entirely subservient to their will. All base devices were used to gain money for the greedy adventurers. The impoverished States were taxed more heavily than the most prosperous times warranted, and those taxes had to be paid by the disfranchised whites. Railroads and other schemes were chartered which bribed the State officials enormously to "put them through." Corporations and private citizens were fleeced without mercy. The debt of South Carolina was increased from \$5,000,000, in 1865, to \$30,000,000, ten years later. The same conditions prevailed elsewhere, and Mississippi, Louisiana, and Arkansas suffered as deeply as South Carolina. The lot of the intelligent white population was made harder by the officious interference of the Freedmen's Bureau in their social and domestic life. Whatever story against a white employer any idle, vindictive negro carried to an officer of the Bureau was eagerly listened to, and was sure to occasion an offensive rebuke or admonition to the accused party, while the negroes were encouraged in idleness and lawlessness.

²These leagues seem to have been partly religious and partly political. The members took solemn oaths to carry out the objects of the society, which were to strengthen the Northern adventurers, and injure the Southern whites.

Patient Submission Impossible.—No high-spirited, courageous people could patiently submit to such a course of outrages and indignities from the negroes whom they knew to be unfit for governing, and from white men often morally below the negroes. The Southern whites had promised not to take up arms, and were obliged to devise some other mode of lightening their galling yoke.

Secret Societies for Protection.—As open resistance was impossible, they, too, had recourse to secret organizations. These were at first local, and were intended for self-protection against the barn-burnings and worse outrages committed by the negroes. The best men at the South took part in these societies, which bore such names as "The Pale Faces," "The Invisible Empire," "Knights of the White Camellia," and other fantastic titles. They worked upon the fears and superstitions of the negroes, by appearing suddenly at night with masked faces and flowing white robes, sometimes declaring themselves to be ghosts or evil spirits, and threatening terrible punishment to all who resisted them.

"Ku Klux Klan."—After a time, these different societies were all known as the "Ku Klux Klan," which became quite powerful, though there was not really any widespread, general organization. The methods which had proved efficacious to intimidate the "Loyal Leagues," and to protect white women and defenceless families, were now used for political purposes.¹

Oppression and Tyranny.—The Democratic party at the North was opposed to the tyranny and oppression practiced at the South, but could not prevent it. The Republicans were determined to keep the National government in their own hands, and to maintain their supremacy in the Southern States, no

¹ The enormous negro majorities were the principal cause of the misrule, and dishonestly prevailing throughout the Southern States, and the Ku Klux devoted itself to keeping the negroes from voting. Sometimes negroes and Northern whites, who stirred up others to deeds of violence against the harassed and exasperated Southerners, received severe whippings. Outrages and indignities perpetrated under the influence of the leagues were paid back by the Ku Klux. That mysterious body was also, no doubt, sometimes blamed for acts of private vengeance. The control of the Klans had, by this time, passed out of the hands of the best Southern men into those of more unscrupulous leaders.

matter how corrupt their agents and their measures might be. Whenever the negroes and carpet-baggers could not control the white men, in any part of the South, they complained to the government in Washington, which, at once, sent United States troops to back up the despotic rule of the reconstruction governors. This added another element of strife and confusion to the distracted, down-trodden South. The history of the South from 1865 to 1876 is only a record of military oppression and civil tyranny.¹

The Force Bill.—All this proscription and robbery aroused such opposition in the Southern States that whenever the troops were withdrawn, the whites gained the upper hand; and, with the aid of some of the negroes, whom they partly persuaded and partly frightened into siding with them, showed their States to be in favor of the Democrats. To prevent this, the Republican Congress, in 1871, passed a Force Bill giving control of all Federal elections to United States soldiers and officers. The corrupt legislatures had appointed Returning Boards to count and decide upon the votes; and the protection given the boards by the Force Bill, occasioned most of the election contests of which I have told you. The people of the South were held in this thral-

¹ If such a thing were possible, there was more misrule and despotism in Louisiana, South Carolina, Mississippi and Arkansas than elsewhere. As early as 1866, there were bloody riots in Louisiana between the partisans of Mr. Lincoln's provisional governor and Mr. Johnson's. General Sheridan superseded both, but proved so arbitrary that he was ordered elsewhere. In the election of 1868 most of the whites and many negroes voted against the Republicans, and gave a large majority for Mr. Seymour. The Republicans would not yield and bloodshed and riot occurred all over the State. In New Orleans, the colored Democrats were mobbed, and one of their orators was murdered. At last, the Republicans quarrelled over the offices. Twice, two different governors claimed to be elected. In 1870, General Grant recognized Pinchback, a negro, as governor. In another contest between the Republicans and Democrats, the President allowed the Democratic legislature to assemble, and declared Kellogg the Republican, the lawful governor. The best of the negroes joined the whites in resisting Kellogg. Riots and bloodshed again broke out. When the people in New Orleans deposed Kellogg, soldiers were sent to uphold him, and military rule was re-established. But whoever governed, the State was plundered and impoverished without mercy. Property was everywhere confiscated, and the profits went to the carpet-baggers. Government officials stole unblushingly. Warmouth, the Republican governor before Kellogg, who came from the North a poor man, amassed a large fortune while in office.

dom a few years longer; but such tyranny could not exist forever. In 1875, Mississippi cast a strong Democratic vote, and Revels, the negro Senator from the State, wrote to General Grant: "My people as they grow older, grow wiser. They have learned that they were being using as tools, and cast their ballots against unprincipled adventurers to overthrow them."

Effects of Reconstruction Rule.—I have told you very little of the horrors and iniquities of the "Reconstruction Period." Except in loss of life, the South suffered far more than during the war. The lawless exercise of despotic power, the disregard of moral obligations, and the greed for wealth which trampled upon honor and honesty, produced long and lasting evil consequences to the whole nation. After years of mingled endurance and resistance, oppression and plundering fell into disgrace in the South. Slowly and grudgingly Congress doled out amnesty to the Southerners, and the States got the reins of government into their own hands. Native patriots once more guided their councils, and the long reign of terror came to an end.

QUESTIONS.—1. For what was President Johnson impeached? 2. Tell of his acquittal. 3. What States were re-admitted in 1868? 4. What three States refused to accept the conditions of re-admission? 5. Who was elected President in 1868? 6. What is the Fifteenth Amendment? 7. Describe the oppression in the South under the Reconstruction governments. 8. Who filled all the offices, and how were they elected (note)? 9. How were the troubles increased by the Freedmen's Bureau (note)? 10. What were the Loyal Leagues? 11. Was patient submission possible? 12. How did the white men try to protect themselves? 13. Tell of the "Ku Klux Klan." 14. What were its plans, and how it was afterwards abused (note)? 15. What is the history of the South from 1865 to 1876? 16. Describe affairs in Louisiana, her two governments and how she was robbed (note). 17. What was the Force Bill? 18. What were the Returning Boards? 19. What were the effects of the Reconstruction Rule?

CHAPTER LXV.

GRANT'S ADMINISTRATION, CONTINUED.

Atlantic Telegraph, 1866.—During Mr. Johnson's administration a new Atlantic telegraph line was laid. The line laid down in 1858 became useless after a few messages passed over it. Mr. Cyrus Field tried, for eight years, to have a new one made. After \$6,000,000 had been expended on it, his efforts were, in 1866, at last successful, and the submarine cable has been in operation ever since. There are now five ocean lines between us and Europe, and one to Brazil.

Purchase of Alaska.—In 1867, the United States bought from Russia, for a little more than \$7,000,000, the Northwestern part of the continent now known as Alaska. This vast region lies far north, but its climate is tempered by the warm Pacific current, somewhat as that of Great Britain is by the Gulf Stream. Great tracts of fine cedar and pine timber, valuable fisheries, and furs—especially seal skins—are found there, as well as important minerals, and gold in considerable quantities.

Execution of Maximilian, 1867.—I have told you that Napoleon III., of France, had tried to place a European emperor on the throne of Mexico. The Mexicans did not choose to have it so. They fought against Maximilian, took him prisoner and shot him at Queretaro, in July of this year. He was a good man, and would, perhaps, have made a good ruler, but he had no right nor claim to govern Mexico. The United States, from the first, protested against the effort to establish a monarchy close to her borders, and, as soon as the Civil War ended, sent troops to the Mexican frontier. Napoleon withdrew the French force by which, alone, Maximilian was supported, and the destruction of the unfortunate emperor soon followed.

First Pacific Railroad, 1869.—The year of General Grant's inauguration witnessed the opening of the first railroad which crossed the continent from the Atlantic to the Pacific Oceans

Four other railroads now connect the eastern and western shores of the United States, and carry passengers from one to the other in fewer days than it formerly required months. So that the quickest route from England to China is across North America.¹

Price of Gold, 1869.—The paper money issued by the government during the war declined greatly in value. At one time 100 cents in gold was worth 286 cents in “greenbacks.” The notes then rose in value, and in 1869, a gold dollar was worth only 130 cents in paper. Foreign trade is carried on in gold, and merchants and bankers are obliged to have it at any price. The United States Treasury, in Washington, had \$100,000,000 in its vaults, and the New York banks \$15,000,000. Fiske and Gould, two New York bankers of large fortune and much shrewdness, thought they would make a fortune for themselves by raising the price, and quietly began to buy gold in New York. They paid always a little more, and asked a still higher price for it, and intended to make one dollar in gold worth two in greenbacks.

“Black Friday” in Wall Street, 1869.—The greatest excitement ever known in the gold-room on Wall street, New York, occurred on September 24th. The conspirators had bought up nearly all the gold in the market, and would sell none of it except at a ruinous price. They seemed to hold the business of the nation paralyzed in their hands, when a telegram announced that the Secretary of the Treasury offered \$4,000,000 gold for sale. The price fell at once, and in twenty minutes went down twenty per cent. A great panic ensued. In the rush to bid for gold at the falling prices some men were crushed to death. Others died from the shock of losing instead of reaping enormous gains, but the principal actors in the speculation pocketed \$11,000,000 before they were checked.

Internal Revenue.—The census of 1870 showed that in spite of the ravages of war, the population of the United States had

¹ In 1868 China sent to the United States the first embassy she had ever commissioned to any foreign nation. Friendly relations have subsisted between the two governments since that time, although the United States have felt it necessary to prohibit the continual immigration of the Chinese, which was thought injurious, especially in the Pacific States.

increased, since 1860, from 31,000,000 to 38,000,000, and the wealth of the nation in almost as large a proportion. A system of taxation on the productions of the country called the "Internal Revenue," was gradually lessening the enormous war debt. The South was still the great agricultural section, with her enormous crops of cotton, tobacco, sugar and rice; and the internal revenue system greatly increased the burdens of her already over-taxed people.

Death of General Robert E. Lee, 1870.—On October 12, 1870, General Robert E. Lee died at his home, in Lexington, Virginia, beloved and lamented by the whole Southern people. Even his foes pronounced him a great and good man, and his memory is cherished as that of a most noble and pure Christian patriot.

Settlement of the Alabama Claims.—In 1871 complaint was made against England for the damage done to American commerce by Confederate privateers, and especially by the *Alabama*, and claims were pressed for the payment of such injuries. Great Britain agreed to pay \$15,500,000 for the losses inflicted by the Confederate cruisers, while the United States had to pay \$5,500,000 for permission to fish in Canadian waters.

Great Fires in 1871 and 1872.—Destructive conflagrations marked these two years. The great fire which destroyed 25,000 houses and \$200,000,000 worth of property in Chicago is said to have been kindled by a cow kicking over a lamp in a shed which contained a good deal of straw. Many lives were also lost in Wisconsin, Michigan and Minnesota by forest fires, which burned over immense tracts of timber. In 1872 Boston had a great conflagration, which consumed \$80,000,000 worth of property.

Credit Mobilier.—The Central and the Union Pacific Railroads had received enormous grants of land from the government. A corporation called the Credit Mobilier was chartered in Pennsylvania to build the Union Pacific. This corporation was believed to have given bribes to many prominent men, members of Congress, the Speaker of the House of Representatives, the

Secretary of the Treasury, the Vice-President and his successor among them. Only two of these were actually proved guilty, but the rest were never cleared of suspicion.

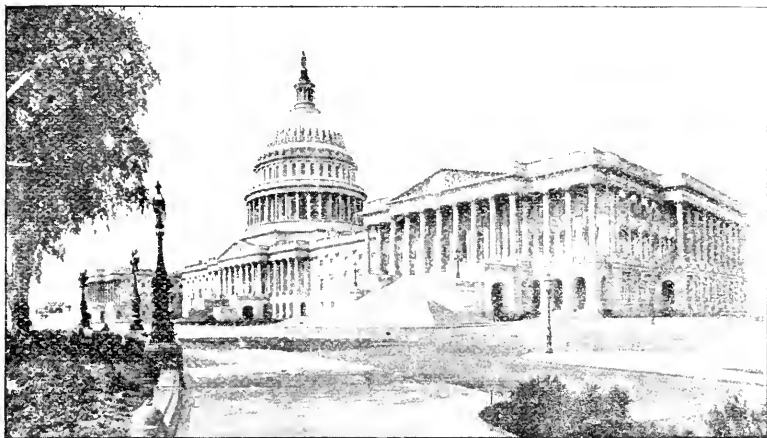
Financial Crash of 1873.—One of the worst money panics ever felt in the country followed the discovery of the operations of the Credit Mobilier. The Northern Pacific Railroad was in process of construction, and a Philadelphia bank, which was thought enormously rich, advanced money to build the road, expecting to be repaid by grants from Congress. The public mind was, however, so much aroused by the exposure of the Credit Mobilier that Congress could not venture to vote money for any railroad. The bonds of the railroads, which Jay Cooke's bank held as securities, became unsalable, and the bank failed for \$15,000,000, carrying down with it many smaller banks and business houses. A great financial crash followed. Other railroads failed and the stockholders lost everything. Distress and "hard times" were felt everywhere, and bore most heavily on the poorer, working people.

Re-Election of General Grant, 1872.—In the fall of 1872, General Grant was elected President for the second time. Horace Greeley, of New York, ran against him as a "Liberal Republican." The corruption of the government officials was more shameless than ever during Grant's second term. The moneyed classes were possessed by a spirit of wild speculation, which, no doubt, resulted in a large measure from the upturning of society, and the disregard of law and order caused by the war and the reconstruction period.

Whiskey Frauds.—Whiskey was among the articles which produced a large internal revenue. It was found that United States officials had conspired with Western distillers to defraud the government out of \$1,200,000 in a few months. The President's Cabinet was infected with the prevailing dishonesty. Congress impeached General Belknap, the Secretary of War, for taking bribes and selling the patronage of his office, and he only escaped punishment for his guilt by being allowed to resign.

Civil Service Reform, 1871.—In order to improve the pub-

lic service, Congress, in 1871, authorized the President to establish a Commission to regulate admission into what is known as the "civil service." The object of this was to give offices to none but fit persons, instead of allowing successful politicians to fill them with their followers. The first Commission lost the support of Congress, in 1874, but it has been re-established, and



WEST FRONT OF THE CAPITOL AT WASHINGTON.

its rules and examinations now regulate admission to most of the Federal offices.

Modoc War, 1873.—The Modoc Indians refused to abandon their lands in Oregon and remove to the Indian Territory, and defied the United States to compel them to it. The father of their leader Captain Jack, had been killed by order of an army officer, while under protection of a flag of truce, and Captain Jack hated the whites intensely. To avoid bloodshed, a truce with the Modocs was agreed to, and General Canby and other commissioners met them in council. Indian vengeance could not resist such an opportunity. General Canby and a clergyman were murdered in the council. A fierce war followed. The whole band of Modocs was forced to surrender, and the chiefs were court-martialed and executed.

Sioux War, 1876.—Three years later, the Sioux Indians be-

gan to rove from their reservation in Dakota into Montana and Wyoming, where they murdered and robbed the white settlers. Soldiers were sent to subdue them. General Custer, with his cavalry, increased the rage of the Sioux by burning their towns and inflicting punishment on their women and children. While scouting near the Big Horn River, on June 25th, the cavalry suddenly came upon a large force of Indians. A battle ensued in which General Custer and all his men were killed. A murderous war raged for months. The Indians were defeated again and again, and at last retreated to Canada to avoid extermination.

Centennial Exposition, 1876.—The Centennial year of the Republic, was celebrated by a great International Exposition, held in Philadelphia. More than two hundred splendid buildings were erected—several of them made entirely of iron and glass—to contain a grand display of products from all parts of the world. Millions of people from all parts of the United States and from abroad, visited this exposition, which gave a wonderful idea of the resources and wealth developed by the Republic in a hundred years. Electric lights and telephones, now so widely used, were first exhibited at this exposition.

Colorado the “Centennial State.”—The admission of Colorado into the Union in 1876, made her exactly one hundred years younger than the “old thirteen.” Nebraska was the first State to come in after the war, in 1867. Colorado, the thirty-eighth State, was the second.

QUESTIONS.—1. When was the second Atlantic telegraph laid? 2. Tell of Alaska and its purchase. 3. Tell the story of Maximilian and Mexico. 4. What are our relations to China (note?) 5. When was the first Pacific Railroad opened? 6. Tell of the price of gold in 1869. 7. Of “Black Friday” in Wall street. 8. What is the internal revenue? 9. Tell of General Lee’s death. 10. What were the *Alabama* claims? 11. What great fires occurred in 1871 and 1872? 12. Tell of the Credit Mobilier. 13. What caused the financial crash in 1873? 14. Who was elected President in 1872? 15. Tell of the “whiskey frauds.” 16. What is meant by Civil Service Reform? 17. Tell of the Modoc War in 1873. 18. Of the Sioux War in 1876. 19. Describe the Centennial Exhibition in 1876, and tell what it celebrated. 20. When was Colorado admitted to the Union? 21. When did Nebraska come in?

CHAPTER LXVI.

END OF GRANT'S ADMINISTRATION—HAYES'S ADMINISTRATION—ADMINISTRATIONS OF GARFIELD, ARTHUR AND CLEVELAND.

Tilden and Hayes, 1876.—Another presidential election was held in the centennial year. The candidates were Rutherford B. Hayes, of Ohio, Republican, and Samuel J. Tilden, of New York, Democrat. A very large majority of the popular vote was cast for Tilden, but as there were 369 electors in the Electoral College, 185 votes were necessary to elect the President. Both sides claimed the victory, but Tilden certainly had 184 of the electoral votes, while twenty others were disputed.

Two Governments in Louisiana and South Carolina.—Louisiana and South Carolina sent to Washington two sets of electors, one certified by the lawfully-elected Democratic governor, the other by the usurping Republican governor and Returning Board. Two sets of electors went also from Florida, one endorsed by the Republican governor, the other by the lawfully-elected Democratic governor and a Democratic member of the Returning Board. In Oregon Republican electors had the majority, but one of them held a United States office and was ineligible. The Democratic governor, therefore, gave certificates to two Republicans, and the third to the Democrat receiving the highest number of votes. Tilden already had 184 electoral votes, and this one from Oregon would have elected him without any of those disputed in the South.

Electoral Commission.—Congress appointed an Electoral Commission to decide the question. This was composed of fifteen members, five each from the Senate, the House of Representatives, and the Supreme Court. The Senate chose three Republicans and two Democrats, the House three Democrats and two Republicans. Four judges, two belonging to each party, were then appointed. These four were to select the fifth judge. It was expected that they would choose Judge Davis, who was a non-party man; but Davis was made Senator from

Illinois, and resigned his judgeship. The only two Democratic judges were already on the Commission. The fifth one chosen was, therefore, also a Republican.

Election of Hayes.—The ablest lawyers in the land represented the contending candidates before the Commission. Unanswerable evidence that frauds had been practiced, and votes suppressed in South Carolina, Louisiana and Florida, and that there was a large Democratic majority in those States was produced; but the Commission resolved to decide everything by the strict party vote of eight Republicans to seven Democrats. The Republican majority refused to go behind the certificates of the Republican governors, and declared that all evidence of fraud in obtaining these certificates was *aliunde* or outside the question. This gave the three Southern States to Hayes, although their votes were in favor of Tilden. The latter needed, you remember, only one vote to secure his election, and the Democratic vote certified by the governor of Oregon gave him that one. But the majority of the commission at once changed its ground. Facts were only *aliunde* when in favor of the Democrats. Evidence was admitted to prove that the Republican elector thrown out by the Governor of Oregon had resigned his United States office. He was declared eligible over the governor's certificate, and counted as vote 185 for Hayes.

The South After Hayes's Election.—Although made President by fraudulent Southern votes, Mr. Hayes proved to be a friend to that section of the Union. He soon withdrew from it all Federal troops, and when the soldiers left, the carpet-baggers disappeared. The Republican governors, whose certificates made Hayes President, now gave way quietly to the Democrats chosen by the people. From that time the South, guided and controlled by her own people, has moved steadily forward.

Strife Between Labor and Capital.—The accumulation of vast wealth in the hands of a few individuals or great corporations, bears very hardly on people of smaller means, and especially on those who work for daily wages. The employed are constantly trying to resist oppression by the employers, and to gain a larger proportion of the money made by their daily toil;

and this strife between labor and capital has caused dangerous outbreaks and troubles in various parts of the United States.

Railroad Strikes, 1877.—This spirit first broke out dangerously in the summer of 1877, when the railroad employees in Maryland, Pennsylvania and New York became dissatisfied with their wages. When the trains were started with new hands, the strikers burned the cars and the depots. State troops and United States soldiers were employed to put down the strikers. In Pittsburg, Pennsylvania, a mob of 20,000 men held the city for days. Much property was destroyed, and 100 people killed. Similar riots occurred in St. Louis and Chicago.

Specie Payments Resumed, 1879.—Specie payments were resumed on January 1, 1879, which means that the United States treasury and the national banks then, for the first time since 1861, could pay all claims against them in gold instead of greenbacks. This resumption improved the national credit so much that the government could borrow money at a low interest.

Garfield Becomes President.—More immigrants came to the country than ever, and, in 1880, the population was more than 50,000,000. The Republican candidate for President this year was General James A. Garfield; the Democratic candidate was General Winfield S. Hancock, both of whom had served in the war. Garfield was the choice of the stronger party, and became President on March 4, 1881.



J. A. GARFIELD.

Shot by Guiteau.—On July 2d General Garfield was shot in the depot in Washington by a disappointed office-seeker named Guiteau. The wounded President lingered for more than two months, and died after great suffering at Long Branch on September 19th. Vice-President Arthur at once became President. Guiteau pretended to be insane, but was condemned and hanged, as he should have been.

Centennial Celebration at Yorktown, 1881.—October 19th of this year was the hundredth anniversary of Cornwallis's surrender, which was celebrated at Yorktown. Thousands of sol

diers and war-vessels assembled there. France and Germany sent representatives, and descendants of officers from those nations who had been with Washington, a hundred years before, joined in doing honor to the occasion.

Unfortunate Arctic Expeditions.—The steamer *Jeannette*, fitted out by Mr. James Gordon Bennett, of New York, and manned by United States sailors and officers, in 1879, sailed through Behring Straits to explore the Arctic Ocean north of Asia. In 1881, she was crushed by ice. Her crew took to the boats. Some of them reached the frozen shores of Siberia, where most of them died of starvation. A few survivors afterwards reached home. A strictly national expedition of twenty-four men, commanded by Lieutenant Greely, was sent to establish a Polar station in the frozen seas of North America in 1881. For three years nothing was heard of them. In 1882, and again in 1883, relief expeditions were sent, which failed to reach Greely's party. Another was sent in 1884, which cost \$1,000,000, and was more successful. Six men only had lived through the sufferings and hardships of these three frozen years, and they were nearly dead when found by the relief party.



Grover Cleveland President, 1885 to 1889.

In 1885, Grover Cleveland, of New York, became the first Democratic President since Mr. Buchanan—a period of twenty-five years. He defeated James G. Blaine, the Republican candidate, by thirty-seven electoral votes. Mr. Hendricks, the Vice-President, soon died, and Congress then decided that in case the President and Vice-President should both die, the Secretary of State should be President and the other secretaries in a regular order.

Labor Troubles.—Mr. Cleveland's first administration witnessed some important events, most of which arose from the discontent of the laboring men. The worst labor "strikes" hitherto experienced were in 1886. These "strikes" began with the street-car drivers in New York, and spread through many parts of the country and into almost all departments of work. Riots occurred in Chicago, and meetings in the public

squares were harangued by leaders who uttered vicious threats and urged the mob to violent deeds.

Anarchists, 1886.—When the city police, on May 4th, tried to disperse the mob, they were attacked with dynamite bombs, which killed six and wounded more than sixty of them. The rest of the police charged into the mob, killed some, wounded others, captured the ringleaders, and dispersed the rioters. All the leaders except one were foreigners. They boasted that they were “Anarchists”—enemies to all government, which they wished to destroy by murder or any kind of violence. Four of them were hanged, and others were imprisoned for life.

Earthquake in Charleston, 1886.—This year there occurred a severe earthquake in Charleston, South Carolina, which threatened the city with total destruction, and was felt for several hundred miles.

QUESTIONS.—1. Tell of the election for President in 1876. 2. What double elections were held in South Carolina and Louisiana? 3. In what States were the electoral votes disputed? 4. What was the Electoral Commission? 5. How did it decide the election, and who became President in 1877? 6. What did Mr. Hayes do for the South? 7. What caused the strife between labor and capital? 8. Tell of the railroad strikes in 1877. 9. When did the government resume the payment of its debts in gold? 10. Who became President in 1881? 11. Give an account of his death. 12. What centennial celebration took place in 1881? 13. Tell of the unfortunate Arctic expeditions sent out in 1879 and 1881. 14. Who was elected President in 1884? 15. What labor troubles occurred during Mr. Cleveland's first administration? 16. Tell of the Anarchists and what they did. 17. What disasters occurred in 1886?

CHAPTER LXVII.

BENJAMIN HARRISON'S ADMINISTRATION—CLEVELAND'S SECOND ELECTION—PROGRESS OF THE COUNTRY.

Benjamin Harrison, President, 1889.—The Republican candidate, Benjamin Harrison, of Indiana, grandson of President Harrison, of 1841, defeated Grover Cleveland in the next election, and became President on March 4th, 1889. The six new States, North and South Dakota, Montana, Washington,

Wyoming and Idaho were admitted into the Union, during this year; and the Territory of Oklahoma was cut off from the Indian Territory.

The Tariff and the Currency.—During this and the preceding administration, and ever since, the principal political questions have been concerning the tariff and the currency. They are both subjects hard to understand, too much disputed and too perplexing for me to hope to make them clear and interesting to you. They belong to another branch of study.



Second Election of Cleveland.—Grover Cleveland became President a second time, in 1893. Several new political parties have arisen in the country—"Populists," "Prohibitionists," and others.

Columbian Exposition, 1893.—In 1893, magnificent naval reviews of vessels from almost all nations were held in Hampton Roads, Virginia, and in New York Harbor; and the Great Columbian Exposition or World's Fair occurred at Chicago to celebrate the four hundredth anniversary of the discovery of America by Columbus.

Strike in Chicago.—The next year, before all the foreign exhibits had been carried away, the most disastrous labor strike ever known broke out in Chicago. The strike began with the employees of the Pullman Car Company, and spread to all kinds of railroad business in the North and West. No trains were allowed to run; the mails were stopped and all trade interrupted. When the railroads engaged other hands, the strikers resorted to violence and murder, to prevent any work being done. For days there was a wholesale destruction of property. United States soldiers were sent against the strikers, and order was restored. Many millions of dollars were lost by this outbreak. An important fact connected with this and the previous strikes, is that the South took no part in them. Soldiers were necessary to control disorder in many places in the North and West, but the law-abiding South remained in absolute peace and security.

Material Development.—Since 1862, great quantities of gold have been mined in Colorado and Nevada. Between 1850 and 1860, coal and iron mining, salt making and manufactures increased largely. South of the Potomac, all progress was stopped by the Civil War, and Northern industries were directed to producing the things needed to carry it on. War materials, gunboats, clothing, shoes, and the many appliances needed by the great Federal armies, employed numerous hands, and Northern workmen and contractors received high pay from 1861 to 1865.

Wonderful Recuperation of the South.—When the war ended the North was wealthy and prosperous, the South plunged in poverty, which increased for ten years longer. Her recovery within the past twenty years has been astonishing. The fortitude and patience of the Southern people under their prolonged calamities, and their success in retrieving their ruined fortunes and regulating their State governments, have won respect from even those most hostile to them.

Population and Industry.—Between 1880 and 1890, the population of the South increased 40 per cent., and towns and cities sprung up like magic. In 1890, there was almost as much iron produced in the South as in the whole country in 1870, and more than twice as much bituminous coal, as was mined in all the States in 1860. The Southern States raise three-fourths of the cotton of the world, and are constantly increasing their mills for manufacturing it. In ten years, railroads have nearly doubled in the South, and the assessed property has increased \$342,193,583. The people no longer confine their efforts to growing the staple crops on large plantations, but now wisely diversify their products.

Railroads.—Steam and electricity are the principal factors in bringing about these changes and developments. The United States had, in 1850, not quite 9,000 miles of railroads, in 1890, more than 130,000 miles. This makes travel and transportation quicker and cheaper, but it increases enormously the wealth and power of the few owners and officers of the roads.

Steam.—Steam has lessened the labor and increased the profits of most handicrafts. Richard Hoe of New York, invented a steam printing press, which can turn out more printed papers in six hours than scores of hand presses could do in a day. These presses have made it possible to print the multitudes of cheap books, and the huge daily and Sunday newspapers.

Electricity.—The wonders of electricity which began with the magnetic telegraph have extended in many other directions. The telephone enables us to talk to people miles away. The phonograph stores up speeches, songs, concerts and every sound to be reproduced at a moment's notice. Electric light resembles that of the sun more than any other artificial light, and is largely used in lighting streets and houses. It has proved a powerful and beneficial assistant to the physician and the surgeon. It bids fair to take the place of steam as a motive power.

Increase of Schools and Colleges.—The patient investigation and inventive genius which worked out these wonderful results are due in a great degree to the increased facilities for education. The historic colleges of Harvard, William and Mary, Yale, Princeton and a half-dozen others of Colonial and Revolutionary days, have been followed by others whose number now reaches 360. Some are solely for women; some admit men and women to the same classes, while others, in "annexes" established for the purpose, allow young women to study the same courses and receive the same degrees as the male students, provided they pass the necessary examinations. The public and private schools have progressed in like proportion. Every American child—white, negro or Indian—can now receive the rudiments, at least, of a good English education, who will go to the public schools and learn what is taught in them. The Southern States have shown especial activity in this direction. Up to 1890 the school fund in the South increased nearly \$12,000,000 in thirteen years, nearly a million a year; and I would have you notice that the negroes receive nearly one-half the schooling provided for by this tax, while they pay only one-thirtieth of it.

The South in Early Literature.—The South gave to the Re-

public many of its greatest statesmen, and the documents written by them, which shaped its destiny—"The Bill of Rights," "The Declaration of Independence," and "The Constitution," while, outside of the region of politics, they furnished but a few distinguished writers, in the early part of this century.

American Authors From 1820 to 1860.—Between these dates there came into notice in the North the historians—Bancroft, Prescott and Motley; the poets—Bryant, Longfellow and Lowell; the essayists—Emerson and Holmes; the novelists—Irving, Cooper, Hawthorne and Mrs. Stowe, who, with other writers, became distinguished throughout Europe and America. There were, also, contemporary with these, though not so widely known, men and women at the South equally worthy of honor and fame. Edgar A. Poe ranks as the greatest American poet; Francis Scott Key, of Maryland, gave "The Star Spangled Banner" to the country; Kennedy, of Maryland; the Tuckers, of Virginia; William Gilmore Simms, of South Carolina; Mrs. Caroline Gilman, Marion Harland, and John Esten Cooke, of Virginia, wrote romances; and Augustus Longstreet, of Georgia, and O. P. Baldwin, of Mississippi, racy sketches, which present to us pictures of Southern life from Revolutionary times to the Civil War; Bledsoe and Maury, of Virginia; Gayarre, of Louisiana, and others, show what Southern intellect was capable of in philosophy, science and history. The intellectual force, which many brilliant Southern minds concentrated on politics or lavished in newspaper editorials, would have won enduring literary renown, had it been devoted to making books.

Writings About the Civil War.—The war changed this, like most other things at the South. In the universal struggle for subsistence, there seemed at first no hope for a revival of Southern literature. But, even during the Reconstruction period, personal memoirs, historical writings, and other books appeared, worthy of the men who had maintained the unequal contest from 1861 to 1865. Mr. Davis's "Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government," Alexander Stephen's "War Between the States," Pollard's "Lost Cause," with the personal memoirs

of Joseph E. Johnston, Hood, Taylor and other soldiers, preserve the story of the Civil War and its causes, in books which rank equally with the memoirs of Grant, Sherman and other Federal Generals, as valuable history.

A Few Southern Authors Since 1865.—Shut out from the field of national politics, Southern genius spread its wings for other flights. Paul Hayne, of South Carolina, James Barron Hope and Mrs. Margaret Preston, of Virginia, and Sidney Lanier, of Georgia—perhaps the greatest American poet after Poe—enriched our literature with melodious verse. Cable's powerful but partial Creole stories; Miss Murfree's vivid pictures of the dwellers in the Tennessee mountains; Thomas Nelson Page's pathetic and humorous stories and sketches of life "in Ole Virginny" and at the present day; Joel Chandler Harris's delightful "Uncle Remus," along with the novels of Christian Reid, Frances Courtenay Baylor, M. G. McClelland and Amelié Rives have brought Southern fiction well abreast of Howells, Miss Woolson and leading romance writers at the North. In Mrs. Diana Corbin's memoir of her distinguished father, Matthew F. Maury, and Mrs. Smedes's story of her father's life—"A Memoir of a Southern Planter," biography is as charming and more instructive than romance. The "Memoirs" of Patrick Henry and George Mason, and "Letters and Times of the Tylers" by their respective descendants are valuable contributions to correct history. I might mention many others to show you that in all departments of life and literature Southern men and women are doing honor to their country and their race.

Farewell.—In bidding you farewell, my dear young readers, I hope that you may all learn from these pages to admire and emulate the virtues and abilities of the men and women who have exalted and adorned our country. Each one of you has a responsibility toward the whole nation, and especially to that section to which you belong. If you perform your duties faithfully as boys and girls, and make good use of your opportunities and privileges at home and at school, you will, when you grow to be men and women, show that our country is still, as

she has been since Captain John Smith planted the first colony at Jamestown, the home of a brave, patriotic people who, walking in the fear of God, and maintaining the true principles of free government, will prove, throughout the ages, an honor and a safeguard to the human race.

QUESTIONS.—1. Who became President, and what States were admitted into the Union in 1889? 2. What can you tell of the tariff and the currency? 3. Who became the next President? 4. What great exposition took place in 1893? 5. Tell of the great strikes in 1893 and 1894. 6. Describe the material development of the country since 1850. 7. Describe the wonderful recuperation of the South. 8. Tell of its population and industry. 9. Tell the effects of steam on printing. 10. Tell the effects of electricity upon the manufactures and arts. 11. To which do we owe railroads, printing presses, telegraphs, telephones, etc. 12. What has been the increase of schools and colleges? 13. What stand did the South take in the early literature of the country? 14. Mention the principal authors between 1820 and 1860. 15. The writings about the civil war. 16. Mention a few Southern authors since the war. 17. What counsel is given you in closing this history?

AUTHORITIES.—Schouler's History of the United States, Vol. V.; Von Holt's Constitutional History of the United States, Vol. VI., VII.; Rhode's History of the United States, Vol. II.; Johnston's History and Constitution of the United States; Ridpath's History of the United States; Fiske's History of the United States; Draper's History of the Civil War; Congressional Record; Stephen's History of the United States; Stephen's War Between the States; Woodrow Wilson's Division and Reunion; McPherson's Political History of the Rebellion; S. S. Cox's Three Decades of Constitutional Legislation; Laler's Cyclopedia of Political Science; McPherson's History of Reconstruction; Reports and Correspondence in Government War Records; Jefferson Davis's Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government; Bledsoe's Is Davis a Traitor? Curry's Southern States; E. A. Pollard's Lost Cause; Raymond's Life of Abraham Lincoln; Memoirs of Albert Sidney Johnston, by William Preston Johnston; General Grant's Memoirs; Memoir of Leonidas Polk, by his Son; Dabney's Life of T. J. Jackson; Long's Life of Robert E. Lee; Fitz Lee's Memoir of Robert E. Lee; Allen's Jackson's Valley Campaign; J. E. Johnston's Narrative; Memoir of General Pendleton, by his Daughter; Taylor's Four Years with Lee; Sherman's Memoirs; Taylor's Destruction and Reconstruction; Duke's Morgan and His Men; Hood's Advance and Retreat; Battles and Leaders of the Civil War; Semmes's Service Afloat; Humphrey's Virginia Campaigns; Memoir of Jefferson Davis, by his Widow; Dr. Craven's Prison Life of Jefferson Davis; Memoirs of Charles Sumner; Thurlow Weed's Autobiography; Seward's Autobiography; Bishop Wilmer's Recent Past from a Southern Standpoint; T. N. Page's Old South; Contemporary Periodicals and Newspapers.

SUMMARY FOR REVIEWS AND ESSAYS.

EVENTS PRECEDING THE WAR.—Effects of John Brown's raid, 1859; Davis's resolutions, 1860; election of 1860; Abraham Lincoln 1860; secession a necessity; secession of South Carolina, 1860; Mr. Buchanan views; Crittenden resolutions; different opinions at the North; Southern leaders; Southern Confederacy organized, 1861; Jefferson Davis; peace Congress, 1861; the forts in the South; Fort Sumter garrisoned by the United States; Lincoln's inaugural address; renewed efforts for peaceable relations; plan to reinforce Fort Sumter, 1861; bombardment of Sumter an act of self-defence; why the struggle for Southern independence was necessary; slavery recognized by the Constitution; views of the Southern people; Mr. Lincoln's views; slavery under the Confederacy; war not to preserve slavery.

BEGINNING OF THE WAR FOR STATE RIGHTS.—Seventy-five thousand men called for; other States secede; the contest unequal from the first; Confederate soldiers; seizure of Harper's Ferry and the Gosport navy-yard; first blood shed, 1861; preparation for war; difficulty of equipping the armies; Mr. Lincoln's proclamations; blockade; removal of Confederate capital to Richmond, 1861; greatness of the coming conflict not realized; enterprise at the South; immensity of the struggle.

EVENTS OF 1861 IN VIRGINIA.—Armies against Virginia; first blood shed in Virginia; Big Bethel; Union success in West Virginia; battle of Rich Mountain; General Johnston at Harper's Ferry; forward movement from Washington; battle of First Manassas, 1861; Stonewall Jackson; Kirby Smith's opportune arrival; rout of the Federal army; losses in the battle; astonishment at the result of the battle; different effects of the battle; acts of United States Congress; acts of Confederate Congress; General McClellan in command; Ball's Bluff; restriction of the press; General T. J. Jackson (note).

EVENTS OF 1861 IN THE WEST AND ELSEWHERE.—Civil war in Missouri; Missouri neutral; Kentucky's position; Bishop Polk (note); Columbus and Paducah; East Tennessee; battle of Belmont; Arizona and New Mexico; Port Royal captured by Dupont, 1861; futile effort at the mouth of the Mississippi; threatened trouble with England.

EVENTS OF 1862 IN THE WEST.—Mr. Lincoln orders a general advance; Zollicoffer killed at Mill Spring; Forts Henry and Donelson; capture of Fort Henry; importance of Fort Donelson; gallant fighting; fall of Donelson; results; battle of Pea Ridge or Elkhorn; battle of Shiloh—death

of Albert Sidney Johnston, 1862; end of the battle; fall of Island No. 10; defences of New Orleans; Federal forces in the river; affairs in New Orleans; fall of New Orleans; General B. F. Butler (note); great losses of the Confederates; Confederate conscription; changes of commanders; effort to recover Tennessee and Kentucky; Nathan B. Forrest (note); John H. Morgan (note); Bragg advances into Kentucky; battle of Richmond, Kentucky; capture of Louisville; Grant at Iuka and Corinth; Bragg at Frankfort; battle of Perryville; result of the campaign; battle of Murfreesboro' or Stone River; "Hell's Half-Acre"; victory claimed by both sides; Van Dorn burns Grant's depot, at Holly Springs; Confederate cruisers, 1862.

EVENTS OF 1862 IN VIRGINIA.—Jackson at Bath and Romney; McClellan at Centreville; battle of Kernstown; the armies about Yorktown; fight at Williamsburg; Seven Pines or Fair Oaks; Jackson in the Valley; defeat of Banks; defeat of Fremont and Shields; death of Ashby—result of campaign; preparations for fighting at Richmond, 1862; Jackson summoned to Richmond; Stuart's ride around McClellan; J. E. B. Stuart (note); Seven-Days' fight; McClellan's defeat; Malvern Hill; result of the Seven-Days' fight; McClellan and Lincoln; Halleck and Pope; Cedar Mountain—Pope's army; Jackson captures Manassas Junction; battles of Second Manassas; complete victory; losses of both sides; McClellan superseded by Burnside; on to Richmond by Fredericksburg; fortifying at Fredericksburg; bombardment of Fredericksburg; disparity of forces; battle of Fredericksburg; Marye's Hill; Hooker's reserves defeated; result of the victory.

ON THE COAST AND IN MARYLAND, 1862.—Capture of Roanoke Island and other ports; the ram Virginia; coming of the Monitor; Federal ships in the James; Lee in Maryland; Jackson at Harper's Ferry; battle of Sharpsburg or Antietam; Lee returns to Virginia.

GENERAL VIEW OF THE SITUATION IN 1862.—Devotion of Confederate women; condition of the Confederacy in 1862; West Virginia formed; two governments in Missouri and Kentucky (note); Mr. Lincoln's view of slavery in 1861; change of opinions; prospective emancipation, 1862; object of this proclamation (note); effects of the proclamation; emancipation, January 1, 1863; war prices (note); suffering in the South; exchange of prisoners; war prisons; West Virginia admitted to the Union, 1863.

EVENTS OF 1863 IN VIRGINIA AND PENNSYLVANIA.—Hooker commanding in Virginia; Lee's troops; Hooker moves to Chancellorsville; Lee's move; Jackson's successful attack; Jackson shot; Renewal of the battle; Burning of the house and woods; Sedgwick's advance; Hooker defeated at Chancellorsville; Death of Jackson (note); Religion in the Army of Northern Virginia; Lee moves North; Ewell takes Winchester; Orderly conduct of Lee's army; approach to Gettysburg; battle of Gettysburg; second

day's fight; third day's fight; Pickett's charge; end of the battle; Confederate army returns to Virginia; effects of Gettysburg; campaign of strategy.

EVENTS OF 1863 ON THE COAST AND IN THE WEST.—Attack on Galveston; Sabine Pass; Federal advance on Charleston; Grant against Vicksburg; Joseph E. Johnston to defend Mississippi; Vicksburg besieged; attack from the Federal fleet and batteries; cave life in Vicksburg (note); famine; the end near; Vicksburg surrendered; the Confederacy cut in two; Sherman at Jackson; cavalry raids; Morgan's raid; Morgan's capture and escape (note); Bragg at Chattanooga; Federal Success in East Tennessee; Chattanooga (note); battle of Chickamauga; second day's fight; forces and losses; Bragg after the battle; new Confederate position; General Grant at Chattanooga; reinforcements for Grant's army; Bragg's army weakened; flanking Bragg's position; battle of Lookout Mountain and Missionary Ridge; results of the battle; condition of the armies in 1863.

EVENTS OF 1864 IN THE WEST.—Sherman returns to Vicksburg; Sherman at Meridian; Forrest's victories; capture of Fort Pillow; battle of Mansfield, Louisiana; Banks retreats to New Orleans; the armies in Georgia; continued flanking movements; fighting at New Hope Church; death of General Polk; Sherman's continual advance; Hood put in command; attack and defeat; Atlanta besieged; Atlanta evacuated; Sherman in Atlanta; numbers on both sides; Hood advances into Tennessee; Forrest's successes in Tennessee, Mississippi and Alabama; Sherman plans against Hood; battle of Franklin; battle of Nashville; results of the expedition; Sherman's march to the sea; the "bummers" (note); nearing Savannah; fall of Savannah; wholesale destruction in Georgia (note); Price invades Missouri; Morgan's last raid and death.

EVENTS OF 1864 IN VIRGINIA.—Kilpatrick's raid; Grant made commander-in-chief; Grant's plan; force against Richmond; Lee's movements; battles of the Wilderness; Lee to the rear (note); end of the battle; the race for Spotsylvania; the bloody angle; Grant's losses; move towards Richmond; Stuart killed at Yellow Tavern; Sigel and Butler defeated; second Cold Harbor; losses; Hunter's march up the Valley; attack on Petersburg; Beauregard reinforced; intrenchments; Lee's difficult task; supplies at the North; Mahone's attack; Reams's Station; humiliation and prayer (note); digging a mine; the mine exploded; fight at the Crater; negro soldiers; surrender of Federals—losses; Sheridan against Early; victory and defeat at Cedar Creek; Sheridan's devastation in the Valley; Grant on the James.

EVENTS OF 1864 IN OTHER PLACES.—Victory at Olustee, 1864; affairs at sea; the *Alabama* and the *Kearsarge*; the *Alabama* sunk; destruction of the *Florida*; Early sent into Maryland; battle of Monocacy Bridge; Early before Washington; burning of Chambersburg (note); Mr. Lincoln re-elected, 1864; peace negotiations; condition of the Confederacy.

EVENTS OF 1865 IN NORTH AND SOUTH CAROLINA.—Attacks on Fort Fisher;

Terry attacks Fort Fisher; Fort Fisher taken; Sherman's march from the sea; destruction in South Carolina; fall of Charleston; burning of Columbia; Sherman's charge against Hampton (note); Peace Conference; destitution in the South (note).

EVENTS OF 1865 IN VIRGINIA.—Condition of Petersburg; Lee made commander-in-chief; Lee plans to leave Petersburg; the Federal forces ordered to concentrate in Virginia; assault on Fort Steadman; the forces compared; Sheridan's victory at Five Forks; attack on Petersburg; Petersburg and Richmond evacuated; distress and riot in Richmond; Mr. Lincoln visits Petersburg and Richmond; exultation at the North; Lee's retreat; delay at Amelia Courthouse; Grant in pursuit; Ewell attacked at Sailor's Creek; at Farmville; at Appomattox, April 8, 1865; first steps towards surrender; meeting of Grant and Lee, April 9, 1865; the terms of surrender; departure of Lee and Grant; the soldiers after the surrender (note); end of the war—numbers engaged; Mr. Lincoln's plan to receive States back into the Union; assassination of President Lincoln; effect of Mr. Lincoln's murder; fate of the South; funeral honors to Mr. Lincoln; Mr. Davis after the surrender; his capture; imprisonment of Mr. Davis; suffered for the whole South; Mr. Davis's later life; his death and interment (note).

RECONSTRUCTION IN THE SOUTH, 1865-1876.—Condition of the country; courage of the Southerners under defeat; General Lee becomes a college president; submission to Federal laws; Andrew Johnson's position; Johnson's amnesty proclamation; Thirteenth Amendment; laws to regulate labor; appointment of a Committee on Reconstruction; Congress and the President disagree; Freedmen's Bureau; Mr. Johnson's vetoes; Fourteenth Amendment; reception of the Fourteenth Amendment; Strife between the President and Congress; Reconstruction Committee, 1866; military districts in the South; bills passed, 1867; the iron-clad oath; "carpet-baggers" and "scalawags" (note); impeachment of the President in 1868; his acquittal; re-admission of States, 1868; General Grant's election, 1868; Fifteenth Amendment; oppression under the reconstructed governments; offices filled by "carpet-baggers" and negroes; evils increased by Freedmen's Bureau (note); Loyal Leagues; patient submission impossible; secret societies; "Ku-Klux Klan"; oppression and tyranny; affairs in Louisiana (note); Force Bill; effects of reconstruction rule.

PRINCIPAL EVENTS IN THE COUNTRY SINCE THE WAR.—Atlantic telegraph, 1866; purchase of Alaska, 1867; execution of Maximilian, 1867; first Pacific railroad, 1869; first Chinese Embassy, 1868 (note); price of gold, 1869; "Black Friday" in Wall street, 1869; internal revenue; death of General Robert E. Lee, 1870; settlement of the *Alabama* claims; great fires of 1871 and 1872; Credit Mobilier; financial crash of 1873; re-election of General Grant, 1872; civil service reform, 1871; Modoc War, 1873; Sioux War, 1876; Centennial Exposition, 1876; Colorado the Centennial State; Tilden

and Hayes, 1876; two governments in Louisiana and South Carolina; electoral votes disputed; electoral commission; election of Hayes; the South after Hayes's election; strife between labor and capital; railroad strikes in 1877; specie payments resumed, 1879; Garfield becomes President; shot by Guiteau in 1881; Centennial celebration at Yorktown, 1881; unfortunate Arctic expeditions; Grover Cleveland President, 1885-1889; labor troubles; Anarchists, 1886; earthquake, 1886; Benjamin Harrison President, 1889-1893; the tariff and the currency; second election of Cleveland, 1892; Columbian Exposition, 1893; strike in Chicago; railroads stopped.

GENERAL VIEW OF THE COUNTRY.—Progress since 1850; material development; wonderful recuperation of the South; population and industry; railroads; steam; electricity; increase of schools and colleges; the South in early literature; American authors from 1820-1860; writings about the Civil War; a few Southern authors since 1865; farewell.

THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

IN CONGRESS, JULY 4, 1776.

The Unanimous Declaration of the Thirteen United States of America.

WHEN, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident; that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed. That, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or to abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate, that governments long established should not be changed for light and transient causes; and, accordingly, all experience hath shown that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies, and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present King of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having in direct object the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these States. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world:

He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operations till his assent should be obtained; and when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the legislature—a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures,

He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected, whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large for their exercise; the State remaining, in the meantime, exposed to all the dangers of invasion from without and convulsions within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these States; for that purpose obstructing the laws for naturalization of foreigners; refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

He has obstructed the administration of justice by refusing his assent to laws for establishing the judiciary powers.

He has made judges dependent on his will alone for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers to harass our people and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us, in times of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our legislatures.

He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.

He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our Constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation :

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us ;

For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these States ;

For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world ;

For imposing taxes on us without our consent ;

For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefits of trial by jury ;

For transporting us beyond seas to be tried for pretended offences ;

For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies ;

For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering, fundamentally, the forms of our governments ;

For suspending our own legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated government here by declaring us out of his protection, and waging war against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is at this time transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries to complete the works of death, desolation and tyranny, already begun with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy, scarcely paralleled in most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.

He has excited domestic insurrections amongst us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

In every stage of these oppressions we have petitioned for redress in the most humble terms; our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in attentions to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them, by the ties of our common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and of consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity which denounces our separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind—enemies in war; in peace, friends.

We, therefore, the representatives of the UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, in General Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name and by authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare, That these united colonies are, and of right ought to be, *Free and Independent States*; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the State of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved; and that, as *Free and Independent States*, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and to do all other acts and things which *Independent States* may of right do. And for the support of this Declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of DIVINE PROVIDENCE, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes and our sacred honor.

JOHN HANCOCK.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.—Josiah Bartlett, William Whipple, Matthew Thornton.

MASSACHUSETTS BAY.—Samuel Adams, John Adams, Robert Treat Paine, Elbridge Gerry.

RHODE ISLAND, ETC.—Stephen Hopkins, William Ellery.

CONNECTICUT.—Roger Sherman, Samuel Huntington, William Williams, Oliver Wolcott.

NEW YORK.—William Floyd, Philip Livingston, Francis Lewis, Lewis Morris.

NEW JERSEY.—Richard Stockton, John Witherspoon, Francis Hopkinson, John Hart, Abraham Clark.

PENNSYLVANIA.—Robert Morris, Benjamin Rush, Benjamin Franklin, John Morton, George Clymer, James Smith, George Taylor, James Wilson, George Ross.

DELAWARE.—Cæsar Rodney, George Read, Thomas M'Kean.

MARYLAND.—Samuel Chase, William Paca, Thomas Stone, Charles Carroll, of Carrollton.

VIRGINIA.—George Wythe, Richard Henry Lee, Thomas Jefferson, Benjamin Harrison, Thomas Nelson, Jr., Francis Lightfoot Lee, Carter Braxton.

NORTH CAROLINA.—William Hooper, Joseph Hewes, John Penn.

SOUTH CAROLINA.—Edward Rutledge, Thomas Heyward, Jr., Thomas Lynch, Jr., Arthur Middleton.

GEORGIA.—Button Gwinnett, Lyman Hall, George Walton.

CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

WE, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.

ARTICLE I. SECTION 1.—All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States; which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

SECTION 2.—1. The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several States; and the electors in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State legislature.

2. No person shall be a Representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

3. Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other persons. The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of Representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each State shall have at least one Representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three; Massachusetts, eight; Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, one; Connecticut, five; New York, six; New Jersey, four; Pennsylvania, eight; Delaware, one; Maryland, six; Virginia, ten; North Carolina, five; South Carolina, five; and Georgia, three.

4. When vacancies happen in the representation from any State, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

5. The House of Representatives shall choose their Speaker and other officers, and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

SECTION 3.—1. The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each State, chosen by the legislature thereof, for six years; and each Senator shall have one vote.

2. Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided as equally as may be, into three classes. The seats of the Senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year, of the second class at the expiration of the fourth year, and of the third class at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one-third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen, by resignation or otherwise, during the recess of the legislature of any State, the Execu-

tive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

3. No person shall be a Senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

4. The Vice-President of the United States shall be President of the Senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

5. The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a president *pro tempore*, in the absence of the Vice-President, or when he shall exercise the office of President of the United States.

6. The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the Chief Justice shall preside; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

7. Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust, or profit, under the United States; but the party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment, and punishment, according to law.

SECTION 4.—1. The times, places, and manner of holding elections for Senators and Representatives shall be prescribed in each State by the legislature thereof; but the Congress may, at any time, by law, make or alter such regulation, except as to the places of choosing Senators.

2. The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

SECTION 5.—1. Each House shall be the judge of the elections, returns, and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members in such manner and under such penalties as each House may provide.

2. Each House may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member.

3. Each House shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may in their judgment require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the members of either House, on any question, shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

4. Neither House, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two Houses shall be sitting.

SECTION 6.—1. The Senators and Representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the Treasury of the United States. They shall, in all cases except treason, felony, and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective Houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either House, they shall not be questioned in any other place.

2. No Senator or Representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have

been increased, during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States shall be a member of either House during his continuance in office.

SECTION 7.—1. All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments, as on other bills.

2. Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a law, be presented to the President of the United States; if he approve he shall sign it, but if not he shall return it with his objections to that House in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If, after such reconsideration, two-thirds of that House shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other House, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two-thirds of that House, it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both Houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each House respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the President within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress, by their adjournment, prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

3. Every order, resolution, or vote, to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment) shall be presented to the President of the United States, and before the same shall take effect shall be approved by him, or, being disapproved by him, shall be re-passed by two-thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

SECTION. 8.—The Congress shall have power—

1. To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises, to pay the debts and provide for the common defence and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts, and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States;

2. To borrow money on the credit of the United States;

3. To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes;

4. To establish a uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcy throughout the United States;

5. To coin money, regulate the value thereof and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures;

6. To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States;

7. To establish post-offices and post-roads;

8. To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing for limited times to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries;

9. To constitute tribunals inferior to the Supreme Court;

10. To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offences against the law of nations;

11. To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water;

12. To raise and support armies; but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years;

13. To provide and maintain a navy;

14. To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces;

15. To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrection, and repel invasions;

16. To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively the appointment of the officers and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress;

17. To exercise exclusive legislation in all cases whatsoever over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular States and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of the government of the United States, and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the legislature of the State in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dock-yards, and other needful buildings; and,

18. To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

SECTION 9.—1. The migration or importation of such persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

2. The privilege of the writ of *habeas corpus* shall not be suspended, unless when in cases of rebellion or invasion the public safety may require it.

3. No bill of attainder or *ex post facto* law shall be passed.

4. No capitation or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration hereinbefore directed to be taken.

5. No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any State. No preference shall be given by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one State over those of another; nor shall vessels bound to or from one State be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

6. No money shall be drawn from the treasury but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

7. No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States; and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them, shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title, of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.

SECTION 10.—1. No state shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, *ex post facto* law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, or grant any title of nobility.

2. No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws; and the net produce of all duties and imposts laid by any State on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the Treasury of the United States; and all such laws shall be subject to the

revision and control of the Congress. No State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops or ships of war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another State or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

ARTICLE II. SECTION 1.—1. The executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the Vice-President, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows:

2. Each State shall appoint, in such manner as the legislature thereof may direct, a number of Electors equal to the whole number of Senators and Representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress; but no Senator or Representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an Elector.

Clause 3 has been superseded by the 12th Article of Amendments.

4. The Congress may determine the time of choosing the Electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

5. No person except a natural-born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of President, neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

6. In case of the removal of the President from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of said office, the same shall devolve on the Vice-President; and the Congress may by law provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the President and Vice-President, declaring what officer shall then act as President, and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed or a President shall be elected.

7. The President shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation, which shall be neither increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

8. Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation:

"I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States."

SECTION 2.—1. The President shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several States when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices, and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

2. He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the Senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint Embassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls, Judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law; but the Congress may by law vest the appointment of such inferior officers as they think proper, in the President alone, in the Courts of law, or in the heads of Departments.

3. The President shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.

SECTION 3.—He shall, from time to time, give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both Houses, or either of them, and in case of disagreement between them with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper, he shall receive Ambassadors and other public Ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

SECTION 4.—The President, Vice-President, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, or conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

ARTICLE III.—SECTION 1. The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one Supreme Court, and in such inferior Courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The Judges, both of the Supreme and inferior Courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

SECTION 2.—1. The judicial power shall extend to all cases in law and equity arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority; to all cases affecting Ambassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction; to controversies to which the United States shall be a party; to controversies between two or more States; between a State and citizens of another State; between citizens of different States; between citizens of the same State claiming lands under grants of different States; and between a State, or citizen thereof, and foreign states, citizens, or subjects.

2. In all cases affecting Ambassadors, other public Ministers, and Consuls, and those in which a State shall be a party, the Supreme Court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned, the Supreme Court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions and under such regulations as the Congress shall make.

3. The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury; and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any State, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

SECTION 3.—1. Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

2. The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason, but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted.

ARTICLE IV.—SECTION 1.—Full faith and credit shall be given in each State to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other State. And the Congress may, by general laws, prescribe the manner in which such acts, records, and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

SECTION 2.—1. The citizens of each State shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens of the several States.

2. A person charged in any State with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another State, shall, on demand of the executive authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the State having jurisdiction of the crime.

3. No person held to service or labor in one State, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

SECTION 3.—1. New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other State; nor any State be formed by the junction of two or more States, or parts of States, without the consent of the legislatures of the States concerned as well as of the Congress.

2. The Congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States or of any particular State.

SECTION 4.—The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion; and on application of the legislature, or of the Executive (when the legislature cannot be convened) against domestic violence.

ARTICLE V.—The Congress, whenever two-thirds of both Houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose Amendments to this Constitution, or, on the application of the legislatures of two-thirds of the several States, shall call a convention for proposing Amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid to all intents and purposes as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several States, or by conventions in three-fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress; provided that no Amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article; and that no State, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

ARTICLE VI.—1. All debts contracted and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution as under the Confederation.

2. This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof, and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every State shall be bound thereby, anything in the Constitution or laws of any State to the contrary notwithstanding.

3. The Senators and Representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several State legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support this Constitution; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

ARTICLE VII.—The ratification of the Conventions of nine States shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the same.

AMENDMENTS TO THE CONSTITUTION.

ARTICLE I.—Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.

ARTICLE II.—A well-regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed.

ARTICLE III.—No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house without the consent of the owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

ARTICLE IV.—The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

ARTICLE V.—No person shall be held to answer for a capital or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia when in actual service in time of war or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself; nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use without just compensation.

ARTICLE VI.—In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the assistance of counsel for his defence.

ARTICLE VII.—In suits at common law where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any Court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.

ARTICLE VIII.—Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

ARTICLE IX.—The enumeration in the Constitution of certain rights shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

ARTICLE X.—The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

ARTICLE XI.—The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign state.

ARTICLE XII.—The Electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for President and Vice-President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves; they shall name in

their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice-President, and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate. The President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted; the person having the greatest number of votes for President shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers, not exceeding three, on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a number of members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President, whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President. The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed; and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list the Senate shall choose the Vice-President; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of Senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.

ARTICLE XIII.—1. Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime, whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

2. Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

ARTICLE XIV.—1. All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law, nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

2. Representatives shall be apportioned among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State, excluding Indians not taxed. But when the right to vote at any election for the choice of Electors for President and Vice-President of the United States, Representatives in Congress, the executive and judicial officers of a State, or the members of the legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such State, being twenty-one years of age, and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such State.

3. No person shall be a Senator or Representative in Congress, or Elector

of President or Vice-President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who, having previously taken an oath, as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State legislature, or as executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof. But Congress may, by a vote of two-thirds of each House, remove such disability.

4. The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pensions and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States nor any State shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; but all such debts, obligations, and claims shall be held illegal and void.

5. The Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.

ARTICLE XV.—1. The right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States, or by any State, on account of race, color, or previous condition or servitude.

2. The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS AND MAPS.

A.

Alabama, sinking of the, 338.
 Adams, John, 157.
 Adams, John Quincy, 183.
 "A Fair Mark—Shoot!" 46.
 Alamo, The, 193.
 Anderson, J. P., Maj.-Gen. C. S. A., 311.
 Atlanta and vicinity (map), 320.
 Attacked by Indians, 37.

B.

Battle of King's Mountain, 142.
 Battle of Murfreesboro', 281.
 Battle of New Orleans, 177.
 Beauregard, P. G. T., Lieut.-Gen. C. S. A., 228.
 Bee, Barnard E., Brig.-Gen. C. S. A., 241.
 Bienville, 81.
 Battle-fields in the Carolinas, 140.
 Battle of Big Bethel, 238.
 Boone, Daniel, 99.
 Breckinridge, John C., Vice-President with Buchanan, Secretary of War in Confederate Cabinet, Maj.-General C. S. A., 306.
 Brooke, John Mercer, Com. C. S. N., 257.
 Buchanan, Franklin, Admiral C. S. N., 258.
 Bunker Hill (map), 109.
 Burgoyne's route, 123.
 Burning of Holly Springs, 282.
 Burnside, A. E., Maj.-Gen. U. S. A., 272.
 Butler, M. C., Maj.-Gen. C. S. A., 335.

C.

Calhoun, John Caldwell, 187.
 Capitol (west front), 375.
 Capture of Fort Pillow, 312.

Capture of Mr. Davis, 355.
 Charleston, Siege of (map), 118.
 Cheatham, B. F., Maj.-Gen. C. S. A., 325.
 Clarke, George Rogers, 131.
 Clarke's March to Vincennes, 133.
 Capt. Molly, 128.
 Camp of Instruction, 224.
 Clay, Henry, 180.
 Cleburne, P. R., Maj.-Gen. C. S. A., 325.
 Cleveland, Grover, 380.
 Cobb, Howell, Maj.-Gen. C. S. A., 322.
 Columbia, Destruction of, 343.
 Columbus, 10.
 Coming of Lord Delaware, 28.
 Confederate Battle Flag, 240.
 Confederate Flag, 237.
 Confederate States (map), between pp. 234 and 235.
 Cooper, Samuel, Adj.-Gen. C. S. A., 332.
Cumberland, Sinking of, 257.

D.

Davis, Jefferson, 224.
 Decatur, Com. Stephen, 171.
 Destruction of Columbia, 343.
 Discovery of Gold, 199.
 Drake, Sir Francis, 21.

E.

Early, Jubal A., Lieut.-Gen. C. S. A., 290.
 Early Settlements in New England (map), 39.
 Eliot, John, 50.
 Evans, N. G., Brig.-Gen. C. S. A., 316.
 Ewell, Richard S., Lieut.-Gen. C. S. A., 268.

Exile of the Acadians, 85.
Explosion at the Crater, 330.

F.

Forrest, Nathan B., Lieut.-Gen. C. S. A., 278.
Fort Hill, Home of Calhoun, 205.
Fort Pillow, Capture of, 312.
Franklin, Benjamin, 97.
Fair-Mark, 46.

G.

Garfield, James A., 379.
Garnett, R. S., Brig.-Gen. C. S. A., 239.
Gettysburg (map), 294.
Gordon, J. B., Lieut.-Gen. C. S. A., 345.
Grant, U. S., Commander-in-chief U. S. A., 314.

H.

Half-Moon, on the Hudson, 28.
Halleck, H. W., Maj.-Gen. U. S. A., 247.
Hamilton, Alexander, 163.
Hampton, Wade, Lieut.-Gen. C. S. A., 342.
Hancock, W. S., Maj.-Gen. U. S. A., 297.
Hardee, W. J., Lieut.-Gen. C. S. A., 335.
Harrison, Benjamin, 382.
Harrison, Gen. Wm. Henry, 175.
Harvard College, 1895, 62.
Hayne, Robert Young, 186.
Henry, Patrick, 93.
Hermitage, Home of Andrew Jackson, 188.
Hidden Foe, The, 40.
Hill, Ambrose P., Lieut.-Gen. C. S. A., 271.
Hooker, Joseph, Maj.-Gen. U. S. A., 274.
Houston, Gen. Samuel, 194.

I

Indian Attack, 37.
Indian Mound in West Virginia, 19.
Indian Tribes (map), between pp. 16 and 17.
Indian Village, 17.

J.

Jackson, Gen. Andrew, 176.
Jackson Monument, 292.
Jackson, T. J., Lieut.-Gen. C. S. A., with autograph, 245.
Jefferson, Thomas, 117.
Johnston, Albert Sidney, Gen. C. S. A., 254.
Johnston, Joseph E., Gen. C. S. A., 239.

K.

Kershaw, J. B., Maj.-Gen. C. S. A., 333.

L.

Lafayette, 147.
Lake George (map), 87.
Landing of Columbus, 12.
Leaving Home, 233.
Lee, Fitzhugh, Maj.-Gen. C. S. A., 350.
Lee, Henry, 137.
Lee Leaving Appomattox, 352.
Lee, Richard Henry, 116.
Lee, Robert E., Commander-in-chief C. S. A., with autograph, 261.
Lee, Stephen D., Lieut.-Gen. C. S. A., 311.
Lincoln, Abraham, 220.
Locke, John, 53.

M.

McClellan, George B., Maj.-Gen. U. S. A., 266.
Manassas, Turn of the Tide, 243.
Mecklenburg Declaration, 115.
Madison, James, 150.
Marion, Francis, 137.
Marion's Dinner to the British Officer, 143.
Marshall, John, 167.
Maury, Matthew Fontaine, 208.
Meade, G. G., Maj.-Gen. U. S. A., 295.
Mine Exploded at Petersburg, 330.
Monroe, James, 179.
Montcalm, 89.
Monticello, the Home of Jefferson, 148.
Morgan, Daniel, 111.

N.

New Orleans, Battle of, 177.

O.

Oglethorpe, James Edward, 77.
 Old Church Tower at Jamestown, 60.
 Old South Church, 57.
 Osceola, 188.

P.

Pendleton, Wm. N., Brig.-Gen., C. S. A., 270.
 Penn, William, 54.
 Pegram, W. J., 346.
 Penn's Treaty, 55.
 Petersburg Crater, 330.
 Petersburg to Appomattox (map) 349.
 Philadelphia and Vicinity (map), 55.
 Pickett, G. E., Maj.-Gen. C. S. A., 296.
 Pike, Albert, Brig.-Gen. C. S. A., 254.
 Pittsburg and Vicinity (map), 83.
 Polk, James Knox, 195.
 Polk, Leonidas, Lieut.-Gen. C. S. A., 248.
 Price, Sterling, Maj.-Gen. C. S. A., 279.

Q.

Quebec, Siege of, (map), 88.
 Queen Elizabeth, 21.

R.

Raleigh, Sir Walter, 22.
 Reception by President and Mrs. Davis, 235.
 Return of the Mayflower, 32.
 Rosecrans, W. S., Maj.-Gen. U. S. A., 304.
 Ruins of Ticonderoga, 106.
 Rutledge, Governor, 119.

S.

Scott, Gen. Winfield, 197.
 Semmes, Raphael, Rear-Admiral C. S. N., 334.
 Settlement of Savannah in 1733, 76.
 Seven Days' Battles (map), 265.
 Smith Exploring the Chesapeake, 24.
 Sinking of the *Cumberland*, 257.
 Smith, E. Kirby, Gen. C. S. A., 279.
 Smith, Capt. John, 23.

Spotswood crossing the Blue Ridge, 73.

Stephens, Alexander H., 223.
 St. John's Church, 105.
 Stuart, J. E. B., Lieut.-Gen. C. S. A., 264.
 Siege of Yorktown, 149.

T.

Taylor, Richard, Lieut.-Gen. C. S. A., 313.
 Taylor, Gen. Zachary, 202.
 Tecumseh, 173.
 Thirteen Original States (map), 101
 Ticonderoga, Ruins of, 106.
 Trenton (map), 121.
 Tyler, John, 192.

U.

United States (map), between pp. 200 and 201.
 United States Flag, 247.

V.

Van Buren, Martin, 190.
Virginia attacking the Federal Fleet, The, 257.

W.

Washington, George (frontispiece).
 Washington's Birthplace, 108.
 Washington's Route (map), 83.
 Washington taking command of the Army, 107.
 Webster, Daniel, 186.
 Wesley, John, 77.
 Wharton, J. A., Maj.-Gen. C. S. A., 280.
 Wheeler, Joseph, Lieut.-Gen. C. S. A., 341.
 Whitfield, George, 78.
 William and Mary College founded 1693, 74.
 Wolfe, Gen. James, 88.
 Wreck on the Bermudas, 25.

Y.

Yorktown, vicinity of (map), 149.

Z.

Zollicoffer, F. K., Brig.-Gen. C. S. A., 251.

INDEX.

- Abberton's Resolutions, 190.
 Abercrombie, General, 87.
 Abolitionists, Petitions of, 163, 187.
 Acadians, Exile of, 85.
 Adams, John, President, 117, 167, 184.
 Adams, John Quincy, President, 183, 187.
 Alabama becomes a State, 180, re-admitted, 373.
 Alabama, The, 282, 337; claims, 373.
 Alaska, purchase of, 371.
 Alien and Sedition Laws, 167.
 Allen, Ethan, 106.
 Algonquins, 19.
 America, discovery of, 10, 12; South, 13; North, 13; name of 13.
 American Revolution, Cause of, 92.
 American System, 185.
 Amelia Courthouse, 349.
 Amendment XIII., 360; XIV., 362; XV., 366.
 André, Execution of, 138.
 Andros, 57.
 Annapolis Convention, 157.
 Apaches, 16.
 Appomattox, Lee at, 350; meeting of Grant and Lee, 351; surrender, 351.
 Arizona, 18.
 Arkansas becomes a State, 189; re-admitted, 366.
 Arnold, Benedict, 111, 112, 136, 138, 139.
 Army of Occupation, 195.
 Armies, three in Mexico, 196.
 Armies, 1864, size of, 323.
 Ashby, General, death of, 263.
 Assassination of President Lincoln, 354.
 Atlanta, siege of, 322, 323.
 Atlantic Telegraph, 371.
 Athabascans, 16.
 Aztecs, 18.
 Bacon, Nathaniel, rebellion, 45-46-47; defeats Indians at Bloody Run, 48.
 Bacon, Nathaniel, death of, 48.
 Bahamas, discovery of, 12.
 Balboa's, discovery, 14.
 Ball's Bluff, 244.
 Banks, General, 262, 263, 268, 312, 316.
 Baltimore, Lord, 30, 49.
 Battles of 1813, 174, 175.
 Beauregard, General, 228, 240, 254, 277, 288, 327.
 Belmont, battle of, 249.
 Bennington, battle of, 124.
 Berkeley, Sir Wm., 36, 38, 43, 45, 46, 47, 48.
 Beverley, Robert, fate of, 58.
 Bienville, 82.
 Biloxi, settlement at, 56.
 Big Bethel, 239.
 Bill of Rights, 117.
 Black Friday, 372.
 Black Hawk War, 188.
 Blackstocks, Tarleton defeated at, 142.
 Blockade, 235.
 Bloody Angle, The, 316.
 Boone, Daniel, 99.
 Booth, John Wilkes, 354, 355.
 Boston, Tea Party, 96; attack on, 112.
 Bouquet's victory, 90.
 Braddock's defeat, 85, 86.
 Bragg, General, 277, 278, 280, 304, 307.
 Brandywine, battle of, 123.
 Breed's Hill, 109.
 Breckinridge, J. C., 220, 242, 318.
 Brooke, John Mercer, 257.
 Brown, John, in Kansas, 207.
 Brown John, raid, 212, 213, 214.
 Buchanan, James, 209.
 Buckner, General, 248, 253.
 Buell, General, 253, 279, 280.
 Buena Vista, battle of, 197.
 Bummers, 334.
 Burnside, General, 271, 272, 305, 315.
 Burgoyne, invasion of New York, 123, 125.

- Burr Aaron, 170, 171.
 Bunker Hill, battle of, 109, 111.
 Butler, General B. F., 238, 276, 340.
 Cabot, John and Sebastian, 13.
 Cabral, 14.
 Calhoun, John C., 186, 203, 204.
 California, 196, 199, 203.
 Calvert, 30-31.
 Camden, battle of, 139.
 Campaign of strategy, 298.
 Canonchet, 51.
 Carolinas, 13, 52.
 Carpet-baggers and scalawags, 364.
 Cartier, Jacques, 14.
 Cavaliers, education among, 60.
 Catastrophe on *Princeton*, 192.
 Cedar Creek, battle of, 333.
 Cedar Mountain, battle of, 268.
 Centennial Exposition, 376.
 Cerro Gordo, Pass of, 198.
 Chambersburg, burning of, 332.
 Champlain, 64.
 Chancellorsville, battle of, 289-292.
 Charleston, 118, 119, 136, 288-342.
 Chapultepec, 198.
 Charter Oak, 57-58.
 Cherokees, 19, 129, 130, 183.
 Chicago, strike in, 373-382; fire, 373.
 Chickamauga, battle of, 305, 306.
 Chinese Embassy, 372.
 Chippewa, battle of, 176.
 Churches, advance of, 169.
 Cincinnati, Society of, 151.
 Civil Service Reform, 374.
 Clarke, George Rogers, 104, 131-133.
 Clay, Henry, 183, 186, 205.
 Cleveland, Grover, President, 380, 382.
 Clinton, Sir Henry, 125, 137.
 Coal, anthracite, first used, 168.
 Cold Harbor, battle of, 318.
 Colonies, condition of, under William and Mary, 64, 59-64, 97.
 Colonial Wars, 83, 89.
 Colorado admitted, 376.
 Columbia, burning of, 342.
 Columbian Exposition, 382.
 Columbus, Christopher, 10-11-12-13.
 Columbus, Ky., 248, 253.
 Committees of Correspondence, 96.
 Condition of armies, 1863, 309.
 Condition of the country in 1865, 358.
 Confederation of 1774, 156.
 Connecticut, 35-50.
 Confederacy, Southern, conscription, 277; Acts of Congress, 244; cruisers, 282; condition of, 339.
 Confederate soldiers, 232-233; losses, 277.
 Congress, 1st Continental 101-107. 1st Federal, 162.
 Constitution, signed and ratified, 160.
 Constitutional Government, 161; rights, 202.
 Corinth, battle of, 279.
 Cornwallis, 122, 144, 145, 147, 150.
 Courage of the Southerners in defeat, 358.
 Cowpens, battle of, 143.
 Credit Mobilier, 373.
 Culpeper, Governor of Virginia, 48.
 Dahlgren, Colonel Ulric, 313.
 Dale, Sir Thomas, 25.
 Dare, Virginia, 21.
 Davis, Jefferson, 188, 197, 224; after the surrender, 355, 356; imprisonment of, 357.
 Davis's Resolutions, 219.
 Decatur, Stephen, 170, 172.
 De Grasse, Comte, 150.
 De Kalb, Baron, 122, 139.
 Delaware, Lord, coming of, 25, 29; settlement of 29; a separate colony, 56.
 Demarcation, Line of, 14.
 Departure of Lee and Grant from Appomattox, 352.
 De Soto, 15.
 D'Estaing, Count 129, 135.
 Destruction in Georgia, 334; in South Carolina, 335.
 Devotion of Confederate women, 274.
 D'Iberville, 67.
 Difficulty of equipping armies, 234-236.
 Discovery, 9-10.
 Disparity between North and South, 272.
 Donelson, Fort, capture of, 251-253.
 Dorr's Rebellion, 192.
 Douglas, Stephen A., 207-220.
 Drake, Sir Francis; voyage around the world, 21.
 Dred Scott case, 211.
 Duel of Hamilton and Burr, 171.

- Dunmore, Lord, Governor of Virginia, 101; war against Indians, 103; removes powder, 105; deposed, 113; declares war on Virginia, 114.
 Dupont, Admiral 249, 288.
 Dutch settlements, 29.
 Early, General, 290, 291; moves into Maryland, 331; before Washington, 332.
 Earthquake in Charleston, 381.
 Electoral Commission, 377.
 Electricity, 384.
 Eliot, John, 50.
 Embargo, 165, 172.
 Endicott, Governor, 34.
 End of war, numbers engaged, 353.
 Enterprise of the South, 236.
 Enthusiasm in the South, 236.
 Eric the Red, 10.
 Eries, 19.
 Eutaw Springs, battle of, 146.
 Ewell, General, 263, 269, 293, 295, 349.
 Farewell Words, 386.
 Farragut, Admiral, 276.
 Federal Convention, 158, 159.
 Federal forces to surround Lee, 345.
 Ferguson, Colonel, 141.
 Fillmore, Millard, 202.
 Financial crash, 189, 374.
 Five Forks, battle of, 346.
 Five Nations, 19, 49.
 Fishing Creek, 140.
 Florida, 14, 180, 194.
 Florida, The, 282, 338.
 Floyd, General, 252, 253.
 Force Bill, 187, 369.
 Forrest, General, 278, 311, 324.
 Fort Donelson, 251, 253.
 Fort Fisher, 340.
 Fort Henry, 251, 252.
 Fort Pillow, 312.
 Fort Steadman, 345.
 Franklin, battle of, 325; Benjamin, 75, 79, 82, 97.
 Fredericksburg, battle of, 272, 274.
 Freedmen's Bureau, 361.
 Fremont, General, 196, 263.
 French Settlements, 20, 64, 67, 82.
 Frobisher, 21.
 Fugitive slave law, 206.
 Gadsden, Christopher, 116.
 Gage, General, 105.
 Galveston, capture of, 288.
 Garfield, President, 379.
 Garrison, William Lloyd, 201.
 Gates, General, 124, 129, 130, 142.
 Geiger, Emily, 145.
 Genet, Citizen, 164.
 George I., 72; II., 74; III., 93.
 Georgia, settlement of, 75, 78.
 Germantown, battle of, 123.
 Gettysburg, battle of, 294-297.
 Gilbert, Sir Humphrey, 21.
 Gold, discovery of, 199; price of, 372; resumption of specie payment, 379.
 Goliad, massacre of, 193.
 Gordon, General, 316, 345.
 Gosnold, Bartholomew, voyage to New England, 22.
 Gosport Navy-yard, 233.
 Grand Model, 52.
 Grant, General U. S., 240, 252, 278, 282, 299, 307, 313, 317, 318-349, 366, 374.
 Great Bridge, battle of, 114.
 Greene, General Nathaniel, 142, 146.
 Guilford, C. H., 145.
 Halleck, General, 247, 253, 268.
 Hamilton, Alexander, 163.
 Hampton Roads, battle in, 257.
 Hancock, John, 107.
 Hancock, General, 379.
 Hardee, General, 321, 335.
 Harper's Ferry, 255, 233, 270.
 Harrison, Gen. Wm. Henry, 173, 191.
 Harrison, Benjamin, President, 381.
 Hartford Convention, 178.
 Harvard College, founded, 62.
 Hawkins, Sir John, 26.
 Hayne, Robert Y., 186.
 Haynes, President, 377, 378.
 Hell's Half-Acre, 280.
 Helper's Manifesto, 212.
 Henry, Fort, 251, 252.
 Henry, Patrick; first Governor of Virginia, 93, 94, 105, 117.
 Henry VII., 13.
 Hill, Gen. A. P., 266, 271, 290, 293, 295, 346.
 Hill, General D. H., 266.
 Holly Springs, burning of, 282.
 Hood, General, 296, 321, 324, 325.
 Hooker, General, 272, 274, 289, 292, 307, 308.

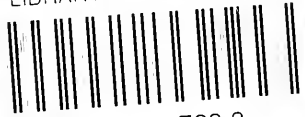
- Horseshoe Bend, battle of, 176.
 Houston, Gen. Sam., 193, 194.
 Howe, Gen., 119, 122.
 Hudson, Henry, 28.
 Huguenots, 20-53.
 Hunter, General, 318, 319.
 Hutchinson, Anne, 34, 35.
 Illinois, a county of Virginia, 134, 180.
 Immigration, in the North, 204; in the South, 204.
 Indiana becomes a State, 178.
 Indians, 13, 16, 17, 18, 19, 29, 37, 40, 41, 44, 54, 70, 71, 76, 102.
 Internal Revenue, 372.
 Iowa becomes a State, 199.
 "Irrepressible Conflict," 204.
 "Ironclad oath," 364.
 Island No. 10, 255.
 Iuka, 279.
 Jackson, Andrew, General, 176, 179, 180, 185, 187.
 Jackson, General T. J., "Stone-wall," 241, 244, 262, 263, 264, 269, 270, 292, 290.
 James I., 22.
 James River, 23.
 Jamestown, settlement of, 22.
 Jasper, Sergeant, 118.
 Jay, John, first Chief Justice, 162; treaty, 165.
 Jefferson, Thomas, 117, 170, 184.
 Johnson, Andrew, 284, 359; 360, 131, 362, 365, 366.
 Johnston, General Albert Sidney, 210, 233, 251, 252, 253, 254.
 Johnston, General Joseph E., 233, 239, 250, 260, 300, 302.
 Jones, John Paul, 151, 152.
 Kanawha, Great, Battle of, 103.
 "Kansas Bibles," 206, 207.
Kearsarge, The, 337.
 Kernstown, Battle of, 259.
 Kentucky, settlement of, 100, 131, 166, 247.
 Kilpatrick's raid, 313.
 King's Mountain, battle of, 141.
 King Philip's War, 50.
 Know-Nothing Party, 208.
 Ku Klux Klan, 368.
 Labor Laws, 360.
 Lafayette, General, 128, 147, 150.
 La Salle, explorations of 66; death of, 66.
 Laurens, Henry, 116.
 Lawrence, James, 74, 75.
 Lee, General Charles, 108; disobedience of, 120; dismissed from army, 120.
 Lee, Richard Henry, 116.
 Lee, Henry, "Light Horse Harry," 122, 137, 260.
 Lee, Fitzhugh, 328, 346, 350.
 Lee, Robert E., 119, 213, 233, 239, 260, 270, 271, 293, 344, 348, 350, 359, 373, 315.
 Leif, 10.
 Leisler, 59.
 Lewis, Andrew, 103.
 Lewis and Clarke's explorations, 171.
 Letcher, John, Governor of Virginia, 319.
 Lettres of marque, 115.
 Lexington, battle of, 105.
 Lincoln, Abraham, 221, 230, 231, 235, 267, 284, 285, 338, 354, 355.
 Lincoln, General, 129, 135, 151.
 Life among the rich in the colonies, 60, 98; among the middle classes, 60, 98.
 Logan, 102.
 Long Island, battle of, 119.
 Longstreet, General, 268, 269, 270, 293, 295, 305.
 Lookout Mountain, 305, 308.
 Louisiana, 67, 170, 178, 377.
 Loyal Leagues, 367.
 Madison, James, 158, 173.
 Magellan, voyage of, 20.
 Magruder, Gen., 239, 242, 266, 288.
 Maine, settlement of, 35; State of, 182.
 Manassas, 238, 240, 269, 270.
 Mansfield, battle of, 312.
 Marion, General, 137, 142.
 Marshall, John, 167.
 Maryland, settlement of, 30, 31, 39.
 Marye's Hill, 273.
 Massachusetts, 33, 35, 50, 51, 58, 61.
 Maskoki, or Muskogeas, 19.
 Massasoit, 33.
 Material Development, 168, 383.
 Maury, Matthew F., 208.
 McClellan, General, 238, 244, 258, 266, 267, 270, 272.
 McCrae, Miss, murder of, 124.
 McCulloch, Gen., 247, 253.
 McDonough's victory, 176.

- McDowell, General, 242.
 McPherson, General, 314; death of, 322.
 Meade, General, 295, 313.
 Mexico, 198.
 Mexican boundaries, 195.
 Michigan becomes a State, 189.
 Minute Men, 102.
 Missionary Ridge, 308.
 Mississippi, 15, 65, 66, 180.
 Missouri, question of, 181, 182, 247.
 Modoc War, 375.
 Monitor, 258, 260.
 Monmouth C. H., battle of, 127, 128.
 Monmouth's followers sold as slaves, 58.
 Montcalm, captures English forts, 87; death of, 89.
 Monroe, James, President, 179; doctrine, 183.
 Monocacy Bridge, battle of, 331.
 Monterey, capture of, 196.
 Morgan, General Daniel, 109, 125, 143.
 Morgan, General John, 278, 304, 336.
 Mormons, 210.
 Morristown, winter at, 135.
 Moultrie, Gen. William, 118; Fort, 118, 226.
 Mound Builders, 19.
 Murfreesboro, battle of, 280.
 Narragansetts, 40, 51.
 Nashville, battle of, 325.
 Nelson, General Thomas, 150.
 New England, settlement of, 32, 33, 40, 62, 178.
 Newfoundland, 13, 21.
 New Hampshire, settlement of, 25.
 New Jersey, 52.
 New Market, battle of, 317, 318.
 New Mexico, 198.
 New Netherland, 29, 51.
 New Orleans, battle of, 177, 276.
 Newport, Capt. Christopher, 22, 26.
 Newspapers, first, 79, 97.
 Non-importation Acts, 98.
 North Carolina, settlements in, 52; re-admission, 366.
 Northwest Passage, 21.
 Oglethorpe, General, 75, 76, 77.
 O'Hara, General, 151.
 Ohio Company of Virginia, 82.
 Ohio becomes a State, 172.
 Olustee, battle of, 310.
 Omnibus Bill, 203.
 "On to Richmond," 272.
 Opecanough, 27, 37.
 Oregon, 21; question, 193; becomes a State, 211.
 Oriskany, battle of, 124.
 Pacific, discovery, 14; railroad, 371.
 Packingham, Sir Edward, 177.
 Paducah, 248.
 Palo Alto, battle of, 196.
 Palos, 11.
 Patents to Virginia and Plymouth companies, 24.
 Paris, treaty of, 89.
 Party Conventions, 105.
 Peace, of Ryswick, 70; of Utrecht, 71; Congress, 225; negotiations, 338; Conference, 343.
 Pea Ridge or Elkhorn, battle of, 253.
 Pegram, Gen. John, 344.
 Pegram, Col. Wm. J., 346.
 Pemberton, General, 299, 302.
 Pendleton, General, 270, 352.
 Penn., Wm., 54.
 Pennsylvania, naming of, 54.
 Pequot War, 35.
 Perry, M. C., expedition to Japan, 204.
 Perry, O. H., 175.
 Perryville, battle of, 280.
 Petersburg, attack on, 326, 329; condition of, 340; evacuation of, 346.
 Personal Liberty Laws, 206.
 Pettigrew's charge, 296.
 Pierce, Franklin, 206.
 Pickett's charge, 296.
 Pipe of peace, 18.
 Pitt, Wm., 87.
 Pittsburg, 87.
 Pizarro, 14.
 Philadelphia, founding of, 54; evacuation of, 127.
 Pike, Gen., 253.
 Pinchbeck, 369.
 Polk, Bishop, 248, 251, 305, 321.
 Polk, J. K., President, 195.
 Point Comfort, 22.
 Pocahontas, saves Smith's life, 23; saves the Colony, 24; marriage and death, 26.
 Ponce de Leon, 14.
 Pontiac's War, 89.
 Pope, General, 267, 268, 270, 280.

- Population, growth of, 72.
 Port Royal, capture of, 249.
 Powhatan, King, 23, 24, 27.
 Price, General, 247, 253, 336.
 Princeton, Battle of, 121.
 Prisoners, exchange of, 286.
 Private soldiers, valor of, 242.
 Pulaski, Count, 123, 135.
 Puritans, coming of, 33; laws of, 34;
 a peculiar people, 61; sym-
 patize with Cromwell, 41.
 Putnam, General, 106.
 Quakers, 41; 42, 54, 58, 163, 201.
 Quebec, capture of, 87, 89.
 Queen Anne's War, 70.
 Railroads, opening of, 185, 383.
 Railroad strikes, 379, 382.
 Raisin River, battle of, 174.
 Raleigh, Sir Walter, expeditions,
 21.
 Reams's Station, fight at, 328.
 Reconstruction, 360-370.
 Recuperation of the South, 383.
 Republican party, 208.
 Restriction of the press, 244.
 Revolution, causes of, 92-96; open-
 ing of, 104; end of, 150, 151;
 United States Navy in, 151;
 condition of country after, 156.
 Rhode Island, settled, 34; charter,
 58.
 Rich Mountain, battle of, 239.
 Richmond, Confederate Capital, 236;
 defence of, 264, evacuation of,
 346; riot and fire in, 347.
 Richmond, Ky., battle of, 279.
 Right of search, 165, 171, 172.
 Riot in Baltimore, 233; Boston, 207;
 Roanoke, Colony of, 21; Island,
 capture of, 256.
 Robertson, James, 100.
 Rochambeau, Count, 137, 150.
 Rocky Mountains, 16, 196.
 Rolfe, John, 26.
 Rosecrans, General, 239, 280, 305.
 Sabine Pass, 288.
 Sailor's Creek, battle of, 349.
 Salling's exploration, 80.
 Salzburger settlement, 76.
 San Jacinto, battle of, 194.
 Santa Anna, General, 194, 197,
 198.
 Santa Maria, 11.
 Saratoga, battles near, 125.
 Savannah, settlement of, 76; Span-
 ish attack on, 78; taken by
 British, 129; Siege of, 135;
 fall of, 335.
 Scarcity in South, 288, 327, 344.
 Schuyler, General, 108, 122, 123, 124.
 Scotch in Georgia, 77.
 Scotch-Irish settlers, 80.
 Scott, General, 176, 197, 227.
 Secession, 221, of South Carolina,
 222; of Gulf States, 222; of Vir-
 ginia, North Carolina, Tennes-
 see and Arkansas, 232.
 Sectional hostility, 181.
 Sedgwick, General, 289, 291, 295.
 Semmes, Captain Raphael, 283, 337.
 Settlers, character of, 59-63.
 Seven Pines, battle of, 260.
 Seven Days' Fight, 265-267.
 Sevier, John, 100.
 Sharpsburg, battle of, 271.
 Shenandoah, The, surrender of, 338.
 Sheridan, General, 332, 333, 345,
 350, 351, 369.
 Sherman, General, 302, 303, 308,
 311, 319, 320, 321, 324, 334, 341.
 Shiloh, battle of, 254.
 Sioux War, 376.
 Slavery, 26, 63, 99, 163, 181, 187,
 201, 229, 230, 360.
 Slave-trade, encouraged by England,
 26; extinction of, 159.
 Smith, General Kirby, 241, 279.
 Smith, Captain John, 23, 34; depar-
 ture, 25.
 Social distinctions, 98.
 Soldiers, after the surrender, 353.
 South Carolina, 53, 54, 72, 116, 222,
 377.
 South and the territories, 202; di-
 vided into military districts,
 363; under Hayes, 378; early
 literature in, 384, 385.
 Southern Confederacy, 223; leaders,
 224; lack of resources, 285.
 Spotsylvania, battle at, 316.
 Spotswood, Governor, 73, 74, 75;
 crosses Blue Ridge, 73; post-
 master-general of colonies, 75.
 Stamp Act, 94, 95, 96.
 Stark, John, 106-124.
 "Starving Time," 25.
 State-Rights resolutions, 190; and
 centralization, 228.

- St. Augustine, 20, 78.
 St. Clair's defeat, 164.
 Steamships, 191.
 Steamboat, Fitch's and Rumsey's, 172; Fulton's, 172.
 Stony Point, storming of, 135.
 Strikes, 380, 381, 382.
 Stuart, Gen. J. E. B., 242, 264, 291, 293, 317.
 Summary, first period, 68, 69; second, 91; third, 154-155; fourth, 215-217; fifth, 388-395.
 Sumner, General, 272.
 Sumter, Fort, garrisoned, 226; plan to reinforce, 227; bombardment of, 228; attack on, 288; The, 283, 337; General, 137, 142, 145.
 Surrender, terms of, 351.
 Swanzey, attack, on, 51.
 Tariff, 157, 163, 186, 382.
 Tarleton, Col., 140, 142, 148.
 Taylor, General Zachary, 188, 195, 197; President, 202; death of, 204.
 Taylor, General Richard, 313.
 Taxation, by England, 92, 95.
 Tecumseh, 173, 175.
 Telegraph, 192; submarine, 209, 371.
 Tennessee, emigration to; 99; becomes a State, 167.
 Texas, settlement of, 193; independent, 194; annexation of, 194.
 Thomas, General, 305, 306, 324.
 Ticonderoga, capture of, 106.
 Tilden, Samuel J., 377.
 Tippecanoe, battle of, 173.
 Totems, 7.
 Trenton, battle of, 121.
 Tripoli, war with, 170.
 Turner, Nat, insurrection, 187.
 Tuscarora, 19, 70.
 Two-Penny Act, 93.
 Tyler, John, 191.
 Uncle's Tom's Cabin, 212.
 "Underground Railroad," 206.
 United Colonies, 107, 108.
 United States, 117, 187.
 University of Virginia, established, 172.
 Upshur, Secretary, killed, 192.
 Utah, 210.
 Valley Forge, winter at, 125.
 Van Buren, 189.
 Van Dorn, General, 253, 277, 278, 279, 280, 282.
 Vasco de Gama, 14.
 Vera Cruz, surrender of, 197.
 Vermont becomes a State, 166.
 Vespucci, Amerigo, 13.
 Vicksburg, siege and capture, 299, 303.
 Vigilance Committees, 199.
 Vinland the Good, 10.
 Virginia, 21, 22, 26, 38, 43, 44, 45, 47, 59, 60, 74, 75, 80, 81, 101, 104, 113, 116, 147, 156, 218, 238.
 Virginia, ironclad ram, 257.
 Wallace, General Lew, 332.
 Wallace, General W. H. L., 254.
 War of 1812, 174.
 Warren, General, 298, 315.
 Washington, George, 79, 81, 83, 84, 86, 108, 120, 151, 161.
 Watauga, settlement at, 100, 129, 140.
 Waxhaws, disaster at, 137.
 Wayne, "Mad Anthony," 135, 165.
 Weather Reports, 209.
 Webster Daniel, 186, 203, 205.
 Wesleys and Whitefield, 77.
 West Virginia admitted to the Union, 284, 287.
 Whiskey insurrection, 165; frauds, 374.
 White Plains, battle of, 119.
 Wilderness, battle of, 315, 316.
 Wilkes's expedition, 191; seizes Mason and Slidell on Trent, 249, 250.
 William and Mary, sovereigns, 58; College of, 63.
 Williamsburg, battle of, 259.
 Williams, Roger, 34.
 Wilmot Proviso, 201.
 Winchester, battle at, 263, 293.
 Winthrop, John, 35, 50.
 Winconsin becomes a State, 199.
 Woodford, Colonel, 114.
 Wolfe, General, captures Quebec, 87; death of, 89.
 World's Fair, 376-382.
 Wyoming, massacre at, 128.
 Yamacraws, 76.
 Yemassee, 72.
 Yorktown, siege and British surrender at, 150; McClellan and Johnston at, 238, 259; centennial, 379.
 Zollicoffer, General, 248, death of, 251.

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 011 290 723 3